The Heinemann ELT

English Grammar

Digby Beaumont & Colin Granger

Progress Tests written by Digby Beaumont & Ken Singleton

Русская редакция: проф. Бех П.А.

MACMILLAN

HEINEMANN

English Language Teaching
Contents

Introduction

Verbs

1 Present continuous
2 Present simple
3 Present continuous and present simple
4 Past simple
5 Past continuous
6 Present perfect simple
7 Gone and been
8 Present perfect with just, yet and already
9 Present perfect continuous
10 Present perfect continuous and present perfect simple
11 Present perfect with for and since
12 Present perfect and past simple
13 Present perfect and present tense
14 Past perfect simple
15 Past perfect continuous
16 Future: will
17 Future: going to
18 Future: will and going to
19 Present continuous for the future
20 Future: present continuous and going to
21 Present simple for the future
22 Present simple for the future after when if, etc
23 Future continuous: will be + -ing form
24 Future perfect: will have + past participle
25 Future in the past: was/were going to
26 Continuous forms with always
27 Verbs not normally used in the continuous
28 Review of the present and the past
29 Review of the future
30 Imperative and let’s
31 Be
32 There is, there are
33 Have and have got
34 Have for actions

Modal verbs and related structures

35 Modal verbs: general
36 Ability: can, could, be able to
37 Permission: can, could, may, might, be allowed to
38 Obligation and necessity (1): must, have to, have got to
39 Obligation and necessity (2): mustn’t, don’t have to, don’t need to, haven’t got to, needn’t
40 Review of permission and obligation: can, can’t, must, mustn’t, needn’t, be allowed to, have to, don’t have to
41 Needn’t have and didn’t need to
42 Obligation and advice: should, ought to, had better, be supposed to, shall
43 Possibility: may, might, could
44 Possibility: can
45 Probability: should, ought to
46 Deduction: must, can’t
47 Review of possibility, probability and deduction: may, might, could, should, ought to, must, can’t
48 Requests: can, could, may, will, would
49 Offers: will, shall, can, could would
50 Suggestions: shall, let’s, why don’t we, how/what about, can, could
51 Habits: used to, will, would
52 Refusals: won’t, wouldn’t
53 Promises and threats: will
54 May/might as well
55 Other uses of should
56 Wish and if only
57 Would rather
58 It’s time

The passive and have something done

59 The passive: general
60 The passive: infinitive and -ing forms
61 Using get instead of be in the passive
62 Verbs with two objects in the passive
63 The passive with by and with
64 It is said that he... /He is said to... etc
65 Have something done

If sentences, conditionals

66 When and if
67 Conditionals: introduction
68 Open present or future conditionals
69 Unreal present or future conditionals
70 Open and unreal present or future conditionals
71 Unreal past conditionals
72 General conditionals
73 Conditionals without if
74 Review of conditionals

Reported speech
75 Direct and reported speech: introduction
76 Say and tell
77 Reported statements
78 Reported questions
79 Using the to infinitive in reported speech
80 Review of reported speech

-ing form and infinitive
81 -ing form: participle or gerund
82 Verb + -ing form or infinitive: introduction
83 Verb + -ing form
84 Verb + to infinitive
85 Verb + question word + to infinitive
86 Verb + object + to infinitive
87 Verb + -ing form or to infinitive (1)
88 Verb + -ing form or to infinitive (2)
89 Be used to + -ing form and used to + infinitive
90 Need + -ing form or to infinitive
91 Infinitive without to
92 Preposition + -ing form
93 Person + -ing form
94 -ing form and to infinitive as subjects
95 To infinitive of purpose
96 Noun/Pronoun/Adjective + to infinitive
97 See someone doing and see someone do, etc
98 Review of -ing form and infinitive
99 Participle (-ing and -ed) adjectives
100 Participle (-ing) clauses

Nouns, articles and quantity
101 Singular and plural nouns (1)
102 Singular and plural nouns (2)
103 Compound nouns
104 Possessive 's (genitive)
105 Possessive 's or ... of ...?
106 Double possessive
107 Countable and uncountable nouns
108 Articles: a/an and the

109 Talking in general: no article and a/an
110 Talking in general: the
111 Common expressions without articles
112 Place names with and without the
113 Review of a/an and the
114 Quantity: general
115 Some and any
116 Much, many, a lot of, (a) little, (a)few
117 No and none
118 All, every, everybody, everything, whole
119 Both, either, neither

Pronouns
120 Personal pronouns
121 Possessive adjectives and pronouns
122 Reflexive pronouns
123 Review of personal pronouns, possessive adjectives and pronouns, and reflexive pronouns
124 One (s)
125 Something, anything, somebody, anybody, etc

Adjectives
126 Form, position and order of adjectives
127 Comparative and superlative adjectives
128 As ... as
129 Review of comparatives, superlatives and as ... as

Adverbs
130 Adjectives and adverbs of manner
131 Adverbs of manner, place and time
132 Adverb position with verbs
133 Time: still, yet, already
134 Time: any more, any longer, no longer
135 Adverbs of frequency
136 Adverbs of probability
137 Fairly, quite, rather and pretty
138 Too and enough
139 So and such
140 Comparison: adverbs

Negatives, questions and answers
141 Negative statements
142 Yes/No questions
143 Wh- questions
144 Subject and object questions
145 Question words
146 Negative questions
147 Question tags
148 Reply questions
149 Indirect questions
150 Short answers
151 So/Neither am I, so/Neither do I, so/Neither can I, etc
152 /think so, 1 hope so, I expect so, etc

Relative clauses
153 Defining relative clauses with who, that and which
154 Leaving out who, that and which in defining relative clauses
155 Defining relative clauses with whose, where, when and why/that
156 Defining and non-defining relative clauses
157 Non-defining relative clauses with whose, whom, where and when
158 Relative clauses with prepositions + which and whom
159 Which referring to a whole clause

Linking words
160 Time: when, as, while, as soon as, before, after, until
161 Contrast: although, even though, though, in spite of, despite, while, whereas, however
162 Reason and result: because (of), as, since, so, as a result, therefore, so/such ... (that)
163 Purpose: to, in order to, so as to, for, so that
164 Purpose: in case

Prepositions
165 Place: at, in, on
166 Place and movement: in, into, out of, on, onto, off, inside, outside
167 Place and movement: above, below, over, under, underneath, on top of

Contents
168 Other prepositions of place and movement
169 Time: at, in, on
170 On time and in time
171 At the end and in the end
172 Time: in, during, for, while
173 Time: by, until, from, to, before, after
174 For, since, ago and before
175 Means of transport: by, on, in
176 Like, as and as if
177 With (= having) and in (= wearing)
178 Adjective + preposition
179 Noun + preposition
180 Preposition + noun
181 Verb + preposition
182 Verb + object + preposition
183 Review of prepositions
184 Indirect objects with or without to and/or

Phrasal verbs
185 Phrasal verbs: introduction
186 Types of phrasal verbs

Pronunciation and spelling of endings
187 Pronunciation of endings: -(e)s and -ed
188 Spelling of endings: -(e)s, -ing, -ed, -er, -est, -ly

General
189 Contractions
190 Irregular verbs

Progress Tests
Appendix: American English
Glossary
Index
Предисловие

Предлагаемое учебное пособие - *The Heinemann ELT English Grammar* - предназначено для лиц, изучающих английский язык. Цель пособия состоит в том, чтобы помочь изучающим овладеть грамматикой и использовать ее на практике. Главным образом, пособие рассчитано на тех, кто работает самостоятельно. Однако его материалы могут использоваться и для работы под руководством преподавателя. Пособие рассчитано для лиц, имеющих средний уровень подготовки по английскому языку. Вместе с тем его можно с успехом использовать и на продвинутом этапе обучения для повторения и закрепления изученного материала.

ОБЪЯСНЕНИЕ

Грамматические пояснения изложены в простой и доступной форме. В общем используется английский язык повседневного обихода. Хотя, где это необходимо, используются отдельные грамматические термы (например, adjective - имя прилагательное, noun - имя существительное, subject - подлежащее). Эти термины объясняются в Глоссарии (Glossary) на страницах 324 - 327.

СТРУКТУРА ПОСОБИЯ

- Пособие состоит из 190 разделов. Как правило, каждый раздел посвящен одной из грамматических тем (например, the present continuous - настоящее длительное время, will или артикли *a, an* и *the*). Раздел начинается с объяснений и примеров, после чего следует одно или несколько упражнений.
- Кроме того, в некоторых разделах делается сравнение грамматического материала с материалом, изложенным в предыдущих разделах (например, в разделе 2 сравнивается the present continuous (настоящее длительное время) и present simple (настоящее простое время).
- В обзорных разделах объединяются и отрабатываются на практике некоторые материалы предыдущих разделов (например, в разделе 28 отрабатываются the present - настоящие и past tenses - прошедшие времена). В этих разделах содержатся лишь упражнения и отсутствуют объяснения.
- Некоторые разделы (например, 35 и 67) носят лишь справочный характер и не содержат упражнений. На страницах 294 - 322 помещены 88 учебно-контрольных тестов. Они предназначены для проверки степени овладения грамматическим материалом пособия. Тесты можно использовать для выявления отдельных проблем, поскольку каждый из них ориентирован на определенную область грамматики.
- На страницах III - V содержится Оглавление (Contents).
- На страницах 328-335 помещен Алфавитный указатель (Index), который приводит подробный перечень грамматических структур (например, articles - артикли, present continuous - настоящее длительное время) и ключевых слов (например, *a/an, enough*). Здесь также помещены рубрики, касающиеся того, как используется язык для выражения, например, возможности, долженствования.
- В квадратных скобках [*] иногда приводится перевод некоторых примеров, используемых как иллюстративный материал.
- Ответы к упражнениям размещены на страницах 336 - 348, а ответы к тестам - на страницах 348 - 353.
- В Приложении на странице 323 приведены некоторые сведения об американском варианте английского языка.

ИСПОЛЬЗОВАНИЕ ПОСОБИЯ В КАЧЕСТВЕ САМОУЧИТЕЛЯ

Найдите желаемую тему по Оглавлению (Contents) - страницы iii - v или по Алфавитному указателю (Index) - страницы 328 - 335. Прочитайте объяснения и ознакомьтесь с примерами. Затем выполните предлагаемые упражнения. Сверьте ваши ответы с Ключами к упражнениям (Key to exercises) - страницы 336 - 348*. Если у вас возникают какие-либо затруднения, снова обратитесь к объяснениям и примерам. Затем найдите тест по изучаемой теме в Оглавлении учебно-контрольных тестов (Progress Tests) - страницы 294 - 296. Выполните тест. Затем сверьте ваши ответы с Ответами к учебно-контрольным тестам (Answers to Progress Tests) - страницы 348 - 353*.

* - в издании, содержащем "ответы на ключи".
1 Present continuous (Настоящее длительное время)

1 Form (Образование)

Present continuous образуется с помощью be + ... -ing.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AFFIRMATIVE (УТВЕРЖДЕНИЕ)</th>
<th>NEGATIVE (ОТРИЦАНИЕ)</th>
<th>QUESTION (ВОПРОС)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I am</td>
<td>I am not</td>
<td>am I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you are</td>
<td>you are not</td>
<td>are you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he is</td>
<td>he is not</td>
<td>he is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she</td>
<td>she</td>
<td>she</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td>it</td>
<td>it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>we</td>
<td>we</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>are</td>
<td>are not</td>
<td>are</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>they</td>
<td>they</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>working</td>
<td>working</td>
<td>working?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Эта форма иногда называется ‘present progressive’.

CONTRACTIONS (СТЯЖЕНИЯ)

'm = am
're = are
's = is

aren’t = are not
isn’t = is not

При присоединении окончания -ing иногда происходят изменения в написании, например: have → having. См. 188.3–6.

2 Use (Употребление)

Present continuous употребляется для выражения действия, которое происходит в момент речи.

‘Where are the children?’ ‘They’re playing in the garden.’
‘What are you doing at the moment?’ ‘I’m writing a letter.’
You can switch off the TV. I’m not watching it.
Look, there’s Sally. Who is she talking to?
We’re leaving now. Goodbye.
Present continuous употребляется также для выражения действия, которое происходит в настоящее время, но не обязательно в момент речи.

You're spending a lot of money these days.
Sue is looking for a job at the moment.

Present continuous употребляется для выражения действия, которое происходит в настоящее время в течение определенного периода.

Robert is on holiday this week. He's staying with his sister in Bournemouth.

Present continuous употребляется для выражения изменяющихся или развивающихся действий и ситуаций в настоящем времени.

Your children are growing up very quickly.
Computers are becoming more and more important in our lives.

EXERCISE 1A

What are the people in the pictures doing?

Make sentences.

Example:
1 He's reading a newspaper.

EXERCISE 1B

Complete the sentences. Use the verbs in brackets in the present continuous.

Example:
‘Where are Ken and Kate?’ ‘They’re waiting (wait) outside.’

1 ‘(Sally | have) a shower?’ ‘No, she (wash) her hair.’

2 You (not | watch) the TV at the moment. Why don’t you switch it off?

3 ‘(you | enjoy) yourself?’ ‘Yes, I (have) a great time.’

4 ‘What (Maria | do) these days?’ ‘She (study) English at a school in London.’

5 Ben and Patty are in London on holiday. They (stay) at a small hotel near Hyde Park.

6 Prices (rise) all the time. Everything (get) more and more expensive.

Note (Примечание)

- Смотрите также 3. Present continuous и present simple.
- Некоторые глаголы, например like, know, обычно употребляются для образования форм continuous. См. 27.
- Present continuous может употребляться для выражения действия в будущем времени, например: I'm meeting Sue on Saturday evening. См. 19.
2 Present simple (Настоящее простое время)

1 Form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AFFIRMATIVE</th>
<th>NEGATIVE</th>
<th>QUESTION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I you</td>
<td>I do not you</td>
<td>do I you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he</td>
<td>he does not work</td>
<td>he does she it work?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she</td>
<td>she does not work</td>
<td>she does it work?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td>it does not work</td>
<td>it does work?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>we do not work</td>
<td>do we you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>you do not work</td>
<td>does she you work?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>they do not work</td>
<td>does they you work?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CONTRACTIONS

don’t = do not
doesn’t = does not

После he, she и it глаголы в утвердительной форме заканчиваются на -s/-es, например, work → he works; you play → she plays; we finish → it finishes.

При присоединении к глаголам окончания -s/-es иногда происходят изменения в написании, например, study/studies. См. 188.1, 4. Относительно произношения -s/-es, см. 187.1.

2 Use

a Present simple употребляется для выражения повторяемых и привычных действий.

/ have a shower every morning.
Most evenings my parents stay at home and watch TV.
Do you go to the cinema very often?
What time does Kate finish work?

b Present simple употребляется для выражения постоянных ситуаций (непрерывных в течение длительного времени).

Mr and Mrs Shaw live in Bristol. [Господин и госпожа Шоу живут в Бристоле]. (Это их постоянное место жительства.)
Present simple также употребляется для выражения общепринятых истин.

The River Amazon flows into the Atlantic Ocean.
Vegetarians don’t eat meat or fish.

EXERCISE 2A
Complete the sentences. Use the present simple of the verbs in brackets.

Examples:
The President of the USA lives (live) in the White House.
I don’t go (not | go) to the theatre very often.
1 Jet engines ____ (make) a lot of noise.
2 I ____ (not | live) in London. I ____ (live) in Brighton.
3 The sea ____ (cover) two thirds of the world.
4 Loud music ____ (give) me a headache.
5 We ____ (not | come) from Canada. We ____ (come) from the USA.
6 She ____ (work) from Mondays to Fridays.
   She ____ (not | work) at weekends.
7 Andrew and Les ____ (not | go) to school by bus every day. Most mornings Andrew ____ (go) by bicycle and Les ____ (walk).
8 You ____ (not | write) to your penfriend very often, but he ____ (write) to you every week.

EXERCISE 2B
Complete the questions in the present simple.
Example:
‘What time do you get up every morning?’ ‘I normally get up at 7 o’clock.’

1 ‘____ to the radio every morning?’ ‘I listen to it most mornings.’
2 ‘____ in Manchester?’ ‘No, he lives in Newcastle.’
3 ‘What time ____ work every day?’ ‘She usually finishes at 5.30.’
4 ‘How often ____ swimming?’ ‘I go about once a week.’
5 ‘____ TV every evening?’ ‘They watch it most evenings.’
6 ‘____ the guitar?’ ‘Yes, she plays the guitar and the piano.’
7 ‘How much money ____ a month?’ ‘We earn about £800.’
8 ‘____ much in your country?’ ‘Yes, it snows a lot during the winter.’

Note
- См. также 3. Present continuous и present simple.
- Когда who, what или which является подлежащим в вопросе в present simple, то do/does не употребляется. Например: Who lives in that flat? См. 144.
- Такие слова, как usually, often, every day, часто употребляются с present simple для обозначения регулярности действия, например: / usually have a shower every day. См. 135.
- Present simple также употребляется для выражения будущего действия, например: The train leaves at 7.30 tomorrow morning. СМ. 21.
- Относительно настоящего времени глагола be (am, are, is) СМ. 31.
3 Present continuous and present simple
(Настоящее длительное и настоящее простое время)

Compare (Сравните):

PRESENT CONTINUOUS

PRESENT SIMPLE

Present continuous употребляется для выражения действия в развитии или происходящего в момент речи.

Are you working now?  
Don’t forget your umbrella when you go out.  
It’s raining outside.

Present continuous употребляется для выражения повторяемых или привычных, а также общеизвестных действий.

Do you work every Saturday afternoon?  
It rains a lot in Britain in March and April.

Present continuous употребляется для выражения временных, а present simple - для постоянных ситуаций. Compare:

I’m sleeping on a sofa these days because my bed is broken.  
I always sleep eight hours every night.

EXERCISE 3A
Choose the correct form.
Example:

Look outside! It’s snowing!/It snows!

1 It’s snowing/It snows quite often in Britain during the winter.
2 I’m going/I go to bed now. Goodnight.
3 Normally, I’m going/I go to bed at around 11.30 every night.
4 ‘Where’s Simon?’  ‘He’s cooking/He cooks the dinner.’
5 There is something wrong with Lynne’s car at the moment so she’s going/she goes to work by bus this week.
6 The River Thames is flowing/flows through London.
7 Sarah has got an exam soon, so she’s working/she works very hard at the moment.

Note

- Некоторые глаголы, например like, want, обычно не употребляются в формах времени continuous. Так, нельзя сказать: I’m liking this music. См. 27.
- Present continuous и present simple также употребляются для выражения будущего действия. См. 19, 21.
4 Past simple (Прошедшее простое время)

1 Form

Форма Past simple одна для всех лиц (/, you, he, she, etc).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AFFIRMATIVE</th>
<th>NEGATIVE</th>
<th>QUESTION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>did</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he</td>
<td>he</td>
<td>work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she</td>
<td>she</td>
<td>come</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td>it</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>we</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>you</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>they</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>worked</td>
<td>did not</td>
<td>work?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>came</td>
<td></td>
<td>come?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CONTRACTION
didn't = did not

Некоторые глаголы являются ‘правильными’ или ‘стандартными’ (‘regular’), другие - ‘неправильными’ или ‘нестандартными’ (‘irregular’):

• Правильные глаголы в утвердительном предложении в past simple заканчиваются на -ed, например, work → worked; play → played; live → lived. Когда к глаголам приписывается -ed, иногда происходят изменения в написании, например, stop → stopped. См. 188.3, 4, 6. Относительно произношения -ed см. 187.2.

• Неправильные глаголы в утвердительном предложении в past simple имеют различные формы, например, come → came; see → saw; go → went. См. 190.

2 Use

Past simple употребляется для выражения действий и ситуаций, имевших место в прошлом.

I played football yesterday.
He lived in London from 1970 to 1973. Then he moved to Manchester.
‘Did you see Sarah yesterday?’ ‘No, I didn’t.’
We didn’t go out last night. We stayed at home and watched TV.
They went to Italy on holiday last summer.
Marie and Pierre Curie discovered radium.
EXERCISE 4A

Complete the text about James Dean. Use the past simple.

American actor James Dean was born in 1931. Dean’s mother died when Dean was only 8 years old and he ______1______ on his aunt and uncle’s farm. He ______2______ acting for two years. Then he ______3______ a career in films and the theatre. He also ______4______ in some TV commercials, including one for Pepsi-Cola. In 1954, he ______5______ in a play called The Immoralist in a New York theatre. Bosses from a Hollywood film studio ______6______ the play. They ______7______ Dean and ______8______ see, like, offer him a film contract. Dean ______9______ in three films, East of Eden (1955), Rebel without a Cause (1955) and Giant (1956). During his short career, he ______10______ extremely popular with teenagers. His death in a car crash in 1955 ______11______ great sadness in young people all over the world.

EXERCISE 4B

What did Simon and Sally do yesterday?

Complete the conversation. Use these verbs: win, meet, go, cost, stag, watch, buy, do, play.

Sally: What did you do yesterday? Did you go to the Sports Centre?
Simon: Yes, I went there with Andrew.

Sally: ______1______ tennis?
Simon: Yes, we did.

Sally: Andrew is good, isn't he? ______2______ the game?
Simon: Yes, he won easily.

Sally: ______3______ in the evening?
Simon: Yes, I stayed in and watched TV.

Sally: ______5______?
Simon: A film of a rock concert. It was really good. What about you? ______6______ Peter yesterday?
Sally: Yes, I met him in town. We went shopping. Peter wanted to look for some new clothes.

Simon: ______7______ anything?
Sally: Yes, he bought a pair of jeans in Kings.

Simon: Kings? That’s a really expensive shop, isn’t it? How much ______8______?
Sally: £42.

Note

- Иногда did не употребляется в вопросах в past simple. См. 144.
- Относительно прошедшего времени глагола be (was, were) см. 31.
5 Past continuous (Прошедшее длительное время)

1 Form

Past continuous образуется с помощью was/were + ... -ing.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AFFIRMATIVE</th>
<th>NEGATIVE</th>
<th>QUESTION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/ was</td>
<td>/ was not</td>
<td>was I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you were</td>
<td>you were not</td>
<td>were you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he was</td>
<td>he was not</td>
<td>he</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she was</td>
<td>she was not</td>
<td>she</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it was</td>
<td>it was not</td>
<td>it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we were</td>
<td>we were not</td>
<td>we</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you were</td>
<td>you were not</td>
<td>you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they were</td>
<td>they were not</td>
<td>they</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Эта форма иногда называется ‘past progressive’.

CONTRACTIONS

wasn't = was not
weren't = were not

При присоединении к глаголам окончания -ing иногда происходят изменения в написании, например, write → writing. См. 188.3-6.

2 Use

Past continuous употребляется для выражения действия, продолжавшегося в прошедшем времени. Действие или ситуация началась, но еще не завершилась в то время.

‘At eight o’clock last night I was watching TV.’

More examples (Другие примеры):

/ saw you last night. You were waiting for a bus.
Was Sue working at 10 o’clock yesterday morning?

Compare the uses of the past continuous and past simple:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PAST CONTINUOUS</th>
<th>PAST SIMPLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/ was writing a letter. [Я писал письмо]</td>
<td>/ wrote a letter. [Я написал письмо]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(= I was in the middle of writing it. - Я еще продолжал писать письмо.)</td>
<td>(= I started and finished it. - Я начал и закончил его.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Past continuous и past simple часто употребляются в предложении одновременно. Обратите внимание, что происходит в таких предложениях:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Past continuous</th>
<th>Past simple</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/ was driving along</td>
<td>when suddenly a child ran across the road.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When Kate was watching TV</td>
<td>the telephone rang.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We were walking in the park</td>
<td>when it started to rain.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Past continuous обозначает продолженные действия или ситуации, которые длились в прошлом; past simple обозначает недлительное действие, которое произошло в середине более длительного действия или прервало его.

Но для обозначения следования одного действия за другим можно употреблять past simple.

When the telephone rang, Kate answered it.
We sheltered under a tree when it started to rain.

Compare:

When Kate came home Ken was making some tea. [Когда Кейт пришла домой, Кен заваривал чай.]
(Ken was in the middle of making some tea. Then Kate came home - Кен еще заваривал чай, когда Кейт пришла домой)

When Kate came home, Ken made some tea. [Когда Кейт пришла домой, Кен заварил чай.]
(Kate came home. Then Ken made some tea. - Кейт пришла домой, а тогда Кен заварил чай.)

В разговоре часто употребляется past continuous для описания фоновых обстоятельств, а past simple – для описания событий и действий.

# EXERCISE 5A

Join each idea in A with the most suitable idea in B. Make sentences using when and the past continuous or past simple of the verbs in brackets.

Example:
1 / dropped my bag when I was running for a bus.

A
1 I (drop) my bag
2 I (cut) myself
3 My car (break down)
4 I (see) a shark
5 My clothes (get) dirty
6 I (break) a tooth

B
1 I (drive) to work
2 I (eat) a sandwich
3 I (run) for a bus
4 I (shave)
5 I (swim) in the sea
6 I (clean) the attic
EXERCISE 5B

Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form: the past continuous or the past simple.

Examples:

When she came (come) into the room I was listening (listen) to the radio.
When my car broke down (break down) I phoned (phone) a garage.

1. We_____ (go) down in the lift when suddenly it_____ (stop).
2.____ (they | have) dinner when you_____ (call) to see them?
3. When the doorbell_____ (ring) I_____ (get) up and_____ (answer) it.
4. When I_____ (open) the door, a friend_____ (stand) there.
5. ‘When I_____ (arrive) back at the car park, my car wasn’t there!’ ‘Oh, no!
   What_____ (you | do)?’ ‘I_____ (report) it to the police.’

EXERCISE 5C

These paragraphs begin three stories: a love story, a western and a horror story.

1. Complete the paragraphs using the past continuous or the past simple of the verbs in brackets.

   (i) It was midnight and I was alone in the house. Outside it was raining (rain) very hard. I____ 1_____ (get) ready to go to bed when I suddenly heard a strange noise outside my room in the corridor. Then, when I looked at the door, I noticed that someone____ 2_____ (turn) the handle! I____ 3_____ (rush) over to the door and quickly____ 4_____ (turn) the key in the lock. Then I____ 5_____ (ask) in a trembling voice, ‘Who is it?’

   (ii) It was early evening and it____ 1_____ (begin) to get dark in the surgery of Doctor Nigel Harris. The young, handsome doctor____ 2_____ (stand) looking sadly out of the window when there was a quiet knock at the surgery door. The door____ 3_____ (open) and Dr Harris____ 4_____ (turn) round to see the young girl who had just entered the room. She was very beautiful. With a sad smile the doctor____ 5_____ (ask), ‘Are you the new nurse?’

   (iii) I____ 1_____ (sit) in the big chair in Henry's barber's shop at the time. Henry____ 2_____ (cut) my hair with his big pair of scissors when we heard the sound of horses outside. The noise was so loud that we____ 3_____ (go) over to the window to look. Through the window we could see at least twenty gunmen riding into town. Henry immediately____ 4_____ (go) over to his desk and____ 5_____ (put) on his gun and Sheriff's badge.

2. Which paragraph begins which story?

Note

- Некоторые глаголы, например like, own, обычно не употребляются в формах времени continuous. Так, нельзя сказать: I was liking the film. См. 27.
6 Present perfect simple (Настоящее совершенное простое время)

1 Form
Present perfect simple образуется с помощью have/has + причастие прошедшего времени (past participle).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AFFIRMATIVE</th>
<th>NEGATIVE</th>
<th>QUESTION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I you have</td>
<td>I you have not</td>
<td>have I you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he has worked</td>
<td>he has not worked</td>
<td>he has</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she has come</td>
<td>she has not come</td>
<td>she has</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it has</td>
<td>it has not</td>
<td>it has</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we you have worked</td>
<td>we you have not worked</td>
<td>we have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>they</td>
<td>they</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CONTRACTIONS
've = have  haven't = have not
's = has  hasn't = has not

Некоторые глаголы являются ‘правильными’ (some verbs are ‘regular’); другие - ‘неправильными’ (other verbs are ‘irregular’):

• Past participle времени правильных глаголов заканчиваются на -ed, например, work → worked; live → lived. При присоединении к глаголу -ed иногда происходят изменения в написании, например, stop → stopped. См. 188.3, 4, 6. Относительно произношения -ed см. 187.2.
• Неправильные глаголы имеют различные формы past participle, например, come → come; be → been. См. 190.

2 Use
В предложениях, содержащих present perfect, всегда имеется связь между прошлым и настоящим:

a Present perfect употребляется для выражения действия, начавшегося в прошлом и продолжающегося в настоящем времени.

I was here at 3.00.
I am still here now - at 4.00.

Past Present Perfect Present
I've been here for an hour.
More examples:

She has worked in London for six months. [Она живет в Лондоне в течение шести месяцев.]
(= She still works in London now. - Она еще работает сейчас в Лондоне.)

How long have you lived here? [Сколько вы там живете?]
(= You still live here now. - Вы еще живете здесь сейчас.)

Kate and Ken have been married for 20 years. [Кейт и Кен женаты 20 лет.]
(= They are still married now. - Они женаты сейчас.)

Относительно for и since, см. 11.

Present perfect также употребляется для выражения действий, имевших место в течение определенного периода, продолжающегося до настоящего времени.

I've been to Africa and India. (= in my life, up to now)
Have you ever eaten Chinese food? (= in your life, up to now)

Present perfect часто употребляется таким образом со словами 'неопределенного' времени, например, ever [когда-либо; когда бы то ни было], never [никогда], yet [еще] (см. 8) и before [раньше, прежде].

What's the best film you've ever seen?
I've never seen a ghost.

Present perfect не употребляется со словами 'определенного' прошедшего времени (yesterday, last night, in 1985 и т.д.). Например, нельзя сказать: She's been there yesterday.

Present perfect употребляется со словами today, this morning, this afternoon и др., когда период времени не завершился на момент речи.

I've written six letters this morning. [Я написал шесть писем этим утром.] (= Сейчас все еще 'сегодняшнее утро'.)

Present perfect также употребляется, когда результат прошедшего действия связан с настоящим временем.

Someone has broken the window. [Кто-то разбил окно] (= Окно разбито и сейчас.)

More examples:

The taxi has arrived. [Такси подано] (= Такси сейчас здесь.)
We've cleaned the flat. [Мы убрали квартиру] (= Квартира сейчас чиста.)

Present perfect часто употребляется таким образом для сообщения (передачи) 'новостей'.

My brother has grown a beard.
I've found a new job.

18
EXERCISE 6A

Complete the sentences using the present perfect simple of the verbs in brackets.

My name is Lynne Carter. I work for a travel company called Timeways Travel. I've been (be) a travel agent for six years now. I'm the manager of Timeways Travel London office. I have (have) this job for three years. I've got a new flat in London. I live (live) there for six months. My boyfriend's name is Bruno. We know (know) each other for two years. Bruno is Italian, but he live (live) in England for over five years. He works for BBC Radio. He have (have) this job for a year.

EXERCISE 6B

Lynne is meeting two clients, Ben and Patty Crawford. Ben and Patty are on holiday in London. Complete the conversation using the present perfect simple.

Lynne: How is your hotel?
Ben: Great! It's the best hotel I've ever stayed (ever | stay) in.
Patty: Yes, Ben is really pleased. He never slept (never | slept) in such a big bed before.
   But he won't be so pleased when we get the bill. It's also the most expensive hotel we ever stay (ever | stay) in!
Lynne: You be (you | be) to London before, Ben?
Ben: No, I not be (not | be) here before, but Patty be (be) a number of times.
   Haven't you, Patty?
Patty: That's right. But the last time was ten years ago and London change (change) a lot since then.
Lynne: And what are you going to do this afternoon?
Patty: Well, I never see (never | see) Madame Tussaud's. We hear (hear) a lot about it from friends, so we thought we'd go there.
Lynne: I see. And what about dinner tonight? I know a very good Japanese restaurant. you ever eat (you | ever | eat) Japanese food, Patty?
Patty: No, I haven't. Is it good?
Lynne: It's delicious.
Ben: I not try (not | try) Japanese food before either, so let's go there.
Patty: Yes, why not?
EXERCISE 6C

Every Saturday morning Simon and Sally clean the kitchen. Here are the jobs that they do:

Look at the picture. It is ten to eleven on Saturday morning. What jobs have Simon and Sally done? What haven't they done yet?

Examples:

1. They've done the washing up.
2. Sally hasn't cleaned the cooker yet.

7 Gone and been

Compare gone и been:

Mr Jones isn't here at the moment.
He has gone to the hairdresser's.
(= Он еще не вернулся.)

Mr Jones is back now. He has been to the hairdresser's.
(= Он уже вернулся.)
EXERCISE 7A
Complete the sentences with gone or been.

‘Where’s Kate?’ ‘She’s gone to the cinema.’

1 I’m sorry I’m late, everyone. I’ve got to the dentist’s.
2 There’s nobody at home. I think they’ve gone away for the weekend.
3 You look very brown. Have you been on holiday?
4 Simon isn’t here at the moment. He’s got to a football match.
5 ‘Have you ever been to Scotland.’ ‘Yes, I’ve been there quite a few times.’

EXERCISE 8A
Put the words in brackets in the correct place in the sentences. Sometimes two answers are possible.

Example:

Has Ken come home from work? (just) Has Ken just come home from work?

1 Have you done your homework? (yet)
2 I haven’t worn my new coat. (yet)
3 ‘Is Sally here?’ ‘No, she’s gone out.’ (just)

4 Have you spoken to your parents? (just)
5 It’s quite early. Has Jack gone to bed? (already)
6 I’ve cleaned the windows. (already)
9 Present perfect continuous (Настоящее совершенное длительное время)

1 Form

Present perfect continuous образуется с помощью have/has been + -ing.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AFFIRMATIVE</th>
<th>NEGATIVE</th>
<th>QUESTION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I you</td>
<td>have</td>
<td>have not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he she has</td>
<td>been working</td>
<td>he she has not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td></td>
<td>been working</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we you have</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td></td>
<td>been working?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Эта форма иногда называется 'present perfect progressive'.

CONTRACTIONS
've = have haven't = have not
's = has hasn't = has not

При присоединении к глаголам окончания -ing иногда происходят изменения в написании. Например, have → having. См. 188.3–6.

2 Use

В предложениях с present perfect всегда присутствует связь между настоящим и прошедшим:

a Present perfect continuous употребляется для выражения действия, начавшегося в прошлом и продолжающегося до настоящего времени.

More examples:
I've been working all day.
How long have you been sitting there?
Present perfect continuous также употребляется, когда действие происходило до недавнего прошлого, особенно, когда это действие имеет результат в настоящем.

It's been snowing.
It's been snowing. [Выпал снег.] (Именно сейчас снег не идет, но он лежит на земле).

Have you been painting? [Вы рисовали?] (Сейчас вы не рисуете, но у вас на волосах краска).

Present perfect continuous можно употребить для выражения повторяемых действий или ситуаций в течение периода до настоящего времени (или недавнего прошлого).

I've been having driving lessons for six months.
How long have you been living in Manchester?

EXERCISE 9A
Complete the sentences. Use the present perfect continuous.

Example:
1 We’re tired. We’ve been working hard all day.
2 Sue’s French is good. She’s been the language for ten years.
3 I’m sorry I’m late. How long have you been long?
4 I don’t know London well. I’m not | live for very long.
5 Simon is a good driver. How long has he been drive?
6 I must go and see the doctor. I feel well lately.

EXERCISE 9B
Look at the people in the pictures. What have they been doing?

Example:
1 She’s been repairing the car.

Note
- Некоторые глаголы, например know, want, обычно не употребляются в формах времени continuous. См. 27.
10 Present perfect continuous and present perfect simple
(Настоящее совершенное длительное и настоящее совершенное простое время)

1 Compare:

**PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS**

*I've been cleaning my car.*
Present perfect continuous употребляется, когда действие может быть или не может быть завершено.

More examples:

*She's been doing her homework.* [Она выполняет домашнее задание.] (= Возможно, она выполнила домашнее задание, возможно, нет.)

**PRESENT PERFECT SIMPLE**

*I've cleaned my car.*
Present perfect simple употребляется для обозначения завершившегося действия.

More examples:

*She's done her homework.* [Она выполнила домашнее задание.] (= Она закончила его.)

2 Present perfect continuous употребляется для выражения действия в течение какого-то периода.

*I've been walking all morning.*

*How long have you been having driving lessons?*

3 Present perfect continuous употребляется в ситуациях, более временных (продолжающихся в течение короткого времени).

*He's been living there for just a few weeks.*
*I've been working very hard recently.*

4 Иногда бывает незначительная разница между этими двумя формами.

*I've been living/I've lived in this flat for ten years.*

*How long has she been working/has she worked for the company?*

*You've worked hard all your life.*
EXERCISE 10A
Choose the correct form.
Example:
‘Can I have a look at your newspaper?’ ‘Certainly. You can keep it if you like.
I've been reading/I've read it.’

1 They’ve been repairing/They've repaired the road all this week, but they haven't finished it yet.
2 I’m very sorry, but I’ve been breaking/I’ve broken this chair.
3 Sally has been saving/has saved nearly two thousand pounds so far this year.
4 What’s the matter? Have you been losing/Have you lost something?
5 I’ve always been working/I’ve always worked in the music industry.
6 Someone has been eating/has eaten my chocolates. There aren’t many left.

Note
- Некоторые глаголы, например know, own, обычно не употребляются в формах времени continuous. Например, нельзя сказать I've been knowing him for years. CM. 27.

Present perfect with for and since
(Настоящее совершенное время с for и since)

For и since часто употребляются с present perfect для выражения действий, продолжающихся в течение периода времени до настоящего (или недавнего прошедшего времени).

Compare:

It's been snowing for four days.

MONDAY TUESDAY WEDNESDAY THURSDAY

It's been snowing since Monday.

For употребляется, когда указывается длительность периода действия (например, four days [четыре дня]); since употребляется, когда указывается начало периода (например, Monday [понедельник]).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>for + length of time</th>
<th>since + starting point</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>four hours</td>
<td>2 o'clock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>three weeks</td>
<td>10 April</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>for nine months</td>
<td>since</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>twelve years</td>
<td>July</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a short time</td>
<td>1961</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I've been here for four hours.</td>
<td>I've been here since 2 o'clock.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He's been living in Paris for nine months.</td>
<td>He's been living in Paris since July.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
EXERCISE 11A
Complete the sentences using/or since.
Example:
I’ve been interested in jazz since I left school.
1 Lynne has been the manager of Timeways Travel in London ____ three years.
2 I've lived in Rome ____ I was two.
3 Mr Woods hasn't been feeling well ____ over a month.
4 Sally and her boyfriend Peter have been going out together ____ last winter.
5 I’ve only been waiting ____ a few minutes.
6 He’s been in Japan ____ 1986.

12 Present perfect and past simple
(Настоящее совершенное простое и прошедшее простое время)

1 Present perfect всегда предполагает связь между прошедшим и настоящим; в past simple
речь идет лишь о прошедшем:

a Present perfect употребляется для выражения действия, начавшегося в прошлом и продолжающегося до настоящего времени.

Past __________________________ Present
I've lived in London for ten years. [Я живу в Лондоне 10 лет.] (= Я все еще живу в Лондоне.)

More examples:
He has worked in a shop for five years. [Он работает в магазине в течение пяти лет.]
(= Он еще и сейчас работает в магазине.)

How long have you been here? [Сколько вы там находитесь?] (= Вы еще здесь сейчас.)

Past simple употребляется для выражения действия, начавшегося и закончившегося в прошлом.

Past __________________________ Present
I lived in Manchester for ten years. [Я жил в Манчестере 10 лет.] (= Я не живу в Манчестере сейчас.)

He worked in a factory for ten years. [Он работал на фабрике 10 лет.] (= Он не работает на фабрике сейчас.)

How long were you there? [Сколько вы там были?] (= Вас там уже нет.)
Present perfect также употребляется, когда результат прошедшего действия связан с настоящим временем.

*Past simple употребляется, когда результат прошедшего действия не связан с настоящим временем.*

\[I've\ lost\ my\ wallet.\ \text{[Я потерял бумажник.]}\]
\[\text{ (=У меня сейчас нет бумажника.)}\]
Present perfect часто употребляется для сообщения (передачи) ‘новостей’.

\[Someone\ has\ stolen\ my\ motorbike.\]

\[I\ lost\ my\ wallet,\ but\ I've\ got\ it\ back\ again\ now.\]

Present perfect часто употребляется для сообщения (передачи) ‘новостей’.

\[/ left\ the\ bike\ outside\ for\ a\ few\ minutes\ and\ when\ I\ came\ back,\ it\ wasn't\ there.\]

Когда речь идет об определенном прошедшем времени, например yesterday, last week, six weeks ago, всегда употребляется past simple и никогда present perfect.

\[I\ lost\ my\ wallet\ yesterday.\ \text{(Not: I've\ lost\ my\ wallet\ yesterday.)}\]

\[Someone\ stole\ my\ bicycle\ last\ week.\ \text{(Not: Someone\ has\ stolen\ my\ bicycle\ last\ week.)}\]

Present perfect употребляется, когда речь идет о неопределенном времени, продолжающемся до настоящего периода, например, ever, never, recently. Compare:

\begin{align*}
\text{PRESENT PERFECT} & \quad \text{PAST SIMPLE} \\
Have\ you\ ever\ seen\ a\ ghost? & \quad Did\ you\ see\ your\ friend\ yesterday? \\
I've\ never\ been\ to\ New\ York. & \quad I\ went\ to\ London\ last\ week. \\
I've\ started\ taking\ driving\ lessons\ recently. & \quad I\ started\ taking\ driving\ lessons\ six\ weeks\ ago.
\end{align*}

В повседневной речи разговор часто начинается неопределенно с употребления present perfect, а затем, когда имеется в виду определенное время, употребляется past simple.

‘\text{Have you ever been to the United States?}’ ‘Yes, I went there in 1985.’ ‘\text{Did you go to New York (= когда вы были там в 1985)?}’

\[I've\ seen\ that\ film.\ \text{I enjoyed it (= когда я его смотрел) very\ much.}\]

Можно употреблять такие слова, как today, this morning, this afternoon и др.:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>с present perfect, если указаный период времени не завершился.</th>
<th>с past simple, если указаный период времени завершился.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[I've\ spoken\ to\ Peter\ this\ morning.\ \text{[Сегодня утром я разговаривал с Петером.]}\</td>
<td>[I spoke to Peter this morning.\ \text{[Сегодня утром я разговаривал с Петером.]}\</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Сейчас еще утро.)</td>
<td>(Сейчас может быть полдень, вечер или ночь.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Обычно употребляется past simple, а не present perfect, в вопросах, касающихся того, когда произошло действие.

\[When\ did\ you\ arrive\ home\ last\ night?\ \text{(Not: When\ have\ you\ arrived\ home\ last\ night?)}\]
EXERCISE 12A

Lynne Carter, the manager of the Timeways Travel company, is interviewing a young man called Paul Morris for a job.

Choose the correct form.

**Lynne:** Your present company is Sun Travel, isn’t it? How long have you worked/did you work there?

**Paul:** (1) I’ve worked/1 worked for them for two years.

**Lynne:** I see. And what were you doing before that?

**Paul:** (2) I’ve worked/1 worked for a student travel company in Spain.

**Lynne:** Oh, really? How long (3) have you been/were you in Spain?

**Paul:** For nearly a year. (4) I’ve moved/1 moved back to London from Spain two years ago to join Sun Travel.

**Lynne:** I see. And do you drive, Paul?

**Paul:** Yes, I do. (5) I’ve had/1 had a driving licence for five years.

**Lynne:** And have you got your own car?

**Paul:** No, not at the moment. (6) I’ve had/1 had a car in Spain, but (7) I’ve sold/1 sold it before (8) I’ve come/1 came back to Britain.

EXERCISE 12B

Complete the conversations using the present perfect simple or the past simple of the verb in brackets.

1. ‘I know Sally Robinson.’ ‘Really? How long have you known (you | know) her?’ ‘Oh, for quite a long time now.’ ‘When (you | first | meet) her?’

2. ‘(your husband | ever | have) pneumonia?’ ‘Yes, he (have) it twice. He (had) it ten years ago, and once when he (be) a child.’

3. (It’s 10 o’clock in the morning.) ‘(you | see) Mrs Carter this morning?’ ‘Yes, I (saw) her when I (arrive) in the office, but she (go) out soon afterwards.’

4. (It’s the middle of the afternoon.) I’m really hungry. I (not | have) any breakfast this morning and I (not | have) time to go out for anything to eat this afternoon.

13 Present perfect and present tense

(Настоящее совершенное и настоящее простое время)

Для обозначения длительности действия можно использовать present perfect, но не present continuous или present simple.

*She has been waiting for an hour. (Not: She is waiting for an hour.)*

*I've lived here since last year. (Not: I live here since last year.)*
EXERCISE 13A

Choose the correct form.

Example:

*We've been working/We're working* since 9 o'clock.

1 *I've been cleaning/I'm cleaning my flat for the past two hours.*
2 *Look. Can you see Simon over there? He's been sitting/He's sitting in the corner.*
3 *'How long have you been/are you ill?’ ‘Since yesterday.’
4 *Have you known/Do you know Sarah for very long?*
5 *I've been learning/I'm learning English since last year.*
6 *They've lived/They live in London now. They've been/They're there for the last six months.*

[ 4 Past perfect simple
(Прошедшее совершенное простое время)]

**Form**

Past perfect simple образуется с помощью *had* + past participle.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AFFIRMATIVE</th>
<th>NEGATIVE</th>
<th>QUESTION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>I you he she it we you they</em></td>
<td><em>had worked had not worked had</em></td>
<td><em>worked? come?</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CONTRACTIONS

'Ved = had 'Ve hadn't = had not

Some verbs are ‘regular’, other verbs are ‘irregular’:

- Past participle of regular verbs заканчиваются на-*ed*, например, *work* → *worked*. При присоединении к глаголам окончания *-ed* иногда происходят изменения в написании, например, *stop* → *stopped*. См. 188.3, 4, 6. Относительно произношения -ed см. 187.2.
- Irregular verbs имеют различные формы past participle, например, *come* → *come*; *see* → *seen*. См. 190.
2 Use

a Когда речь идет о прошедшем времени, иногда мы обращаемся к более раннему времени.

Earlier Past — Past — Present

When I telephoned Sue, she had gone out.

Past perfect (например, she had gone out) употребляется для выражения действия, состоявшегося перед другим действием в прошедшем времени (например, when I telephoned).

More examples:
We arrived at the cinema at 8.00, but the film had started at 7.30.
When I spoke to the woman I realized I had met her somewhere before.

b Past perfect - это прошедшая форма present perfect. Compare:

PRESENT PERFECT |

PAST PERFECT

/ haven't eaten all day today, so I was very hungry now. |

/ hadn't eaten all day yesterday, so I was very hungry when I got home.

c Сравните употребление past perfect и past simple:

We got to the station at 8.00, but the train had left at 7.30.
When Sue arrived, we had had dinner.

We got to the station at 7.20 and the train left at 7.30.
When Sue arrived, we had dinner. [Когда Сью прибыла, мы поужинали.] (Сью прибыла, а затем мы поужинали.)

**EXERCISE 14A**

Peter arrived late at different places yesterday.
What had happened when he arrived at each place?

Example:

1 When he arrived at the station, his train had already left.

I the station          his train | already | leave
2 the theatre          the play) already | start
3 the post office      it | already | close
4 the furniture shop   they | sell | the table he wanted
5 his friend's house   his friend j go out
6 the football stadium the game | nearly | finish
EXERCISE 14B
Choose the correct form.
Example:
The office was empty when the police arrived.
The robbers had left/left.

1. We had just started lunch when the telephone rang/rang.
2. When I opened the safe, the money had disappeared/disappeared.
3. Andrew was late for school yesterday. When he got to the classroom, the lesson had started/started.
4. They waited until everyone was ready and then they had started/started the meeting.

EXERCISE 14C
Put one verb in each sentence into the past perfect simple and the other verb into the past simple.
Example:
Mario felt (feel) very nervous when he first drove in Britain because he hadn’t driven (not | drive) on the left before.

1. Andrew _____ (do) the test before, so he _____ (find) it very easy.
2. I _____ (not | laugh) at the joke because I _____ (hear) it before.
3. We _____ (leave) the restaurant when we _____ (have) dinner.
4. When I found my wallet I _____ (discover) that somebody _____ (took) the credit cards out of it.

15 Past perfect continuous
(Прошедшее совершенное длительное время)

Form
Past perfect continuous образуется с помощью had been + ... -ing.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AFFIRMATIVE</th>
<th>NEGATIVE</th>
<th>QUESTION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/ you he she it we you they</td>
<td>had been working</td>
<td>had not been working</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Эта форма иногда называется ‘past perfect progressive’.

CONTRACTIONS
’d - had hadn’t = had not

При присоединении к глаголам окончания -ing иногда происходят изменения в написании, например, stop → stopping. См. 188.3–6.
2 Use

a Когда речь идет о прошедшем времени, иногда мы обращаемся к более раннему времени.

Dave had been driving for an hour when his car broke down.

Past perfect continuous (например, Dave had been driving for an hour) употребляется для выражения действия, которое происходило в течение определенного времени в прошлом (например, when his car broke down).

More examples:

I'd been walking for about half an hour when it suddenly started to rain.

Mr Woods had been working for 50 years when he finally retired in 1965.

b Past perfect continuous - это прошедшая форма present perfect continuous.

Compare:

PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS

I've been working hard all day, so I'm very tired now.

PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS

I'd been working hard all day, so I was very tired last night.

EXERCISE 15A

Complete the sentences using the past perfect continuous of the verbs in brackets.

Example:

I'd been standing (stand) there for nearly a half an hour when I realized I was at the wrong bus-stop.

1 Maria's sister (study) at university for eight years before she finally passed her exams.

2 ‘I'm really sorry I was so late last night,’ ‘That's OK. We (not | wait) long.’

3 The strange thing was that we (just | talk) about ghosts when we heard the noise upstairs.

4 Robert moved from Manchester to London in 1988.’ ‘How long (he | live) in Manchester?’
EXERCISE 15B

Join each idea in A with an idea from B. Make sentences using the past perfect continuous of the verbs in brackets.

Example:

1 I felt very cold because I had been standing outside for over two hours.

A

1 I felt very cold because

B

2 I (play) tennis so

3 The children's hair was wet because

4 I (not | feel) well for weeks before

5 They (travel) all day so

6 They (drive) for about half an hour when they

realized

Note

→ Некоторые глаголы, например know, want, обычно не употребляются в формах времени continuous. См. 27.

16 Future (Будущее время): will

1 Form

a will + infinitive without to (but see b below)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AFFIRMATIVE</th>
<th>NEGATIVE</th>
<th>QUESTION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/ you he she it we you they</td>
<td>will work</td>
<td>will not work</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CONTRACTIONS

'I'll = will   won't = will not

b Will употребляется со всеми лицами (/, you, he, they и др.). Можно также употреблять shall вместо will c / we, например, I/shall work (но в повседневной речи обычно используются стяжения I'll and we'll). Отрицательная форма от shall - shall not (стяжение: shan't).
Future: will

Use

*a* Will употребляется для выражения будущего действия.

```
Tomorrow will be another cold day in all parts of the country.
```

More examples:

*In the future, machines will do many of the jobs that people do today.*

*Who do you think will win the football match on Sunday?*

*We won’t arrive home before midnight tonight.*

В будущем действии, часто употребляется will со следующими глаголами и выражениями:

*think expect believe be sure be afraid hope*

*I expect they’ll be here at around 10 o’clock tomorrow morning.*

*I’m sure you’ll enjoy the film if you go and see it.*

*Will также употребляется с наречиями вероятности, например, probably, perhaps, certainly.*

*Martin will probably phone us this evening.*

*Perhaps I’ll see you tomorrow.*

*b* Will также употребляется в том случае, когда собираются что-то сделать в момент речи.

```
‘Would you like something to drink?’ ‘Oh, thank you. I’ll have some orange juice.’
‘There’s someone at the door.’ ‘I’ll see who it is.’
‘I’m going out shopping.’ ‘Oh, are you? I’ll come with you, then. I need to get some things myself.’
```
EXERCISE 16A
Derek is 18 years old now. What will he be like in 10 years from now? How will his life be different then?

Complete what Derek says using will/won't.
Example:
1 I hope I'll have a job in 10 years' time.
2 I'll probably look the same as I do now.
3 I probably not be very rich.
4 I think I'll be married.
5 I probably will have children.

Are these things true for you?

EXERCISE 16B
Complete the sentences using I'll or won't and the verbs in the box.

| go | answer | not go | put on | not have | lend | wait |

Example:
I'm tired, I think /7/ go to bed early tonight.
1 ‘I haven't got any money.’ ‘Haven't you? Oh, you some if you like.’
2 ‘The telephone is ringing.’ ‘Oh, it.’
3 I'm a bit cold. I think on a sweater.
4 ‘Would you like something to eat?’ ‘anything at the moment, thank you. I'm not very hungry.’
5 ‘I'm going out for a walk.’ ‘It's raining.’ ‘Oh, is it? Well, out now, then, until it's stopped.’

EXERCISE 16C
Peter wants to see Sally. He is talking to her on the telephone. Complete the conversation using will/won't.

Peter: Will you be at home this evening, Sally?
Sally: Well, I'm working late. I don't expect I until after 9.00, so I home until quite late.
Peter: Oh, I see. What about tomorrow? (you) free for lunch?
Sally: No, I'm afraid I in a meeting at lunchtime.
Peter: What time do you think (the meeting) ?
Sally: I'm not sure, but it probably before 2.00. Listen, Peter. Why don't we meet for a coffee after work tomorrow evening?
Peter: What time (you) finished tomorrow?
Sally: I free by 6.00.
Peter: All right. I you at your office at 6.00, then.
Sally: Right. I you then.

Note
- Will также употребляется для выражения: предложения, например: I'll post this letter for you. (CM. 49.1); просьбы, например: Will you post this letter for me? (CM. 48.3); отказа, например: The window won't open. (CM. 52); обещания, например: I will be careful, I promise. (CM. 53); приказа и угрозы, например: Stop making that noise or I'll scream! (CM. 53).
17 Future (Будущее время): going to

1 Form

*be* + going to + infinitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AFFIRMATIVE</th>
<th>NEGATIVE</th>
<th>QUESTION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I am</td>
<td>I am not</td>
<td>am I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you are</td>
<td>you are not</td>
<td>are you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he going to work</td>
<td>he is not going to work</td>
<td>he is it going to work?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she it</td>
<td>she is it</td>
<td>she it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we you are</td>
<td>we you are not</td>
<td>we you are they</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>they</td>
<td>they</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CONTRACTIONS

'm = am
're = are
's = is
'aren't = are not
'isn't = is not

2 Use

В предложениях с going to присутствует связь между будущим и настоящим временем:

a Going to употребляется для выражения действия в будущем, результаты которого можно наблюдать в настоящем.

*Look at those black clouds in the sky. It's going to rain. Those people are going to get wet.*

More examples:

*Hurry up! It's getting late. You're going to miss your train. Look out! That ladder is going to fall!*

В связи с этим в предложениях с going to часто речь идет о недалеком будущем.

b Going to также употребляется для выражения намерения в будущем. Going to употребляется в том случае, когда уже решено что-то сделать.

*I'm going to have a shower.*
More examples:

‘Why have you moved all the furniture out of this room?’ ‘I’m going to clean the carpet.’
‘Lynne has just sold her car.’ ‘Is she going to buy a new one?’

EXERCISE 17A

What is going to happen in the pictures?

Example:

She’s going to answer the phone.

EXERCISE 17B

Complete the sentences using going to and the verbs in brackets.

Example:

‘I’ve made up my mind I’m going to change (change) my job.’ ‘What are you going
to do (you | do) ?’ ‘I’m not sure yet.’

1 ‘What_____ (you | wear) at the party on Saturday?’ ‘I haven’t decided yet.
What about you?_____ (you | wear) your new black dress?’
2 ‘Why have you bought all that wallpaper? What_____ (you | do)?’
   ‘_____ (decorate) the living room.’
3 He’s decided that he_____ (not | leave) school this summer. He_____ (stay) on for another year.
4 ‘I_____ (buy) a new motorbike.’ ‘How_____ (you | pay) for it? You haven’t got enough money.’
   ‘I_____ (ask) my bank to lend me the money.’

Note
- См. также 18 Future: will и going to.
- Форма прошедшего времени was/were + going to употребляется для выражения ‘будущее время в прошлом’, например: / was going to stay at home last night, but I decided to go out instead. СМ. 25.
18 Future: will and going to (Будущее время: will и going to)

1 *Will* и *going to* употребляются для выражения будущего действия, но между ними существуют отличия:

*Will* употребляется для выражения действия, которое, как считается или предполагается, произойдет в будущем.

*Going to* употребляется для выражения действия в будущем, предпосылки которого имеются в настоящем.

That boat doesn't look very safe. It'll sink in that heavy sea.

Look at that boat! It's going to sink.

Don't climb up that tree. You'll fall and hurt yourself.

Look out! You're going to fall!

2 *Will* и *going to* употребляются для выражения действий, которые мы намереваемся выполнить, но здесь существуют различия:

*Will* употребляется в том случае, когда принимается решение что-то сделать в момент речи.

‘Oh dear! I've spilt some wine on my jacket.’ ‘Don’t worry. I'll clean it for you.’

What shall I do tomorrow? I know! I'll paint the kitchen.

*Going to* употребляется в том случае, когда уже принято решение что-то сделать.

‘Why have you moved all the furniture out of this room?’ ‘I’m going to clean the carpet.’

‘Why are you putting on those old clothes?’ ‘I’m going to paint the kitchen.’
EXERCISE 18A

Complete the sentences using will or going to and the verbs in brackets.

Example:

‘What can I do this evening? I know! I’ll go (go) and see Sue.’

1 ‘Someone told me that you’re moving from London.’ ‘That’s right. I _____ (live) in Manchester.’

2 ‘Would you like to come to my house this evening?’ ‘Yes, all right. I _____ (come) at 9 o’clock.’

3 I don’t feel very well. I think I _____ (faint).

4 ‘It’s Simon’s birthday soon. I’ve decided to buy him the new Blues Brothers record.’ ‘Oh, he doesn’t like the Blues Brothers any more.’ ‘Oh, really? Well, I _____ (get) him something to wear.’

5 Oh, no! Look at those cars! They _____ (crash)!

6 ‘I could lend you some money if you like.’ ‘Could you? I _____ (pay) you back on Friday.’

1.9 Present continuous for the future

(Настоящее длительное время для выражения будущего действия)

Present continuous употребляется для выражения действия, которое уже спланировано или намечено выполнить в будущем.

‘What are you doing on Saturday evening?’ ‘I’m meeting Sarah.’

Sarah is taking an exam on Monday.
We’re visiting some friends in Scotland next weekend.

Когда с этой целью употребляется present continuous, то часто выражается будущее время (например, on Saturday evening, on Monday, this afternoon, next weekend).
EXERCISE 19A

Look at Sally's diary for next week.
Then complete what she says she is doing next week.
Use the words in the box.

work meet do go see

On Monday evening I'm going to a disco with my friend Louise. On Tuesday evening I _____ 1 _____ late _____ 2 _____ (not) anything on Wednesday evening. On Thursday evening I _____ 3 _____ my friend Julie at 7 o'clock. I've got an appointment with the doctor on Friday evening. I _____ 4 _____ him at 6.30. Then on Saturday I _____ 5 _____ to the cinema with Peter. We 6 at the Espresso Cafe at 7.30.

What about you? What _____ 7 _____ (you) next week? _____ 8 _____ (you) anything special?

Note

— Относительно формы present continuous см. 1.1.

20 Future: present continuous and going to
(Будущее время: настоящее длительное время и going to)

1 Когда речь идет о действиях, которые уже намечены или спланированы для выполнения в будущем, можно использовать present continuous (см. 19) или going to (см. 17).

I'm having lunch with Lynne tomorrow.
I'm going to have lunch with Lynne tomorrow.

2 Когда делается прогноз относительно будущего, можно использовать going to (или will), но не present continuous.

It's going to rain tomorrow. (Нельзя сказать: It's raining tomorrow.)
EXERCISE 20A

Complete the sentences using the present continuous or going to. Sometimes either structure is possible.

Examples:

1 I (see) Sarah this afternoon. I'm seeing Sarah this afternoon. I'm going to see Sarah this afternoon.
2 Hurry up! We (miss) our bus. Hurry up! We're going to miss our bus.
3 It (snow) later tonight.
4 She (meet) them tomorrow morning.
5 What (you | do) this afternoon?
6 Be careful! You (break) that glass.
7 He (not | come) next Saturday.
8 Look out! You (hurt) yourself with that knife.

21 Present simple for the future

(Настоящее простое время для выражения будущего)

Present simple употребляется для выражения событий в будущем, которые являются частью расписания или программы.

Here are some of the programmes on TV tomorrow evening.

What time does the tennis start tomorrow evening? 'At 6.15.'

The film starts at 7.30 and finishes at 9.00.

More examples:

What time does your plane leave tomorrow?
Next summer the school holidays begin on July 25th and end on September 10th.

Present simple употребляется таким образом, когда речь идет о чем-то в будущем как факте, плане или договоренности, которые не подлежат изменению.
EXERCISE 21A
Complete the sentences using the present simple of the verbs in brackets.

Example:
Our boat leaves (leave) Dover at 2.00 on Friday and arrives (arrive) in Calais at 6.00.

1. The conference _____ (start) on June 3rd, and _____ (finish) on June 10th.
2. We've got plenty of time. Our plane _____ (not | take off) until 9 o'clock.
3. Tonight's concert _____ (begin) at 8.00 and it _____ (not | end) until 11.00.
4. When _____ (the next train | leave) for Bristol?

EXERCISE 22A
Put one verb in each sentence into the present simple and the other verb into the will/won't form.

Example:
If I fail (fail) the exam, I'll take (take) it again.

1. When I _____ (see) him I _____ (give) him your message.
2. I _____ (buy) a new car as soon as I _____ (have) enough money.
3. If the weather _____ (be) nice tomorrow, we _____ (go) sailing.
4. I _____ (look after) your cat while you _____ (be) on holiday.
5. He (not | do) anything until he _____ (hear) from us.
6. The door _____ (not | open) unless you (push) it _____ hard.
7. We _____ (play) tennis this evening as long as it _____ (not | rain).
8. I _____ (lend) you the money provided you _____ (pay) me back tomorrow.

Note
-- Present perfect может также употребляться после when, if и др. в том случае, когда первое действие завершится перед вторым, например: I'll lend you the newspaper when I've finished it.
23 Future continuous (Будущее длительное время): will be + ... -ing

1 Form

a will be + ... -ing (but see b below)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AFFIRMATIVE</th>
<th>NEGATIVE</th>
<th>QUESTION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I you he she it will be working</td>
<td>I you he she it will not be working</td>
<td>I you he she it will be working ?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we you they</td>
<td></td>
<td>we you they</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Эта форма иногда называется ‘future progressive’.

CONTRACTIONS

‘Il’ = will won’t = will not

При присоединении к глаголам окончания -ing иногда происходят изменения в написании, например, live → living. См. 188.3–6.

b Shall может употребляться вместо will с I и we, например, I/we shall be working (но в разговорной речи обычно используются стяжения /7/ и we’ll). Отрицательная форма от shall - shall not (стяжение: shan ‘t).

2 Use

a Will be + ... -ing употребляется для выражения действия, которое будет в развитии в определенное время в будущем.

I’ll be having dinner at 7.00.  
Don’t phone me at 8.00. I’ll be doing my homework then.  
What will you be doing this time next week?
Will be + -ing также употребляется для выражения действий в будущем, которые уже спланированы или которые являются частью обычного распорядка.

I’ll be driving into town later on. Do you want a lift?
‘Would you like me to give Peter a message for you?’ ‘Oh, I don’t want to trouble you.’
‘It’s no trouble, really. I’ll be seeing Peter tomorrow anyway.’

Will be + -ing часто употребляется как вежливая форма вопроса о чьих-либо планах, особенно, при желании что-то сделать для кого-то.

‘Will you be going out this morning?’ ‘Yes, why?’ ‘Oh, could you get me a newspaper?’
‘Will you be using your camera at the weekend?’ ‘I wondered if I could borrow it.’

Когда will be + -ing употребляется с этой целью, то часто предполагается, что отсутствует желание вносить изменения в чьи-то планы.

EXERCISE 23A

Lynne Carter is going from London to Manchester on business tomorrow.
Look at Lynne’s plans.

What will Lynne be doing at these times tomorrow?

Example:

8.30
At 8.30 tomorrow she’ll be flying to Manchester.

1 11.00  2 13.30  3 15.30
4 16.30  5 17.30

EXERCISE 23B

Complete the sentences in A using the will be + -ing form. Find a question in B to go with each sentence.

Example:

1 I’ll be going past the post office. Shall I post your letter?

A

1 I’ll (go) past the post office.
2 (you | speak) to Robert?
3 I’ll (not | use) my car tonight.
4 We’ll (get) some concert tickets.
5 When (you | visit) Sue again?
6 (you | drive) into town today?

B

Would you like to borrow it?
Shall we get one for you?
Can you give her something?
Could I have a lift?
Shall I post your letter?
Can you give him a message?
### 24 Future perfect (Будущее совершенное время): will have + past participle

#### 1 Form

- **will have** + past participle (but see b below)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AFFIRMATIVE</th>
<th>NEGATIVE</th>
<th>QUESTION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I you he she it</td>
<td>will have finished</td>
<td>I you he she it will not have finished</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we you they</td>
<td>gone</td>
<td>we you they will gone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>you they have finished?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**CONTRACTIONS**

'II = will  won't = will not

Some verbs are **regular**, other verbs are **irregular**:

- Past participle of regular verbs заканчиваются на -ed, например, *finish* → *finished*. Когда к глаголу присоединяется -ed, иногда происходят изменения в написании, например, *stop* → *stopped*. См. 188.3, 4, 6. Относительно произношения -ed см. 187.2.
- Irregular verbs имеют различные формы past participle, например, *go* → *gone*; *be* → *been*. См. 190.

#### 2 Use

*Will have* + past participle может употребляться для выражения действия, которое завершится к определенному времени в будущем (но не позже этого времени).
Когда употребляется эта конструкция, речь идет о будущем времени, и наши взоры как бы обращены с точки зрения будущего времени, чтобы выразить завершение действия.

I'll have finished dinner by 8.00.
I'll have worked here for a year next September.

EXERCISE 24A
What will life be like in the year 2100? Complete the sentences using the will have + past participle form.

Example:
By 2100, the world's population will have increased (increase) to around 30,000 million.

1 Life____(become) more automated by then.
2 Computers____(take over) many of the jobs that people do today.
3 The earth's supplies of oil, coal and gas____(run out).
4____(scientists | find) other sources of energy?
5 How_____education____(change) ?
6____(we | find) a way to feed all the people in the world?

Note
- Возможна также форма continuous: will have been + ... -ing, например: They'll be tired when they arrive. They'll have been travelling all day.

25 Future in the past (Будущее время в прошедшем): was/were going to

Was/were going to + infinitive можно употреблять для выражения действия, спланированного в прошлом для будущего.

They were going to get married, but in the end they changed their minds.

Обратите внимание, что когда используется эта конструкция, то часто имеется в виду, что спланированное будущее действие не произошло.

/ was going to stay at home last night, but I decided to go out instead.
We were going to eat at the Italian restaurant, but it was full, so we ate somewhere else.
EXERCISE 25A

Join each idea in A with an idea from B. Make sentences using was/were going to and the verbs in brackets.

Example:

1 / was going to take a taxi home last night, but I didn't have enough money, so I had to walk.

A   B
1 I (take) a taxi home but it rained all afternoon, 
   last night, so we stayed at home.
2 We (write) to them when but my boss offered me more money, 
   we were on holiday, so I decided to stay.
3 She (drive) to Scotland but I didn't have enough money, 
   last weekend, so I had to walk.
4 We (play) tennis but she had seen it before, 
   yesterday afternoon, so she went to bed early.
5 She (watch) the film on but her car broke down, 
   TV last night, so she went by train.
6 I (change) my job last year. but we changed our minds and 
   phone them instead.

Note

- Иногда можно также выразить future in the past с помощью would, например, / was very surprised you failed the exam. I thought you would pass easily.

26 Continuous forms with always (Формы длительного времени с always)

1 Always может употребляться с continuous или past continuous в значении ‘слишком часто’.

   He's always saying stupid things.
   Our neighbours are always having arguments.
   She was always crying when she was a baby.

   С помощью такого употребления always выражается гнев или раздражение (то, что случается слишком часто).

2 Always обычно обозначает ‘во всех случаях’. В этом значении always употребляется с формами простых, а не длительных времен. Compare:

   always with simple forms
   She always comes to work at 8.30.
   I always pay my rent by cheque.
   They always had dinner at 8 o'clock.

   always with continuous forms
   She's always coming to work late.
   I'm always paying for you when we go out. Why don't you pay sometimes?
   They were always having arguments.

Обратите внимание, что always следует перед смысловым глаголом (например, she always comes), но после вспомогательного глагола be (например, she's always coming).
3 Когда форма continuous употребляется для выражения чего-то, что происходит слишком часто, вместо always можно употреблять слова forever и continually.

You’re forever losing things.
He’s continually saying stupid things.

4 Always не употребляется лишь с формой continuous с отрицательным оттенком (для выражения очень частых действий). Эта конструкция также употребляется, когда что-то происходит чаще, чем ожидалось.

She’s always helping other people.
I’m always meeting Maria in the park. (by accident)

EXERCISE 26A
Complete the sentences using always and the present continuous or past continuous of the verbs in brackets.
Examples:
He’s a really miserable man. He’s always complaining (complain) about something.
When I was a child, my sister was always teasing (tease) me.

1 Simon is very untidy. He leave his clothes lying on the bathroom floor.
2 When we were children, my brother was bigger than me and he hit me.
3 My sister really makes me angry. She borrow my things without asking me.
4 My memory is getting very bad these days. I forget things.
5 Our old car was very unreliable. It break down.
6 My parents are very lucky. They win prizes in competitions.

27 Verbs not used in the continuous
(Глаголы, не употребляющиеся в формах длительного времени)

1 Некоторые глаголы (например, like, understand) обычно употребляются лишь в формах простых, а не длительных времен. Можно сказать / like or she didn’t understand, но нельзя сказать I’m liking or she wasn’t understanding.

Ниже приведены некоторые из наиболее важных глаголов, которые обычно не употребляются в формах continuous:

Глаголы мышления

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>think [полагать]</th>
<th>believe</th>
<th>understand</th>
<th>know</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>see [понимать]</td>
<td>recognize</td>
<td>suppose</td>
<td>remember</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imagine</td>
<td>forget</td>
<td>mean</td>
<td>realize</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I think you’re right. (Not: I’m thinking...)
Do you know Billy Palmer? (Not: Are you knowing...?)
She didn’t understand what you said. (Not: She wasn’t understanding...)

48
"Чувственные" глаголы

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>like</th>
<th>dislike</th>
<th>hate</th>
<th>love</th>
<th>prefer</th>
<th>want</th>
<th>wish</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

I like this music. (Not: I'm liking...)
Do you want to go now? (Not: Are you wanting...?)

Глаголы восприятия

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>see</th>
<th>hear</th>
<th>smell</th>
<th>taste</th>
<th>feel</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

We heard someone outside. (Not: We were hearing...)
This spaghetti tastes delicious. (Not: This spaghetti is tasting...)

Другие глаголы

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>have [обладать]</th>
<th>own</th>
<th>belong to</th>
<th>owe</th>
<th>need</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>include</td>
<td>cost</td>
<td>contain</td>
<td>weigh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sound</td>
<td>be</td>
<td>seem</td>
<td>deserve</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

How long has Sally had her motorbike? (Not: How long has Sally been having...?)
/ weigh 70 kilos. (Not: I'm weighing...)
We were at home last night. (Not: We were being...)

2 Но обратите внимание, что некоторые из вышеперечисленных глаголов имеют более одного значения; эти глаголы можно употреблять в формах continuous, когда они описывают действия. Compare:

**SIMPLE USES**

I think you're right. (think = считать, полагать)
I've had my car for six months. (have = иметь, обладать)
Do you see what I mean? (see = понимать)

**CONTINUOUS USES**

Ssh! I'm thinking. (think = думать)
I've been having lunch. (have = принимать)
Are you seeing the doctor tomorrow? (see = посещать)

Сравните также употребление be с формами simple и continuous tenses:

He's stupid. (вообще)

He's being stupid. [Он сейчас ведет себя глупо.]

3 Can и could часто употребляются с глаголами восприятия: see, hear, smell, taste, feel и некоторыми глаголами мышления, например, understand, remember.

I can see you.
We could hear someone outside.
4 Сравните hear, see и listen, look, watch.

Когда мы слышим (hear) или видим (see), то это не всегда преднамеренные действия и обычно эти глаголы не употребляются в формах continuous.

*When I was in the garden I heard the telephone ring.*

Когда мы слушаем (listen), смотрим (look) или наблюдаем (watch), то это преднамеренные действия и эти глаголы можно употреблять в формах continuous.

*Ssh! I'm listening to the radio.*

They *were* watching TV last night.

5 Глаголы физического чувства, например feel, ache и hurt, могут употребляться и в формах simple и continuous.

*I am feeling/I feel* ill.

*My head is aching/My head aches.*

**EXERCISE 27A**

Choose the correct form.

Example:

She says she didn't take the money, but / *don't believe/I'm not believing* her.

1 You're very quiet. What *do you think/are you thinking* about?
2 What *do you think/are you thinking* about my idea?
3 How long *has Simon known/has Simon been knowing* Maria?
4 What does this word *mean/is this word meaning*?
5 *Did you hear/Were you hearing* the news?
6 *You don't watch/You aren't watching* the TV at the moment. Why don't you switch it off?
7 I'm sorry, but / *didn't remember/I wasn't remembering* to get your newspaper when I went shopping.
8 *Do you like/Are you liking* this painting?
9 *She has always wanted/She has always been wanting* to be a doctor.
10 The man was a stranger to me. / *had never seen/I had never been seeing* him before.

**Note**

- Глаголы, которые не употребляются в continuous, могут иметь окончание -ing и выступать, например, как подлежащее: *Knowing how to drive is very useful* и после предлогов, например: *I'm looking forward to having a car of my own.*
EXERCISE 28A

Complete the sentences using a suitable present or past form of the verbs in brackets.

(i) Maria Fernandez is Spanish. She lives (live) in Madrid, where she ___1___ (work) for an export company. She ___2___ (be) with this company for two years now. At the moment she ___3___ (study) English on a one-month intensive course in London. She ___4___ (be) in London for one week now. She ___5___ (arrive) there last Saturday. This is not Maria's first time in Britain. She ___6___ (be) there twice before.

(ii) I woke up when I ___1___ (hear) a noise downstairs. I ___2___ (get) out of bed quietly because my wife ___3___ (still | sleep) and ___4___ (go) to the top of the stairs. It was dark, but I could see two men downstairs in the living room. They ___5___ (try) to open the safe. When I ___6___ (switch on) the light, the two men ___7___ (run) into the kitchen and ___8___ (escape) out of the back door. Then, before I ___9___ (have) a chance to do anything, I ___10___ (hear) a police car pull up outside the house. A neighbour of mine ___11___ (see) the men breaking into my house and ___12___ (phone) for the police.

EXERCISE 28B

Choose the correct form.

(i) It's 6.30 in the evening and Sally has just come home. Simon is in the kitchen.

Sally: Hi, Simon. Something ___1___ (smell/is smelling) nice. What ___2___ (do you | are you) cooking?
Simon: ___3___ / make/I'm making some onion soup. Would you like some?
Sally: No, thanks. I'm not hungry at the moment. ___4___ (I've | I've just had) something to eat in town.
Simon: Oh? What ___5___ (did you | have/ do you have)?
Sally: I ___6___ (met/I met) Peter at 5.00 and ___7___ (we | we were) going/we went to Alfredo's for a pizza. Can I just taste the soup? ___8___ (It's | It looks) delicious. Umm! Very good. I think it's the best onion soup ___9___ (I've | I've ever) tasted/ever been tasting!
(ii) Andrew’s friend, Les, has bought a new bicycle.

Les: Hi, Andrew. (1) Do you like/Are you liking my new bike?
Andrew: Yes, very much! I didn’t know you’d bought a bike. How long (2) have you had/did you have it?
Les: Oh, (3) I’ve only had/’ve only been having it for a few days. (4) I bought/’ve bought it last weekend.
Andrew: How much (5) did it cost/has it cost?
Les: £120. (6) I’d been saving/’m saving for over a year to buy it.

(iii) Mrs Wood has hurt her arm. She is at the doctor’s.

Doctor: Does your arm hurt when you move it, Mrs Woods?
Mrs Woods: Yes, a little. (1) It’s hurting/It’s been hurting me for about a week now. (2) I fell/’m falling off a ladder when (3) I cleaned/’m cleaning the windows at home last Tuesday. (4) Are you thinking/Do you think that (5) I’ve broken/’v e been breaking my arm, doctor?
Doctor: No, (6) you aren’t breaking/’v e been breaking it, Mrs Woods. But I think you should go to hospital for an X-ray.

29 Review of the future (Обзор будущих времен)

EXERCISE 29A

Choose the correct form.

Example:

I can’t go to the beach this afternoon. I’ll play/’m playing tennis.

1 It’s raining/It’s going to rain tomorrow.
2 Do you do/Are you doing anything this evening?
3 I’ll write to you when / arrive/I’ll arrive in Brazil.
4 I feel terrible. I think I’ll be/’m going to be sick.
5 I’ve got wine or beer. Which would you like?’ ‘Oh, thank you. I’ll have/’m going to have beer, please.’
6 If the weather is/will be nice this afternoon, we’ll have a picnic.
7 ‘What are you doing with that ladder?’ ‘I’ll repair/’m going to repair the roof.’
8 It’s raining outside. Would you like to borrow an umbrella?’ ‘Oh, thank you. I’ll bring/’m going to bring it back tomorrow.’
9 We’re going on holiday next Monday. This time next week we’ll be lying/’e ll lie on a beach in Turkey.
10 Ben and Patty Crawford are on holiday in Europe. They’ll have visited/They’ll be visiting seven countries by the time they get home to Canada at the end of the month.
30 Imperative and *let’s* (Повелительное наклонение и *let’s*)

1 Повелительное наклонение

а Imperative употребляется для различных целей, например, отдавать приказы, делать предложения, запросы и предупреждения.

*Stop!*

*Have some more coffee.*

*Tell your boss you can’t work late tonight.*

*Help me with these bags, please.*

*Look out! Be careful.*

б Imperative имеет ту же форму, что и инфинитив без *to*.

*Sit down.*

*Open the window.*

c Отрицательная форма imperative образуется с помощью *don’t/do not*.

*Don’t sit down.*

*Don’t open the window.*

*Do not feed the animals.* (например, надпись в зоопарке)

d Для создания более усиленной формы imperative нужно перед ним поставить *do*. Это делается, например, когда необходимо быть вежливым или когда подчеркивается нетерпение, нетерпеливость.

*Do sit down.*

*Do stop making that noise!*

e Imperative обычно не имеет подлежащего, но можно использовать существительное или местоимение, для того чтобы уточнить, к кому обращаются.

*Andrew shut the door, please.*

*Have some more coffee, Kate.*

*Sit down, everybody.*

f После imperative можно употреблять краткие общие вопросы *will/won’t/would you?* *can/can’t/could you?*

*Shut the door, will you?*

*Sit down, won’t you?*

*Help me with these bags, could you?*

2 Let’s

а Let’s (= *let us*) + infinitive без *to* употребляется в качестве первого лица множественного числа повелительного наклонения для внесения предложений.

*We’re late. Let’s hurry.*

*‘What shall we do this evening?’ ‘Let’s stay at home.’*

б Отрицательную форму можно образовать с помощью *let’s not* или *don’t let’s*.

*Let’s not wait.* *Don’t let’s wait.*

Некоторые считают, что форма *let’s not* является более *правильной*. 
30 Imperative and let’s

c Do перед let's можно употреблять для эмфазы.
Do let’s hurry.
d После let's можно употреблять краткий общий вопрос shall we?
Let’s go to the cinema, shall we?

EXERCISE 30A
What are these people saying? Find the words in the box.
Example:

Put that! It's hot.
Take off me the spanner.
Do turn your shirt, please.
Please take that music down, Andrew!
Don’t touch a seat, Mr Woods.
Pass this in the fridge, could you?

Take off our shirt, please.

EXERCISE 30B
You are with a friend. Reply to your friend by making suggestions, Use Let’s and the words in the box.
Example:
Friend: ‘I’m hungry.’ You: ‘Let’s have something to eat.’
1 ‘I’d like to see a film.’
2 ‘I don’t feel like waiting for the bus.’
3 ‘I’m cold.’
4 ‘It’s Sue’s birthday soon.’
5 ‘It’s raining hard outside.’
1 Be (Быть)

Form

Present form of be

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AFFIRMATIVE</th>
<th>NEGATIVE</th>
<th>QUESTION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>I</strong></td>
<td><strong>I</strong></td>
<td><strong>I</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>am</td>
<td>am not</td>
<td>am I?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>you are</td>
<td>you are</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>are</td>
<td>are not</td>
<td>are you?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he</td>
<td>he is</td>
<td>he?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she</td>
<td>she is</td>
<td>she?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td>it is</td>
<td>it?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>we are</td>
<td>we?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>you are</td>
<td>are you?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>are</td>
<td>are not</td>
<td>are they</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>they are</td>
<td>they are</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CONTRACTIONS

'm = am
're = are
's = is
aren't = are not
isn't = is not

Past form of be

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AFFIRMATIVE</th>
<th>NEGATIVE</th>
<th>QUESTION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>I</strong></td>
<td><strong>I</strong></td>
<td><strong>I</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>was</td>
<td>was not</td>
<td>was I?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>you were</td>
<td>you were</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>were</td>
<td>were not</td>
<td>were you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he</td>
<td>he was</td>
<td>he?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she</td>
<td>she was</td>
<td>she?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td>it was</td>
<td>it?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we</td>
<td>we were</td>
<td>we?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you</td>
<td>you were</td>
<td>are you?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>were</td>
<td>were not</td>
<td>are they</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>they were</td>
<td>they are</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CONTRACTIONS

wasn't = was not
weren't = were not

Use

Be употребляется для получения и предоставления информации о людях и предметах.

*My name is Maria. I'm from Spain.*

*Is Ken ready? No, he isn't.*

*'Were you at home last night?' 'No, I wasn't. I was at the cinema.'

Anna Pavlova was a famous Russian dancer.
EXERCISE 31A

Complete the conversations using the words in the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>am ('m)</th>
<th>am not ('m not)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>are ('re)</td>
<td>are not (aren't)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is ('s)</td>
<td>is not (isn't)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(i) James is at a party. He has just seen his friend Rosie.

James: Hello, Rosie. How are you?
Rosie: Oh, hello, James. I am fine, thanks. How are you?
James: I am too bad, thank you.

(a few moments later)

James: Who is that girl over there? Do you know her?
Rosie: Yes, her name is Carla. She is Italian.
James: Is she a student at the college?
Rosie: No, she isn't.

(ii) Sally is waiting outside the bus station. Her friend Peter is late.

Peter: Hello, Sally. Sorry, I am very late?
Sally: Yes, you are.
Peter: What is the time?
Sally: It is almost half past seven.
Peter: Really? Oh, I am sorry, Sally is you angry?
Sally: No, I am not angry, but I am very hungry. Let's go for something to eat.

(iii) Mr and Mrs Ash are from Canada. They have just arrived in England. They are speaking to a customs officer at Heathrow Airport in London.

Officer: Where are you from?
Mrs Ash: We are from Canada.
Officer: Are you here on holiday?
Mrs Ash: Yes, we are.
Officer: Is this your first visit to England?
Mrs Ash: Well, it is my husband's first visit, but I've been here before.
Officer: I see. Are these your suitcases?
Mrs Ash: Yes, they are.
Officer: And what about this bag? Is this yours, too?
Mrs Ash: No, it isn't yours.
EXERCISE 31B

There was a robbery in London at 10 o’clock last night.
A police inspector is interviewing Eddie Cooper about the robbery.

Complete the conversation. Use was and were.

Inspector: Were you in London last night, Cooper?
Cooper: Yes, I 1 .

Inspector: Where 2 you at 10 o’clock last night?
Cooper: At 10 o’clock? I 3 in a pub called The Bell.

Inspector: And what about your friends Jack Callaghan and Frankie Dobbs? 4 they in the pub with you?
Cooper: No, they 5 n’t, Inspector.

Inspector: Where 6 they, then?
Cooper: I don’t know where they 7 , but they 8 n’t with me.

Inspector: 9 you on your own in The Bell?
Cooper: No, I 10 n’t. My girlfriend Diana 11 with me.

Inspector: And 12 she with you all evening?
Cooper: Yes, she 13 .

Note
— Относительно there + be, eg, There’s a bank in West Street, CM. 32.
— Be также употребляется как вспомогательный глагол в формах continuous, например: He’s working (present continuous), He was working (past continuous); и с going to, например: He’s going to work. Относительно форм continuous см. 1, 5, 9, 15, 23; относительно going to см. 17, 20. Be также употребляется как вспомогательный глагол в страдательном залоге, например: It was made in Japan. См. 59–60.

32 There is, there are (Конструкция There is, there are)

1 Когда речь идет о чем-то существующем, обычно предложение начинается с there + be, а подлежащее ставится после be.

There is a bank in West Street. (We do not normally say: A bank is in West Street.)

Эта конструкция употребляется с ‘неопределенными’ подлежащими (eg, a man, some letters, anybody).

There’s a man at the door.
There are some letters for you.
‘Is there anybody at home?’ ‘No, there isn’t.’
32 There is, there are

Эта конструкция может употребляться с различными формами be. Например:

There is a bank in West Street. (present tense)
There was a telephone call for you last night. (past tense)
There has been an accident. (present perfect)
There will be a lot of people at the party. (will form) etc (и др.)

Обратите внимание, что если подлежащее во множественном числе, be также принимает форму множественного числа. Compare:

There's a man at the door.  There are some men at the door.
There was a telephone call for you last night.  There were two telephone calls for you last night.
There has been an accident.  There have been a lot of accidents recently.

Compare there is/are and it is/they are:

There + be употребляется для выражения того, что что-то существует; личное местоимение eg, it, they + be (или другой глагол) употребляется для сообщения больших подробностей.

There's a letter for you. It's from Australia.
‘There’s a man at the door.’  ‘It’s Mr Davis.’
There are some biscuits in the kitchen. They're in the cupboard.

EXERCISE 32A
Complete the sentences using there and the verb forms in the box.

is are was were has been will be

Example:
There was a terrible accident in Western Road yesterday.

1 Look_____a policeman over there. Can you see him?
2 How many people_____at the party last night?
3 I think_____some snow later this evening.
4 Excuse me_____a post office near here?
5_____six hotels in this street ten years ago, now_____only two.
6_____a lot of cold weather recently.

EXERCISE 32B
Complete the sentences using the words in the box.

there it they is are

Example:
‘Is there a police station near here?’  ‘Yes, there is. It’s in East Street.’

1_____a good programme on TV this evening_____about the history of pop music.
2_____some envelopes in my bedroom.
   _____on my desk.
3 ‘_____any beer in the kitchen?’  ‘Yes, _____in the fridge.’
4 ‘_____a man waiting outside. Who_____?’  ‘Jim Brown.’
5 ‘Look!_____a light on in my bedroom!’  ‘_____somebody in there.’
53 Have and have got (Иметь)

1 В британском варианте английского языка часто употребляется have got вместо have в значении 'иметь, обладать'.

| I've got a new camera.  | I have a new camera.  
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I haven't got any paper.</td>
<td>I don't have any paper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Have you got a pen?</td>
<td>Do you have a pen?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He's got brown eyes and black hair.</td>
<td>He has brown eyes and black hair.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

В этих случаях have got имеет точно такое же значение, как и have; got здесь - 'пустое' слово. Have got более неформальное; оно очень часто употребляется в разговорной речи и, например, в письмах к друзьям.

2 Form

a Present form of have got

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AFFIRMATIVE</th>
<th>NEGATIVE</th>
<th>QUESTION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I you have got</td>
<td>I you have not got</td>
<td>have I got?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he has got</td>
<td>he has not got</td>
<td>he got?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she has got</td>
<td>she has not got</td>
<td>she got?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td>it</td>
<td>it got?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we you have got</td>
<td>we you have not got</td>
<td>we you have got?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>they</td>
<td>they have got?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CONTRACTIONS
've got = have got
'haven't got = have not got
's got = has got
'hasn't got = has not got

b Present form of have (1)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AFFIRMATIVE</th>
<th>NEGATIVE</th>
<th>QUESTION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I you have</td>
<td>I you do not have</td>
<td>do I have?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he has</td>
<td>he does not have</td>
<td>he have?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>she has</td>
<td>she does not have</td>
<td>she have?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td>it</td>
<td>it have?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we you have</td>
<td>we you do not have</td>
<td>we you have?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>they</td>
<td>they have?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CONTRACTIONS
don't = do not
doesn't = does not
Present form of *have* (2)

В отрицательных формах и вопросах *have* может также употребляться без *got* и без *do/does*:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AFFIRMATIVE</th>
<th>NEGATIVE</th>
<th>QUESTION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I / you / have</td>
<td>I / you / have not</td>
<td>have I? / you?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he / she / has</td>
<td>he / she / has not</td>
<td>have he? / she?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td>it</td>
<td>have it?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we / you / have</td>
<td>we / you / have not</td>
<td>have we? / you?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>they</td>
<td>have they?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**CONTRACTIONS**

've = have  haben't = have not  
's = has  hasn't = has not

Но это не очень распространено в разговорной речи.

3 Когда речь идет о чем-то повторяемом, обычно употребляется *have* (с употреблением *do/does* в отрицательных формах и вопросах), а не *have got*. Compare:

/ often have headaches.  I've got a terrible headache at the moment.  I haven't got much time today.

I don't usually have much time for lunch.  *I haven't* got much time today.

*Have (got)* не употребляется в формах continuous в значении 'иметь, обладать'. Например, нельзя сказать: *I'm having got a new camera.*

Когда речь идет о прошлом, обычно употребляется *had*, а не *had got*.

*I had a headache last night.* (Not: *I had got a headache...*)

*Did* употребляется в отрицательных формах и вопросах в прошедшем времени.

/ didn't have a pen.

*Did you have a key?*

*Got* не употребляется в кратких ответах.

*‘Have you got a pen?’  ‘Yes, I have.’*(Not:  ‘Yes, I have got.’)
EXERCISE 33A

Complete the sentences using have got where possible. If a form of have got is not possible, use the correct form of have.

Example:
‘Excuse me, have you got (you) the time?’ ‘Yes, it’s twenty-five past six.’

1 ‘Let’s have meatballs for supper——(we) any potatoes?’ ‘No, we____ but we some rice.’
2 My brother____dark hair now, but when he was a child he____fair hair.
3 ‘I’ll phone you tomorrow.’ ‘_____ (you) my telephone number?’
4 ‘_____ (we) any aspirins?’ ‘Yes, there are some in the bathroom cupboard.
   Why?_____ (you) a headache?’ ‘No, I’m fine, but Andrew____a terrible toothache.’
5 ‘_____ (your sister) a car at the moment?’ ‘Yes, she_____.’
6 I couldn’t get the concert tickets yesterday because I_____ (not) enough money.

Note
– Have to и have got to употребляются для выражения необходимости или долга, например:
   I have to go/have got to go now. См. 38–39.
– Have (не have got) также употребляется как вспомогательный глагол в формах perfect
   например, I have worked (present perfect). Относительно форм perfect см. 6, 9, 14, 15, 24.

4 Have for actions (Have для обозначения действий)

Have может употребляться в ряде выражений для обозначения действий. Например:

| have breakfast/lunch/dinner/meal/a drink/a cup of tea/
| some coffee/a beer/a cigarette |
| have a bath/a shower/a wash/a shave/a sleep/a rest/a dream |
| have a swim/a walk/a game of tennis, a game of football, etc |
| have a holiday/a day off/work/aparty/a good time, a bad time, etc |
| have a conversation/atalk/chat/a quarrel/a row/a fight/ |
| a disagreement/an argument |
| have a baby (= give birth to a baby) |
| have a look (= look) |
| have a try/a go (= try) |

2 Have got в этих выражениях не употребляется.

/ usually have lunch at around 1 o ’clock. (Not: / usually have got lunch...).

3 Have может употребляться в этих выражениях в формах continuous (поскольку
   описываются действия).

Sally is having a shower at the moment.
Are you having a good time?
We were having dinner when Peter arrived.
35 Modal verbs: general (Модальные глаголы: общие положения)

К ‘модальным вспомогательным глаголам’ или ‘модальным глаголам’ относятся: can, could, may, might, will, would, shall, should, ought to, must, need, dare.

1 Use

Modal verbs употребляются для выражения, например, возможности, готовности, вероятности, способности, обязанности, долга, обязательства, уверенности, разрешения.

*It might rain.* (возможность)  *You must be home by 11 o’clock.* (обязанность)
*Will you help me?* (готовность)  *You haven’t eaten all day. You must be hungry.* (уверенность)
*Can she swim?* (способность)  *May I borrow your car?* (разрешение)
Утвердительное предложение образуется с помощью modal verb, расположенного между подлежащим и смысловым глаголом.

- can swim.
  We should go now.

Modal verbs имеют одну и ту же форму для всех лиц. В третьем лице единственного числа отсутствует окончание -s.

- She can swim (Not: She cans...)
- He should go now. (Not: He shoulds...)

После всех modal verbs (кроме ought) употребляется infinitive без to eg swim, go. После ought употребляется to + infinitive eg to swim, to go.

- We ought to go now.

Отрицание образуется с помощью добавления n't/not после modal verb.

- She can't swim.
  We shouldn't go.
  It might not rain.

Вопросы образуются с помощью перестановки подлежащего и modal verb. Compare:

- She can swim. → Can she swim?
- We should go. → Should we go?

Обратите внимание, что do не употребляется в вопросах и отрицательных формах.

Например, нельзя сказать: Do she can swim? She doesn't can swim, etc.

Может употребляться конструкция modal verb + be + ... -ing.

- It's getting late. We really must be going now.
  I may be working late tomorrow.

Иногда вместо modal verbs употребляются такие выражения, как be able to, be allowed to и have to. Эти выражения имеют определенные значения и формы, которые не характерны для modal verbs.

- I'd like to be able to play the piano. (Can не имеет инфинитивной формы;
  нельзя сказать: I'd like to can play...)
- She had to go to the doctor's yesterday. (Must не употребляется в прошедшем времени;
  нельзя сказать: She must go ... yesterday.)

Когда речь идет о прошедшем времени, можно употреблять modal verb + have + past participle. Эта конструкция употребляется, например, для выражения действий, которые, вероятно, имели место, или действий, которые не произошли.

- ‘Peter is late.’ ‘He may have missed his train.’ (= Вероятно, он опоздал на поезд.)
- I feel really tired today. I should have gone to bed earlier last night. (Но я не уснул очень рано прошлой ночью.)

- Относительно подробностей о модальных глаголах см. 36–55.
36 Ability (Способность, возможность): *can, could, be able to*

1. **Can**
   
   *Can* употребляется для выражения способности или возможности. Отрицательная форма *can* - *cannot* (стяжение: *can’t*).

   *Can you swim?*
   
   *He* can play the guitar.
   
   *I can’t* open this bottle.
   
   *Can you meet me tomorrow evening?*

   *Be able to* может употребляться вместо *can* eg *Are you able to swim?* Но *can* более употребительный модальный глагол.

2. **Could and was/were able to**
   
   **a** *Could* может употребляться для выражения того, что у кого-то была общая возможность что-то сделать в прошлом.

   / *could* swim when I was 4 years old.
   
   *My sister* could talk when she was 15 months old.

   *Was/were able to* также употребляется в этом значении.

   *I was able to* swim when I was 4 years old.

   **b** Но когда необходимо сказать, что кто-то имел возможность что-то сделать и что это было сделано в определенной ситуации, необходимо употреблять *was/were able to* (*could* не употребляется).

   *Even though I’d hurt my leg, I was able to swim back to the boat.* (Not: ... *I could swim back*....)
   
   *The manager wasn’t in the office for very long, but we were able to speak to him for a few minutes.* (Not: ... *we could speak to him*....)

   Вместо *was/were able to* в этом значении можно употреблять *managed to* (+ infinitive) или *succeeded in* (+ -ing форма).

   *Even though I’d hurt my leg, I managed to swim back to the boat/* succeeded in swimming back to the boat.*

   Обычно *managed to* или *succeeded in* употребляется в том случае, когда действие было трудно выполнить.

   **c** Существует исключение с глаголами восприятия: *see, hear, smell, taste, feel* и некоторыми глаголами мышления, например, *understand, remember*. *Could* употребляется с этими глаголами, когда фактически действие происходит в конкретной ситуации.

   *We could see a man in the garden.*
   
   *I could hear a noise outside my bedroom door.*

   **d** *Could not* (стяжение: *couldn’t*) употребляется как для выражения общей возможности, так и конкретной ситуации.

   *My grandmother couldn’t dance.*
   
   *He tried very hard, but he couldn’t swim back to the boat.*
Could have ...

Could have + past participle употребляется для выражения способности или возможности выполнения чего-то в прошлом, но фактически не выполненного.

You could have helped me. Why didn’t you?
I could have gone to China on holiday last year, but I decided not to.

Выражение способности или возможности другими формами: be able to.

Can не имеет формы infinitive, -ing формы или participle. Таким образом, когда необходимо, соответствующие формы можно образовывать с be able to.

I’d like to be able to play the piano. (We cannot say I’d like to can play.)
In the future, people will be able to live on other planets. (We cannot say people will can live.)
She enjoys being able to speak foreign languages. (We cannot say She enjoy scanning.)
I’ve been able to drive since I was 18. (We cannot say I’ve could.)

EXERCISE 36A

Complete the sentences using can or could where possible. If can or could is not possible, use a form of be able to.

Examples:
He has been living in France for 6 months. He can speak French very well now.
I’ll be able to go shopping later today.

1 When Robert was younger he run quite fast.
2 Look! You see the mountains from this window.
3 Kate dance really well when she was a young girl.
4 How long have you play the guitar?
5 Look! I lift this chair with one hand!
6 I’m sorry, but I won’t come to the party on Saturday.

EXERCISE 36B

Complete the sentences using could or was/were able to.
Sometimes either form is possible.

Example:
Simon could/was able to read music when he was 7.

1 We put out the fire before much damage was done.
2 My daughter walk when she was only 11 months old.
3 I finish all the work you wanted me to do yesterday.
4 (you) speak French before you went to live in Paris?
   ‘I (not) speak very well.’
5 They were talking quite loudly. I hear everything they said.
EXERCISE 36C

Robert Wells is 52 years old. Sometimes he feels that he has wasted his life.
Read about Robert. Replace the words in italics with could have ..., as in the example.

Example:
When Robert was 26 he had the chance to get married, but he decided not to.
When Robert was 26 he could have got married, but he decided not to.

1 Robert had the ability to go to university, but he didn't want to go.
2 He had the intelligence to pass his final exams at school, but he didn't take them.
3 A lot of people thought he had the ability to be a professional footballer when he was younger, but he didn't try.
4 He had the opportunity to start his own business once, but he didn't want to.
5 He had the chance to emigrate to Australia a few years ago, but he decided not to.

Note
- Относительно форм модальных глаголов can и could см. 35.2.
- Can/could (= ‘ability’) употребляется в просьбах, например: Can you help me? (см. 48) и предложениях, например: I could lend you some money (см. 49.3).
- Could также имеет сослагательное значение ‘смог бы, смогла бы, смогли бы’, например: I could repair the car if I had the right tools. (= Я смог бы отремонтировать автомобиль ...)

37 Permission (Разрешение): can, could, may, might, be allowed to

1 Обращение за разрешением

Can I borrow your dictionary?
Can, could и may употребляются для обращения за разрешением.

Can I use your pen for a moment?
Could I ask you a personal question?
May I make a suggestion?

Здесь could - менее прямая и более вежливая форма, чем can. May - более официальная (и некоторые считают, что более "правильная"), чем can или could, но can и could – более употребительные.

Might может также употребляться для обращения за разрешением в менее прямой и более официальной форме.

Might I make a suggestion?
Разрешение
Когда дается разрешение, употребляется can или may (но не could или might).

‘Can I use your pen for a moment?’ ‘Yes, of course you can.’
You can borrow my camera if you want to.
‘Could I make a suggestion?’ ‘Of course you may.’

Выражение разрешения
Когда речь идет о вещах, на которые уже есть или еще нет разрешения (например, когда существует закон или правило), употребляется can (‘t)или be (not) allowed to.

You can’t smoke/aren’t allowed to smoke in this room.

More examples:
You can get married/are allowed to get married in Britain when you are 16. (Это закон.)
The children normally go to bed at 9 o’clock, but they can stay up/are allowed to stay up later on Saturdays. (Так решили их родители.)

Could и was/were allowed to

Could употребляется для выражения общего разрешения что-то сделать в прошлом.

When I was 18, I could borrow my parents’ car whenever I wanted to.
Was/were allowed to также употребляется в этом значении.

When I was 18, I was allowed to borrow my parents’ car whenever I wanted to.

Но когда необходимо сказать, что кому-то разрешили что-то сделать и это было сделано в определенной ситуации в прошлом, необходимо употребить was/were allowed to (could не употребляется).

/ was allowed to borrow my parents’ car last night. (Not: I could borrow....)

Эти различия подобны тем, которые существуют между could и was/were able to (см. 36).
EXERCISE 37A

What are these people asking? Find their questions in the box.

Example:

Could I have a look at your magazine?

May I sit
Do you think I could close
Could I have
Can I try
May I come
Can I borrow

in? a look at your magazine?
this on?
here?
your bike for half an hour?
the window?

EXERCISE 37B

What do these notices mean? Make sentences using the words in the box. Make two sentences for each notice, as in the example.

Example:

You can't take photographs.
You aren't allowed to take photographs.

You can (t)
are (n't) allowed to
take
park
feed
smoke
turn
walk

in this street.
in this room.
on the grass.
photographs.
the animals.
left.
EXERCISE 37C

Complete the sentences using could or was/were allowed to. Sometimes either form is possible.

Example:

I was allowed to see him for a few moments yesterday.

1 Andrew ____ leave school early yesterday because he wasn't feeling well.
2 Until the 19th century, people ____ travel freely between most countries without a passport.
3 Sue's children ____ watch the film on TV last night.
4 Her son has to wear a uniform in his new school, but in his old school he ____ wear whatever he liked.

Note

- Относительно форм modal verbs can, could, may и might СМ. 35.2.

38 Obligation and necessity (Обязанность и необходимость)

(1): must, have to, have got to

1 Must и have to

a Must и have to употребляются для выражения обязанности или необходимости, но иногда между ними могут существовать различия:

Must обычно употребляется, когда полномочия исходят от говорящего.

You must be home by 10 o'clock.
(Я настаиваю на этом.)

I've got a terrible pain in my back. I must go and see the doctor.
(Я считаю это необходимым.)

You must drive carefully.
(Я настаиваю на этом.)

Have to обычно употребляется, когда полномочия исходят не от говорящего.

/ have to be home by 10 o'clock.
(Мои родители настаивают на этом.)

/ have to go and see the doctor at 9.00 tomorrow morning.
(У меня назначена встреча.)

You have to drive on the left in Britain.
(Это - закон.)
Места и особенности употребления модальных глаголов must, have to, have got to

**must** (+ infinitive) употребляется только в настоящем и будущем времени. Когда речь идет об обязанности или необходимости в прошлом, употребляется *had to*.

*I had to work late yesterday.* (Not: / must work late yesterday.)

**must** не имеет форм infinitive, -ing формы или participle. Таким образом, когда необходимо, соответствующие формы можно образовывать с *have to*.

*I’ll have to work late tomorrow.* (We cannot say *I’ll must...*)

He hates having to get up early. (We cannot say *Ho hates rousing ...*)

She’s had to work hard all her life. (We cannot say *She’s musted ...*)

Обратите внимание, что в вопросах и отрицательных формах с *have to* употребляется *do/does* в present simple и *did* в past simple.

*What time do you have to start work?*

*We don’t have to hurry. We’ve got plenty of time.*

*Did you have to walk home last night?*

**Have got to**

*Have got to* часто употребляется вместо *have to* для выражения обязанности и необходимости. *Have got to* - более неофициальная форма.

/ have to hurry.  
Do you have to go?  
I’ve got to hurry.  
Have you got to go?

*Have to*, а не *have got to* обычно употребляется в том случае, когда речь идет о том, что происходит неоднократно, особенно, когда употребляется однословное наречие частоты, например, *always*, *often*. Compare:

*I always have to work late on Wednesday evenings.*  
*I’ve got to work late this evening.*

*Do you often have to get up early?*  
*Have you got to get up early tomorrow?*

*Got* употребляется, главным образом, в present tense. Для выражения действия в past tense, обычно употребляется *had to*, а не *had got to*.

*I had to work late last night.* (Not: / had got to work late last night.)

Эти различия подобны тем, которые существуют между *have* и *have got*, употребляемые для выражения ‘владения, обладания’ (см. 33).

**EXERCISE 38A**

(i) Mrs Woods isn’t very well. The doctor is speaking to her.

Complete what the doctor says using *must* и глаголы *drink*, *take*, *stay* и *continue*. Use each verb only once.

**Doctor:** Well, Mrs Woods, your temperature is a little **high**, so you **1** in bed for the next few days. You can eat whatever you like, but you **2** plenty of liquids. And I’ll give you some medicine. You **3** it three times a day after meals. And you **4** to take it for the next ten days.
(ii) Now Mrs Woods is explaining the doctor's instructions to Mr Woods. Complete what Mrs Woods says using have to and the verbs drink, take, stay and continue.

Mrs Woods: The doctor gave me some medicine. I ______ 1 ______ it three times a day after meals. And I ______ 2 ______ to take it for the next ten days. I'm not allowed to get up at the moment. I ______ 3 ______ in bed for the next few days. Oh, and I'm allowed to eat whatever I like, but I ______ 4 ______ plenty of liquids.

EXERCISE 38B

Complete the sentences using must or a form of have to. Sometimes two answers are possible.

Examples:
I couldn't go to the party last night because I had to babysit for my sister.
I have to/must get up early tomorrow morning.

1 You ______ get a visa to visit the United States.
2 Annie will ______ do her homework tomorrow.
3 It's getting very late. We ______ go now.
4 I ______ stay in bed yesterday because I wasn't very well.
5 Mr Mason ______ wear glasses since he was a child,
6 I don't like ______ work at weekends.

Note
- Относительно формы модального глагола must см. 35.2.
- Относительно отрицательных форм mustn't, don't have to, haven't got to, needn't см. 39.

-9 Obligation and necessity (Обязанность и необходимость)

(2): mustn't, don't have to, don't need to, haven't got to, needn't

1 Compare mustn't and don't have to:

Annie has got a bad cold.
[Энни очень простужена]

Sally is on holiday.
[Сэлли на каникулах.]

Mustn't употребляется в том случае, когда существует необходимость не делать чего-то.

Don't have to употребляется в том случае, когда нет необходимости что-то делать.
Obligation and necessity (2): mustn't, don't have to, don't need to, haven't got to, needn't

2 Don't need to, haven't got to или needn't может также употребляться для выражения действия, которого нет необходимости выполнять.

/ don't need to get up today.
I haven't got to get up today.
I needn't get up today.

Обратите внимание, что needn't часто употребляется в случае, когда говорящий дает разрешение что-то не делать.

You needn't pay me back the money you owe me until next week. [Вы можете не возвращать мне деньги, которые должны, до следующей недели].

EXERCISE 39A
Choose the correct form.

Example:
You've been late for work twice this week. You mustn't/needn't be late again tomorrow.

1 You mustn't/don't have to open the door before the train stops. You could fall out.
2 We mustn't/don't have to hurry. We've got plenty of time.
3 We mustn't/haven't got to make any noise going into the house. It's very late and everybody is asleep.
4 You mustn't/needn't tell Nicki about the party. I've already told her.
5 You mustn't/don't need to phone the station about the time of the trains. I've got a timetable.
6 I mustn't/haven't got to go now. I can stay a bit longer if you want me to.

Note
- Относительно формы модальных глаголов must и needn't см. 35.2.
- См. также 41 Needn't have и didn't need to.
Review of permission and obligation (Обзор модальных глаголов, выражающих обязанность и необходимость): can, can't, must, mustn't, needn't, be allowed to, have to, don't have to

EXERCISE 40A

Complete these sentences using the modal verbs in the box. Sometimes two answers are possible.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>must</th>
<th>mustn't</th>
<th>can</th>
<th>can't</th>
<th>needn't</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Examples:
You needn't wait any longer. You can go now.
We mustn't make a noise. We must be quiet.
You must move your car. You can't/mustn't park here.

1 You mustn't leave the door unlocked. You ______ lock it.
2 You can only smoke in the canteen. You____ smoke in this room.
3 We needn't do the washing up now. We____ do it tomorrow.
4 We can stay a bit longer. We____ go now.
5 You can't keep on using my tennis shoes. You____ buy your own.
6 You can keep those magazines. You____ give them back to me.

EXERCISE 40B

What do these signs and notices mean? Find the explanations in the box.

Example:

You have to stop.

You are allowed to
aren't allowed to
have to
don't have to

1 SILENCE!
2 Step.
3 overtake.
4 walk here.
5 be a member to get in.
6 park here.
be quiet.

73
41 **Needn’t have** and **didn’t need to**

1 С помощью *needn’t have + past participle* выражается выполненное действие, которое не следовало бы выполнять - это было пустой тратой времени.

/ *needn’t have made* so much food for the party. Nobody was very hungry. [Мне не следовало бы готовить так много блюд на вечеринку.] (= Не было необходимости готовить так много блюд, но я приготовил.)
I *needn’t have told* Kate what happened. She already knew. [Мне не следовало бы говорить Кейт, что случилось.] (= Не было необходимости рассказывать об этом Кейт, но я рассказал.)

2 С помощью *didn’t need to + infinitive* выражается действие, в выполнении которого не было необходимости (но не говорится, выполнено это действие или нет).

Compare:

*She needn’t have waited.* [Ей не следовало бы ожидать (но она ожидала)]

*They needn’t have worried.* [Им не следовало бы беспокоиться (но они беспокоились.)]

3 Когда употребляется *didn’t need to*, то это часто означает, что кто-то что-то не выполнил (потому, что в этом не было необходимости).

*I didn't need to lock* the door because it was already unlocked.
*I didn't need to write* to you so phoned you instead.

Но *didn’t need to* (с ударением на *need*) может также употребляться, когда не было необходимости что-то сделать, но кто-то это сделал.

/ *didn’t need to write* to you, but I wrote to you anyway.

**EXERCISE 41A**

Complete the sentences using *needn’t have* where possible. If *needn’t have* is not possible, use *didn’t need to*.

Examples:

Did you water the garden?  ‘Yes, but I *needn’t have done* (do) it. Just after I’d finished it started to rain!’

I *didn’t need to wake* (wake) her up because she was awake before me.

1 She ____ (get up) early last Saturday, so she stayed in bed until 10 o’clock.
2 I didn’t wear my coat when I went out. I ____ (wear) it. It wasn’t cold.
3 He was very anxious before the exam, but he ____ (worry). It wasn’t as difficult as he’d expected.
4 She ____ (pay) the man, but she gave him some money anyway.
5 She ____ (pay) the man, so she didn’t give him any money.
6 Thank you very much for the flowers, but you really ____ (buy) them for me.
42 Obligation and advice (Обязанность и совет):
should, ought to, had better, be supposed to, shall

1 Should n ought to

a Should n ought to может употребляться для выражения обязанности и долга, обращения за советом и выражения совета и, вообще, для оценки, что правильно или хорошо.

You should learn to swim. /You ought to learn to swim.
You shouldn’t tell lies. /You oughtn’t to tell lies.
What do you think I should do? /What do you think I ought to do?

Should n ought to очень близки по значению, но часто предпочтение отдается ought to для выражения компетенции, которая исходит не от самого говорящего, а существует, например, в соответствии с законом или правилом.

Обратите внимание, что после should употребляется infinitive без to, например, learn, tell, a после ought употребляется to + infinitive eg to learn, to tell.

b Should have/ought to have + past participle употребляется для выражения того, что кто-то сделал что-то неправильно в прошлом.

I should have posted this letter yesterday, but I forgot. (Я не отправил его.)
I’m really tired this morning. I shouldn’t have stayed up so late last night. (Я засиделся допоздна.)
Haven’t you finished your homework yet? You ought to have done it last night. (Вы не выполнили его.)

2 Had better

Had better (+ infinitive без to) выражает настоятельную рекомендацию в определенной ситуации.

I’m going to an interview tomorrow. I’d better iron my shirt.
It’s going to be cold tonight. We’d better turn on the heating.
(’d better = had better)

Had (не have) с better всегда употребляется в этой конструкции, но значение соотносится к настоящему или будущему, но не к прошедшему времени.

Отрицание образуется следующим образом: had better not.

We’d better not be late.

Had better часто может иметь оттенок угрозы или предупреждения и сильнее, чем should или ought to.

3 Be + supposed to

Supposed to может употребляться для выражения действия как результата долга, предварительной договоренности или существующих правил.

You’re supposed to start work at 8.00 every morning.
I’m supposed to see Maria this afternoon.
Not supposed to употребляется для выражения запрещения.

You know you 'renot supposed to eat in the classroom.

Часто существует разница между тем, что по предложению должно произойти, и тем, что происходит на самом деле.

I'm supposed to see Maria this afternoon, but I'm not going to have enough time. Put those sweets away! You know you 'renot supposed to eat in the classroom. He was supposed to phone me yesterday, but he didn't.

Обратите внимание, что supposed to также употребляется в значении 'said to' [говорят], например, I'd like to read that book. It's supposed to be very good. СМ. 64.2.

Shall

Shall I? может употребляться в том случае, когда необходимо знать чье-то мнение или когда нужен совет или указание.

I've missed my last bus. What shall I do?
I'm not sure what to do. Shall I apply for the job or not?
How long shall I cook this spaghetti?

EXERCISE 42A

Complete the advice using should or ought to; find the advice for the problems.

Example: 1 ‘I've lost my credit card.’
You should report it to the credit card company immediately. 7
‘You ought to report it to the credit card company immediately.’

PROBLEMS
1 ‘I've lost my credit card.’
2 ‘I can’t wake up in the mornings.’
3 ‘I’m bored with my job.’
4 ‘I've got a terrible headache.’
5 ‘I was very rude to my parents.’
6 ‘My car keeps on breaking down.’

ADVICE
‘I think you | sell it.’
‘Perhaps you | look for another job.’
‘Don’t you think you | apologize to them?’
‘Perhaps you | buy a new alarm clock!’
‘You | report it to the credit card company immediately.’
‘Perhaps you | take some aspirin.’

EXERCISE 42B

Make sentences using should (n ‘t) ... , ought (n ‘t)to .... should (n ‘t)have ... or ought (n ‘t)to have ... and the words in brackets.

Example: My car is always dirty. (I | clean | it more often.) should clean it more often. / I ought to clean it more often.

1 You think your friend works too hard. You tell him/her:
(You | not work | so hard.) (You | relax | more.)
2 Your friend overslept this morning and was late for work. His boss said to him.
(You | buy | an alarm clock!)
3 Kate didn’t feel well yesterday, but she went to work and now she feels really terrible. (She | not go | to work yesterday.) (She | stay | in bed.)
4 Mr Woods walked straight out into the road without looking. He was nearly killed by a bus. (He | not walk | into the road without looking.) (He | look | first.)
EXERCISE 42C
Complete the sentences using had better and the verbs in the box.
Example: The phone is ringing. I’d better answer it.

| park  | stay  | hurry | answer | put out | be   | not leave |

1. This knife is very sharp. You _____ careful when you use it.
2. Oh no! Look! There’s a ‘No Parking’ sign here. We _____ somewhere else.
3. You’re not very well. I think you _____ in bed today.
4. We’re late. We _____
5. There’s a lot of crime in this area. We _____ any doors or windows unlocked.
6. The plane is just going to take off. You _____ that cigarette.

EXERCISE 42D
Complete the sentences using the correct form of be + supposed to and the verbs in the box.
Example: I’m on a diet, so I’m not supposed to eat cream cakes.

| arrive | not eat | go | not open | not park | have |

1. What are you doing with your birthday presents? You _____ them until your birthday!
2. I _____ to work yesterday, but I couldn’t because I was ill in bed.
3. You _____ your car here at any time.
4. We _____ in Manchester at 6 o’clock this morning, but our plane was delayed.
5. Peter _____ a one-hour lunch break, but he sometimes takes a bit longer.

EXERCISE 42E
Complete each question using shall I and the most suitable verb in the box.
Example: How much money shall I get from the bank?

| paint | invite | get | tell | put |

1. Who _____ to my party, do you think?
2. Where _____ all these dirty plates and glasses?
3. What do you think? _____ my parents what has happened?
4. What colour _____ my bedroom? Have you got any ideas?

Note
- Относительно формы модальных глаголов should, ought to и shall см. 35.2.
43 Possibility (Возможность, вероятность): *may, might, could*

1 Present and future possibility
   a *May, might* и *could* употребляются для выражения возможности и вероятности в настоящем и будущем времени.

   ‘There’s someone at the door.’ ‘It may be Sarah.’ [Возможно, это Сара.]
   *We aren’t sure what we are going to do tomorrow. We might go to the beach.* [Вероятно, мы пойдем на пляж.]
   ‘Where’s Simon?’ ‘He could be in the living room.’ [Может быть, он в гостиной.]

   *Might* обычно выражает меньшую уверенность, чем *may*. *Could* обычно выражает меньшую уверенность, чем *may* или *might*.

   + + + *may* + + *might* + *could*

   b Отрицательные формы *may not* и *might not* (contraction: *mightn’t*), но не *could not*, употребляются в этом значении.

   *Simon may not be in the living room.* [Вероятно, его нет в гостиной.]
   *We might not go to the beach.* [Вероятно, мы не пойдем на пляж.]

   c Обратите внимание на форму: *may/might/could + be + ... -ing.*

   *They may be having dinner at the moment.* [Вероятно, они ужинают.]

2 Possibility in the past
   a *May/might/could + have + past participle* может употребляться для выражения возможности и вероятности в прошлом.

   ‘Where was Sally last night?’ ‘I think she may have been at the cinema.’ (= Я полагаю, что она могла быть в кинотеатре.)
   ‘Peter is late.’ ‘He might have missed his train.’ (= Вероятно, он опоздал на поезд.)
   ‘I can’t find my wallet anywhere.’ ‘You could have left it at home.’
   (= Может быть, вы оставили его дома.)
   ‘She walked straight past me without saying hello.’ ‘She might not have seen you.’
   (= Вероятно, она вас не увидела.)
b | Could и might (но не may) с have + past participle также употребляется для выражения чего-то возможного в прошлом, но не произошедшего.

‘I forgot to lock my car last night.’ ‘You were very lucky. Someone could have stolen it.’
You were stupid to try to climb that tree. You might have killed yourself.

EXERCISE 43A

Rephrase these sentences using the modal verbs in brackets.

Examples:

Perhaps she is ill. (may) She may be ill.
Perhaps they went out. (might) They might have gone out.

1 Perhaps you’re right, (could)
2 Perhaps she’ll win the race. (might)
3 Perhaps she forgot about the meeting. (may)
4 Perhaps they were asleep. (might)
5 Perhaps he doesn’t know the address. (may)

6 Perhaps they left early. (could)
7 Perhaps he isn’t coming now. (might)
8 Perhaps I’ll see you tomorrow. (may)
9 Perhaps they’re going on holiday. (could)
10 Perhaps she didn’t catch the bus. (may)

Note
- Относительно форм модальных глаголов may, might и could см. 35.2.
- Could также употребляется для предположения возможных действий. Например: We could go out tonight. См. 50.3.
- Might также имеет значение сослагательного наклонения ‘вероятно’, например: If I won a lot of money, I might stop working. [Я бы, вероятно, прекратил работать]. См. 69.3, 71.3.

44 Possibility (Возможность и вероятность): can

1 Can употребляется для выражения ‘теоретической возможности или вероятности’.
Anyone can learn to swim. [Каждый может научиться плавать.]

В этом случае can часто имеет значение близкое ‘иногда’.

My brother can be very nice. [Мой брат иногда очень красив.]

May, might или could (не can) употребляется для выражения того, что что-то, вероятно, произойдет в будущем, или того, что, вероятно, что-то справедливо в момент речи (см. 43).

It may rain later. (Not: It can rain later.)
‘Where’s Ken?’ ‘He could be outside.’ (Not: ‘He can be outside.’)

Compare:

It can be cold in England. [Иногда в Англии холодно.]  It may be cold tomorrow. [Вероятно, завтра будет холодно.]

2 Could употребляется для выражения теоретической возможности или вероятности в прошлом.

My brother could be really horrible when he was a child.
EXERCISE 44A

Complete the sentences using *can* or *could* and the verbs in the box. Use each verb only once.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>grow</th>
<th>be</th>
<th>make</th>
<th>reach</th>
<th>live</th>
<th>survive</th>
<th>cross</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Example:

Tigers *can be* dangerous.

1 Elephants *can* be up to 70 years.
2 Temperatures near the South Pole *can* be minus 43 degrees centigrade.
3 A hundred years ago ships *could* cross the Atlantic in 10 days.
4 Camels *can* reach for up to 17 weeks in the desert without water.
5 Dinosaurs *can* survive up to 5 metres long.
6 Anyone *can* make mistakes.

Note

- Относительно формы модального глагола *can* см. 35.2.
- *Can* также употребляется для выражения предполагаемого действия. Например: *We can have dinner now if you like.* СМ. 50.3.

45 Probability (Вероятность): *should*, *ought to*

1 *Should* или *ought to* может употребляться для выражения чего-то вероятного в момент речи или в будущем.

*Sally should be at work by now. She's normally there at this time.* [Сэлли, вероятно, сейчас на работе.]

*I should finish work early today. I haven't got much to do.* [Я, вероятно, закончу работу сегодня рано.]

*He ought to pass his driving test easily. He's a very good driver.* [Он, вероятно, легко сдаст экзамен по вождению.]
**Should have ... and ought to have ...**

*Should have/ought to have* + past participle употребляется, когда ожидалось, что действие должно произойти, но не известно, произошло ли оно.

*They should have arrived by now.* (Но: Я не знаю, приехали ли они.)
*7 wonder if he passed his driving test this morning.* 'He ought to have passed it easily.' (Но: Я не знаю, сдал ли он экзамен.)

Эта конструкция также используется, когда ожидается, что действие должно произойти, но оно не произошло.

*They should have arrived by now, but they aren't there yet.*
*He ought to have passed his driving test easily. I was surprised that he failed.*

**EXERCISE 45A**

Complete the sentences using *should* or *ought to* and the correct form of the verbs in the box. Use each verb only once.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>pass</th>
<th>fee</th>
<th>win</th>
<th>not</th>
<th>take</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sell</td>
<td>arrive</td>
<td>receive</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example:

I’ve only got £15, but that *should be/ought to be* enough. We won’t need to buy very much.

1 You_____my letter first thing tomorrow morning. I posted it early today.
2 I was surprised Liverpool lost the football match. They_____easily.
3 I_____my car easily. I only want £950 for it and it’s in very good condition.
4 Andrew_____the exams last week. He worked very hard for them.
5 ‘How long will it take to drive to the park?’ ‘Well, it_____long. It isn’t very far.’
6 I’m still waiting for the 7 o’clock bus. It_____half an hour ago.

**Note**

- Относительно формы модальных глаголов *should* и *ought to* см. 35.2.

**Deduction (Вывод): must, can’t**

1 **Must, can’t**

2 *Must* употребляется в выводах для выражения уверенности в чем-то.

*It’s not very warm and you’re not wearing a coat. You must be cold.* [Вам, должно быть, холодно.]
*Mrs Woods must know London very well. She has lived there all her life.* [Госпожа Вудз, должно быть, хорошо знает Лондон.]

---

81
Deduction: must, can't

Can't (не mustn't) употребляется в качестве отрицательной формы от must в этом значении. Can't употребляется для выражения невозможности чего-то.

Peter was here a moment ago, so he can't be far away. (= Невозможно, чтобы он был уже далеко.)

Annie can't be asleep. There's a light on in her bedroom. (= Невозможно, чтобы она уже спала.)

Obратите внимание на форму: must/can't + be + ... -ing.

You've been working hard all day. You must be feeling tired. [Должно быть, вы устали.]

Simon has bought two tickets for the concert, so he can't be going on his own. [Не может быть, что он пойдет в кино сам.]

Can также употребляется в вопросах, выражающих возможность или вероятность.

The telephone is ringing. Who can that be?

Sally is late. Where can she be?

Exercice 46A

Answer the questions in A using must or can't, give a reason from B.

Example:

1 They can't be Greek. They're speaking Italian.

A
1 Are they Greek?
2 Is she ill?
3 Is the heating on?
4 Are they asleep?
5 Is she happy?
6 Is he a doctor?

B
It's very cold in here.
He's too young.
She's just passed her driving test.
They're speaking Italian.
Their bedroom lights are off.
He's got a high temperature.
EXERCISE 46B

There was a robbery at the Central Art Gallery in London yesterday. A detective is questioning Billy Palmer about the robbery. The detective knows that Palmer is lying to him. Look at what Palmer says on the left. Then look at the clues on the right.

Make deductions using must have ... or can’t/couldn’t have .... Give the reason for each deduction.

Example:

1 Palmer can’t I couldn’t have stayed in bed all morning yesterday. Someone saw him in town at 10.00 yesterday morning.

Note

- Относительно формы модальных глаголов must, can’t и could(n’t) см. 35.2.
Review of possibility, probability and deduction (Обзор выражения возможности, вероятности и выводов): may, might, could, should, ought to, must, can't

EXERCISE 47A

Look at the examples:

Find the correct place in the table for the words in the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>might</th>
<th>should</th>
<th>must</th>
<th>ought to</th>
<th>can't</th>
<th>could</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Saying how sure we are:

YES  definitely
I probably should; ___
possibly could; ___ ___
NO  definitely not ___

EXERCISE 47B

Rephrase the sentences using the correct form of the words in brackets.

Examples:
I'm sure she is in bed. (must)  She must be in bed.
We'll probably arrive before 11 o'clock, (should)  We should arrive before 11 o'clock.
Perhaps he was ill. (may)  He may have been ill.
It's impossible that they missed the plane. (can't)  They can't have missed the plane.

1 Perhaps she'll phone later. (might)
2 I'll probably be at home by 6 o'clock. (should)
3 Perhaps they went home. (could)
4 It's impossible that he's telling the truth. (can't)
5 I'm sure you've heard the news. (must)
6 Perhaps I won't go out this evening. (may)
7 It's impossible that she saw us. (can't)
8 I'm sure the bus has left. (must)
9 Perhaps he didn't apply for the job. (might)
10 She'll probably be here soon. (ought to)
48 Requests (Просьбы): can, could, may, will, would

1. Просьбы что-то

С помощью can, could и may можно просить что-то.

Can I have a glass of water, please?
Could I have the bill, please? (например, в ресторане)
May I have some more coffee?

Could - менее прямая и более вежливая форма, чем can; may - более официальная форма, чем can/could.

2. Просьбы разрешение

Can, could и may также употребляется для обращения за разрешением (см.: 37.1).

Can I borrow your dictionary?
Could I ask you a personal question?
Excuse me. May I have a look at your newspaper?

3. Просьбы что-то сделать

Can you? [не можете ли вы?] часто употребляется для обращения к кому-то с просьбой что-то сделать для кого-то.

Can you post this letter for me please?
Can you switch on the light, please?

Could употребляется как менее определенная и более вежливая форма can в этом значении.

Could you pass me that newspaper please?
Could you give me some advice?

Will you? [не хотите ли вы?] также употребляется для обращения к кому-то с просьбой что-то сделать.

Will you switch on the light, please?

Would употребляется как менее определенная и более вежливая форма will в этом значении.

Would you post this letter for me?
The phone is ringing. Would you answer it?

Would с глаголом mind (= 'возражать' или 'быть против') также употребляется для выражения вежливой просьбы.

Would you mind switching on the light?

Иногда просьба может выражаться с помощью would like как вежливой формой того, что мы хотим.

I’d like a glass of water, please.
I’d like to ask you a personal question.
EXERCISE 48A

What are these people asking? Find their questions below.

Example:

Can I close the window?

Could you tell the TV for me, please?
Would you mind changing the window?
Would you answer the menu, please?
May I have the phone, please?
Can I close me where the hospital is, please?
Will you switch on me the cloth, please?
Can you pass places with me?

Note

- Относительно форм модальных глаголов can, could, may, will и would см. 35.2.
- Обратите внимание на значения yes и no после просьбы с mind, например: 'Would you mind waiting?' 'No, that's all right.' [Ничего, все нормально.] 'Yes, I would!' [Да, я против.]
49 Offers (Предложение): will, shall, can, could, would

1 Will употребляется для выражения желания или предложения что-то сделать.

Will you? также употребляется в предложениях и приглашениях.

Will you have to drink?

2 Shall? (= не хотели бы вы, чтобы я?) употребляется для выражения предложения сделать что-то для кого-то.

Shall I help you?

3 Can/could (= 'возможность') также употребляется для выражения предложения сделать что-то для кого-то.

Can I make you something to eat?

4 Would с такими глаголами, как like, prefer u rather, также употребляется для выражения вежливой формы предложения и приглашения.

Would you like to go to a party on Saturday?
EXERCISE 49A

Make offers in these situations using the words below.

Example:

Shall I switch off
I'll help
Would you like me to phone
Can I take
Would you like
could I carry
I can lend

Would you like something to drink?

1

2

3

4

5

6

Note

- Относительно форм модальных глаголов will, shall, can, could и would СМ. 35.2.

50 Suggestions (Предложение): shall, let's, why don't we, how/what about, can, could

1 Shall we? Употребляется для выражения просьбы или предложения.

Where shall we go?
What time shall we leave?

Shall we stay at home?
Shall we play tennis tomorrow?
Предложение можно также выразить следующим образом:

1. **Let's (+ infinitive without to)**

   *Let's* watch TV.
   *Let's* go for a swim.

   *(Let's - Let us)*

2. **Why don’t we (+ infinitive without to)?**

   *Why don’t we* go for a swim?
   *Why don’t we* play tennis?

3. **How/What about (+ -ing form/noun)?**

   *How about* playing tennis/a game of tennis?

**3** Can и could употребляется для предложения возможных действий.

*We can* watch TV *if you like.*
*We could* go to the cinema tomorrow.

В этом случае, *could* - менее прямая и более вежливая форма, чем *can.*

**EXERCISE 50A**

Peter and Sally are trying to decide what to do this evening.

Complete the conversation using the words in the box. Use some words more than once.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Why don’t we</th>
<th>Let’s</th>
<th>shall we</th>
<th>How about</th>
<th>could</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Peter:** So, what *shall we do* this evening?

**Sally:** Well, we haven’t got much *money*—1___staying in and watching TV?
**Peter:** Oh, no! I’m fed up with watching TV.

**Sally:** 2___go out for a drink, then. We can afford one drink each.
**Peter:** All right. Where 3___go?

**Sally:** 4___go to The Tropical Bar? They have really good music there.
**Peter:** Yes, but the drinks are very expensive.

**Sally:** That’s true. Well, we 5___go to the pub on the corner.
**Peter:** Yes. They have very good videos 6___go there.

**Sally:** I thought you said you were fed up with watching TV!

**Note**

- Относительно форм модальных глаголов *shall, can* и *could*, см. 35.2.
51 Habits (Привычные действия): used to, will, would

1 Used to

a Use

Used to + infinitive употребляется для выражения привычных действий в прошлом, которые сейчас завершены.

Robert when he was younger

Robert today

Robert used to play football when he was younger, but he stopped playing 20 years ago.
[Роберт регулярно играл в футбол в прошлом, но сейчас он не играет.]

More examples:

Kate used to go swimming a lot, but she never goes swimming now.
When I was a child, I used to suck my thumb.

Used to также употребляется для описания состояния и ситуаций в прошлом, не существующих сейчас.

Robert used to be very slim when he was younger.
I used to live in London, but I moved in 1980.

Used to употребляется только для выражения в прошлом. Когда речь идет о настоящих привычных действиях или состояниях, употребляется present simple.

Robert never plays football now.
Kate goes sailing quite often nowadays.
I live in Manchester.
Robert is quite fat.

Used to не употребляется для выражения длительности действия, т.е. как долго что-то происходило.

I worked in Rome for six months. (Not: I used to work in Rome for six months.)
51 Habits: used to, will, would

Form

*Used to* + infinitive принимает одну и ту же форму во всех лицах.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>used to</th>
<th>play football.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td></td>
<td>live in London.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You</td>
<td></td>
<td>be very slim.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Обычно отрицательная форма от *used to* - *didn’t use to* (= *did not use to*).

*I didn’t use to live in London.*

*You didn’t use to like classical music.*

Может также употребляться *never used to*, например: *You never used to like classical music.*

Вопросительная форма обычно образуется с помощью *did* ... *use to* ...

*Where did you use to live?*

*Did you use to like classical music?*

Обратите внимание на отличительное произношение *used* /juːst/ и *use* /juːz/ в этой конструкции.

2 Will и would

*Will* может употребляться для выражения обычного или привычного поведения, свойственного кому-то.

*Simon loves music. He’ll sit for hours listening to his stereo.*

*Kate is very kind. She’ll always help people if she can.*

*Would* употребляется в том же значении для выражения действия в прошлом.

*When I was a child my father would sometimes take me fishing.*

*My grandmother was very absent-minded. She would often buy something and then leave the shop without it.*

*Will* и *would* в этом случае не ударны.

Если на *will* или *would* падает ударение (‘), то это предполагает критику.

*He ‘will slam the door when he comes in. It really makes me angry.*

*‘She borrowed my camera without asking.’ ‘She would do a thing like that. She always borrowing things without asking.’*

3 Used to и would

Когда речь идет о привычных действиях в прошлом, могут употребляться *used to* или *would*.

*When we were children, we used to play Cowboys and Indians together.*

*When I was a child, my elder brother used to take me to the cinema every Saturday morning.*

Когда речь идет о состоянии в прошлом, может употребляться *used to*, но не *would*.

*My grandfather used to be a policeman. (Not: My grandfather *would be* ...)*

*I used to have a moustache, but I shaved it off. (Not: I would have ...)*
EXERCISE 51A
Put one verb in each sentence into the used to form and the other verb into the present simple.

Examples:
When Margot first became a doctor, she used to work (work) in a small hospital in Brighton, but now she works (work) in a large hospital in London.

1 Robert_____ (be) interested in football, but he _____(not | be) very interested in it any more.
2 Nowadays Kate_____ (never | go) dancing, but she_____ (go) a lot before she was married.
3 That shop_____ (be) a grocer's when I was a child. Now it_____ (be) a supermarket.
4 Britain_____ (have) military service, but it _____(not | have) it any more.
5 France_____ (be) a republic now, but it_____ (be) a monarchy.
6 '_____ (you | like) history when you were at school?' ‘No, I didn’t, but now I _____ (find) it quite interesting.’

EXERCISE 51B
Complete the sentences using will or would and one of the verbs in the box.

Example:
Robert has got a very bad memory. He'll often forget (often) where he's parked his car.

| carry on | spend | lend | go | throw | forget |

1 Kate is very generous. She_____ (always) you money if you need it.
2 Ken's grandfather was very mean. He_____ (never) anything away if he could use it again.
3 Mr Woods is a real chatterbox! He_____ talking for hours and hours if you give him a chance.
4 When Simon was a child, he_____ (often) hours just looking out of the window.
5 ‘I’m always tired these days.’ ‘Well, you _____ to bed so late every night, it isn’t surprising!’

EXERCISE 51C
Which of these sentences can be completed with either used to or would? Which of them can only be completed with used to?

Examples:
We used to live in a village in the North of England.
When Robert was younger, he used to/would go running every morning.

1 When Andrew was a small baby he_____ cry a lot.
2 When I was little, I_____ be afraid of the dark.
3 When we were children, we_____ visit my grandmother every Sunday afternoon.
4 When Mrs Woods was younger, she_____ play tennis every weekend.
5 Years ago I_____ have a motorbike.
6 There_____ be quite a lot of cinemas in the town, but now there aren’t any.

Note
- Относительно форм модальных will и would см. 35.2.
- Не смешивайте used to + infinitive, например: He used to get up very early и be used to + -ing форма, например: He's used to getting up early. CM. 89.
52 Refusals (Отказ): won’t, wouldn’t

Won’t (=will not) употребляется для выражения отказа что-то выполнить или сделать со стороны людей или предметов.

Annie won’t do her homework. [Энни отказывается выполнять домашнее задание.]  
This machine won’t work. [Эта машина не хочет работать (не работает).]

Wouldn’t (would not) употребляется для выражения отказа что-то выполнить или делать со стороны людей или предметов в прошлом.

This machine wouldn’t work yesterday. [Эта машина не хотела работать вчера (не работала).]

EXERCISE 52A

Replace the words in italics with ... won’t ... or ... wouldn’t ... , as in the examples.

Examples:

I asked my father, but he refused to lend me the money.  
I asked my father, but he wouldn’t lend me the money.  
I’ve decided to take the job and I refuse to change my mind.  
I’ve decided to take the job and I won’t change my mind.

1 I pushed hard, but the window refused to open.  
2 He’s proposed to her, but she refuses to marry him.  
3 I switched on the machine, but it refused to work.  
4 I’ve warned her several times about leaving the windows unlocked, but she refuses to listen to me.  
5 We’ve asked him, but he refuses to help us.  
6 We couldn’t drive to the country last weekend because my parents refused to let me use their car.

53 Promises and threats (Обещания и угрозы): will

Will может употребляться для выражения сильного намерения, как, например, в обещаниях и угрозах.

I will be careful with the car, I promise.  
I promise I won’t be late tomorrow.  
Stop making that noise or I’ll scream!
EXERCISE 53A

Complete each sentence using will or won’t and a verb from the box. Then say if the sentence is a promise or a threat.

| leave | do | tell | hit | throw | pay | speak |

Example:
Don’t touch my camera or I’ll hit you! a threat
1 Don’t worry. I you the money tomorrow.
2 It’s getting late. If you don’t hurry up, I without you.
3 I anyone what you said. Don’t worry.
4 I’m very sorry I shouted at you. I it again.
5 Get out of my room or I you out!
6 If you don’t help me, I to you ever again.

EXERCISE 54A

Make sentences from the table to go with these ideas.

Example:
You may as well switch off the TV. Nobody is watching it.

1 . It’s not very far.
2 . I’m too ill to go on holiday.
3 . It isn’t going to stop raining.
4 . No one wants any more to eat.
5 . There’s a chance I’ll get it.

You may as well switch off to the station.
We might as well stay at the table.
We may as well walk for the hotel bookings.
I might as well apply at the TV.
You might as well cancel for home today.
I might as well clear for the job.
55 Other uses of (Другие случаи употребления) should

Verb + should

Сочетание that... should может употребляться после глаголов suggest, insist, recommend, agree; в неофициальном стиле that часто опускается.

I suggest (that) he should see the doctor.
She insisted (that) I should take the money.
I agreed (that) we should tell the police.

Другие конструкции также возможны после этих глаголов. Например:

/ suggest (that) he sees the doctor. (the present)
She insisted (that) I took the money. (the past)

Adjective + should

Сочетание (that)... should может употребляться после прилагательных, которые выражают чувства, например, surprised, sorry, shocked, interesting.

I was surprised (that) she should fail the exam.
I am sorry (that) he should feel so unhappy.
It is interesting (that) you should say that.

Сочетание (that)... should употребляется также после таких прилагательных, как important и essential.

It is important (that) we should arrive on time.
Подобное значение может также быть выражено и без should.

I was surprised (that) she failed the exam.
It is important (that) we arrive on time.

EXERCISE 55A

Report these ideas using the verbs in brackets followed by (that)... should, as in the example.

Example:

You must visit us,’ they said to me. (insist)
They insisted (that) I should visit them.

1 ‘Why don’t you apply for the job?’ she said to me. (suggest)
2 ‘Stay in bed for a few days,’ the doctor said to him. (recommend)
3 ‘You must help me,’ he said to me. (insist)
4 ‘Let’s go to the cinema,’ they said to us. (suggest)
5 ‘I’ll pay for the damage,’ I said to him. (agree)
6 Try the new Greek restaurant,’ my friend said to us. (recommend)
EXERCISE 55B

Complete each sentence using *should* and the most suitable verb in the box. Use each verb only once.

Example:

The situation is very difficult, but it is important that everyone *should stay* calm.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>come</th>
<th>give</th>
<th>up</th>
<th>pass</th>
<th>stay</th>
<th>feel</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. The doctor suggested that I *feel* smoking.
2. It's essential that Sarah *come* the exams if she wants to go to university.
3. It was embarrassing that Simon *pass* into the room just as we were talking about him.
4. I'm sorry that you *give up* so angry. I didn't mean to upset you.

Note

- *Should* может употребляться после *if*, если возможность выражена не совсем определенно, например: *If I should see Maria, I'll give her your message. Should* может также употребляться вместо *if*, например: *Should I see Maria, I'll give her your message.* CM. 68.3, 73.4.

- *Should* в этом значении также употребляется после *in case*, например: *I’ll take an umbrella with me when I go out in case it should rain.* CM. 164.4.

56 *Wish* and *if only*

1. *Wish* и *if only* + past tense

*Wish* и *if only* могут употребляться с прошедшим временем и выражать сожаление относительно настоящего времени (для выражения желания, которое на момент речи не сбыточное).

/ *wish I had a car.* [Я хотел бы иметь автомобиль.]
/ *wish he wasn’t so horrible to me.* [Я хотел бы, чтобы он не был столь жесток ко мне.]
She wishes she could play the guitar. [Она хотела бы играть на гитаре.]
If only we knew Maria’s address. [Если бы только мы знали адрес Марии.]

*If only* более эмфатично, чем *wish. *

*Were* вместо *was* часто употребляется после *wish* и *if only*, особенно в официальном стиле.

/ *wish he weren’t so horrible to me.*
*If only I were better-looking.*
2. **Wish u if only + would**

*I wish you would* stop making that noise.

*Would* употребляется после *wish* и *if only* в том случае, когда необходимо что-то предотвратить или сделать по-иному.

/ *wish* you *wouldn't* slam the door when you come in. *It makes me angry.*

*I wish he wouldn't* leave his clothes lying all over the bathroom floor.

*If only you would* stop complaining!

3. **Wish u if only + past perfect**

Для выражения сожаления по поводу случившегося или не случившегося в прошлом может употребляться *wish* и *if only* с past perfect (*had* + past participle).

*Oh, I'm tired. I wish I'd gone to bed earlier last night.* [*Жаль, что вчера я не лег спать раньше.*]

/ *wish* I *hadn't* stayed out so late. [*Жаль, что я так долго отсутствовал.*]

*If only you had explained the situation to me.* [*Если бы вы объяснили мне ситуацию.*]

---

**EXERCISE 56A**

Read what this man thinks about himself on the left. Complete what he says on the right.

I'm so shy.

1. I don't know what to say to people.
2. I get embarrassed so quickly.
3. I can't relax.
4. I find it so difficult to make friends.
5. I'm not good-looking.
6. My ears are so big.

I wish I weren't so shy.

1. If only I knew what to say to people.
2. I wish___
3. I wish___
4. I wish___
5. If only___
EXERCISE 56B

Some people are complaining about the things they would like other people to do or to stop doing. Complete what they are saying. Use would/wouldn’t and the words in the box.

Example:

A zoo keeper: ‘I wish people wouldn’t feed the animals.’

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>1 A teacher: ‘I wish my students_____’</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>take their litter home</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pick the flowers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keep together on a tour</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2 A hotel chambermaid: ‘If only guests _____’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clean the bath after they’ve used it</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do their homework on time</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feed the animals</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3 A park keeper: ‘I wish people_____’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4 A street cleaner: ‘If only people_____’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5 A travel guide: ‘I wish people_____’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

EXERCISE 56C

Each of these people did something yesterday which they now regret. What does each person wish? Use He/She wishes ... and the words in the box.

Example:

Mrs A has caught a bad cold. She wishes she hadn’t gone out in the rain without an umbrella.

Miss B has got very bad sunburn.
Mr C has got an awful stomachache.
Mr D has hurt his leg in a car crash.
Mrs E has hurt her back.
57 Would rather (Предпочитать)

1 Would rather означает 'предпочитать'. После would rather употребляется infinitive без to.

\[
\text{would rather} + \text{infinitive without to}
\]

'Would you like to go on holiday in June?' 'I'd rather go in July.'

Would you rather meet on Monday or Tuesday?

Отрицательная форма образуется следующим образом с would rather not:

\[
\text{I'd rather not lend him any money.}
\]

Обратите также внимание на конструкцию would rather (do something) than (do something else).

\[
\text{I'd rather take a taxi to the station than go by bus.}
\]

2 Would rather + past tense может также употребляться для выражения того, что одно лицо предпочитало бы, чтобы другое что-то сделало.

\[
\text{would rather} + \text{subject} + \text{past tense}
\]

I'd rather you didn't open that window. I'm cold.

'Do you want me to go home?' 'I'd rather you stayed here.'

I'd rather John didn't borrow my car.

Здесь употребляется прошедшее время, например, you didn't open, you stayed, John didn't borrow, однако значение относится к настоящему или будущему времени, но не к прошедшему.

EXERCISE 57 A

Complete the sentences using would rather and the verbs in the box. Use each verb only once.

Example:

What would you like to drink? Would you rather have (you) wine or beer?

\[
\text{listen do not play go have stay}
\]

1 'Shall we go out this evening?' 'I think I____at home.'
2 It's a beautiful day. Shall we go to the beach or____(you) to the country?
3 'Would you like to watch TV?' 'I____to some music.'
4 We could wait for the next bus or walk home. What____(you)?
5 The weather is too hot for me. I____tennis this afternoon.
EXERCISE 57B
You are speaking to a friend. Complete the sentences using *I'd rather you* and the past *form* of the verbs in the box. Use each verb only once.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>come</th>
<th>not open</th>
<th>stay</th>
<th>phone</th>
<th>not turn on</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Example:

You could go now if you want to. *but I'd rather you stayed* a bit longer.

1 ______ the window. I'm rather cold.
2 ______ phone the restaurant if you like, but ______ them.
3 ______ the TV if you don't mind. I've got a terrible headache.
4 *'Shall I come and see you tomorrow **morning**?'* '______ in the afternoon. I'll be quite busy in the **morning**.'

EXERCISE 58B
Complete the sentences using *it's time* and a past tense.

Andrew's hair looks awful. He hasn't washed it for a long time. He says: *It's time I washed my hair.*

1 Simon received a bill two weeks ago, but he still hasn't paid it. His friends asks him: *Don't you think _____?*
2 You're taking an important exam next month, but you haven't started studying for it yet. You say: _____
3 Sally promised to phone a friend, Mike, two weeks ago, but she still hasn't phoned him. Her mother says: *Don't you think _____?*
4 There is something wrong with your car. *You've* been thinking of taking it to the garage for weeks **now**! You say: _____
The passive: general (Страдательный залог: общие положения)

1 Form

Страдательный залог глаголов в различных временных формах образуется с помощью be (например, is, was, is being, have been) + past participle.

**Present simple:**
- am/are/is + past participle
  - The office is locked every evening.

**Present continuous:**
- am/are/is + being + past participle
  - The house is being painted at the moment.

**Past simple:**
- was/were + past participle
  - My car was stolen last night.

**Past continuous:**
- was/were + being + past participle
  - The bridge was being repaired last week.

**Past perfect simple:**
- have/has + been + past participle
  - Sarah has been invited to the party.

**Past perfect continuous:**
- had + been + past participle


Past continuous passives (have/had + been) употребляется очень редко.

The past participle of regular verbs ends in -ed (например, locked, painted). Irregular verbs have different past participle forms (например, steal —> stolen, tell —> told) (CM. 190).

When we add -ed to verbs, there are sometimes changes in spelling (например, stop —> stopped).

CM. 188.3, 4, 6. Относительно произношения -ed см. 187.2.

3 Compare these active and passive sentences:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Someone locks the office every evening.</td>
<td>The office is locked every evening.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Someone has invited Sarah to the party.</td>
<td>Sarah has been invited to the party.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Обратите внимание, что дополнение глагола в действительном залоге (например, the office, Sarah) становится подлежащим в страдательном залоге.

Правила выбора времени в страдательном залоге те же, что и в действительном.

Past continuous passives (have/had + been) употребляются очень редко.

The past participle of regular verbs ends in -ed (например, locked, painted). Irregular verbs have different past participle forms (например, steal —> stolen, tell —> told) (CM. 190).

When we add -ed to verbs, there are sometimes changes in spelling (например, stop —> stopped).

CM. 188.3, 4, 6. Относительно произношения -ed см. 187.2.
2 Use

a Passive часто употребляется в том случае, когда неизвестно, кто или что является производителем действия.

My car was stolen last night. [Мой автомобиль был угнан прошлой ночью.] (Мне не известно, кто угнал автомобиль.)

b Passive употребляется также в том случае, когда производитель действия не представляет интереса.

The factory was painted during the war.  
Sarah has been invited to the party.

В этих предложениях для нас интерес представляет фабрика и Сара, а не то, кто покрасил фабрику или кто пригласил Сару.

c Passive также употребляется в том случае, когда нет необходимости указывать конкретно, кто или что производит что-то. Compare:

Active: I made a mistake.  
Passive: A mistake was made.

EXERCISE 59A

What is being done in these pictures? Complete the sentences using the present continuous passive of these verbs: paint, feed, milk, count, repair, cut, clean.

Example:

1 The road ___  
2 The fence ___  
3 The cows ___  
4 The windows ___  
5 The cats ___  
6 The money ___

The grass is being cut.
EXERCISE 59B

Compare the two pictures. Picture A shows a room some time ago in the past. Picture B shows the same room as it is now. What is different? Complete the sentences using the present perfect simple passive of these verbs: repair, paint, take out, put up, clean. Use some verbs more than once.

Example:

In picture B ...

The door has been repaired.
Some new curtains have been put up.

1 The window ___
2 The carpet ___
3 The walls ___
4 The light ___
5 Some posters ___
6 The old fireplace ___

EXERCISE 59C

Complete the sentences.

(i) Use the present simple passive of the verbs in the box.

| use | play | destroy | speak | export | make |

Example:

Bread is made from wheat.

1 Football ___ all over the world.
2 Millions of cars ___ from Japan every year.
3 A compass ___ for showing direction.
4 How many languages ___ in Switzerland?
5 Millions of trees ___ by pollution every year.
(ii) Use the past simple passive of the verbs in the box.

| discover | invent | play | assassinate | paint | build |

Example:

President John F. Kennedy was assassinated in Dallas in 1963.

1. The 1990 World Cup for soccer was played in Italy.
2. When was television invented?
3. The first pyramids of Egypt were built around 3000 BC.
4. Penicillin was discovered by Alexander Renting in 1928.
5. *The Mona Lisa (La Gioconda)* was painted by Leonardo da Vinci.

(iii) Use the past continuous or past perfect passive of the verbs in the box.

| not invite | clean | sell | repair | interview | steal |

Example:

I couldn’t wear my suit last Saturday. It was being cleaned.

1. When I got back to the car park, my car wasn’t there. It was parked.
2. We couldn’t use the photocopier this morning. It was being repaired.
3. By the time I arrived at the concert hall, there were no tickets left. They had been sold.
4. We didn’t go to the party on Saturday because we were invited.
5. The man admitted stealing the money while he was being interviewed by the police.

EXERCISE 59D

Choose the correct form: active or passive.

Example:

A valuable painting was stolen from the Central Art Gallery late last night. The thieves entered the gallery through a small upstairs window.

1. Walt Disney created the cartoon character Mickey Mouse.
2. This problem was discussed at the last meeting.
3. In 1964 Martin Luther King won the Nobel Peace Prize. In 1968 he was assassinated in Memphis, Tennessee.
4. The president arrived in Rome yesterday afternoon. Later he was interviewed on Italian TV.
5. Teachers have been given a new pay rise by the government. The news was announced earlier today.

Note

- Относительно страдательного залога см. также 60–64.
The passive: infinitive and -ing forms
(Страдательный залог: инфинитив и -ing формы)

1. Существует форма passive infinitive: *be* + past participle. Она употребляется после модальных глаголов (*must, can, will*, etc) и ряда других конструкций (например, *going to, have to, want to* и *would like to*).

   *This door must be kept* locked.
   *The job can't be done.*
   *He's going to be interviewed* next week.
   *The new motorway will be opened* next summer.
   *I don't want to be disturbed.*

2. Существует форма passive perfect infinitive: *have been* + past participle. Она может употребляться для выражения прошедшего времени.

   *The newspaper may have been thrown* away last night.
   *We should have been told* about the dangers.

3. Существует также *-ing* форма в страдательном залоге: *being* + past participle.

   */ don't like being cheated.*
   *He remembers being given* the book.

**EXERCISE 60A**

Put these sentence into the passive (leaving out someone, they, we).

Example:

Someone might steal the car. The car might be stolen.

1. Someone will clean the room.
2. They had to cut down that tree.
3. Someone should tell Sally what happened.
4. They're going to build a new hospital.
5. We can solve the problem.
6. Someone has to finish the job.
7. They may send the man to prison.
8. We must do something now.

**EXERCISE 60B**

Complete the sentences using the passive perfect infinitive.

Example:

Why doesn't Kate know about the meeting? She should have been told (tell) ages ago.

1. ‘Sally is late this evening.’ ‘She might _____ (delay) at work.’
2. Why is all this rubbish still here? It ought to _____ (throw away) yesterday.
3. The sweater I wanted to buy isn’t in the shop window any more. It must _____ (sell).
4. It was lucky that you didn’t fall off the ladder. You might _____ (kill).
5. You shouldn’t have left all that money in your hotel room. It could _____ (steal).
EXERCISE 60C

Put these sentences into the passive, as in the example.

Example:
I don't like people shouting at me. / I don't like being shouted at.
1 I don't like people staring at me.
2 I can't stand people telling me what to do.
3 I don't like people interrupting me.
4 I dislike people making jokes about me.
5 I enjoy people praising me.

Are these things true for you?

EXERCISE 61A

Billy Palmer was a burglar once. He is speaking about a night some years ago when everything went wrong for him.

Complete Palmer's story using the past simple passive with get.

'It was terrible. First of all, my jeans got ripped (rip) as I was climbing over the garden wall. Then I 1 (stick) climbing through the bathroom window. Then I 2 (bit) by a dog inside the house. The dog made so much noise that everyone in the house woke up and I 3 (hit) over the head with an umbrella. Then, when I finally got out of the house, there was a police car waiting there. But, to my surprise, I 4 (not | caught) that night. Although it wouldn't really have mattered if I had. Two weeks later, I 5 (arrest) burgling another house and I 6 (sentence) to three years in prison.'
2 Verbs with two objects in the passive
(Глаголы с двумя дополнениями в страдательном залоге)

Некоторые глаголы, например give, могут иметь два дополнения.

*Someone gave Jimmy the money.* *(Jimmy и the money - два дополнения.)*

В подобных случаях можно образовать два разных предложения в страдательном залоге.

*Jimmy was given the money.* *The money was given to Jimmy.*

Вообще, для предложений в страдательном залоге более обычно, когда их начинают с лица.

Вот некоторые глаголы, которые могут иметь два дополнения: send, offer, show, pay, teach, promise и tell.

*I was sent a telegram.*

*She will be told the news.*

**EXERCISE 62A**

Put these sentences into the passive, beginning with the words given.

Example:

They promised Robert an interview for the job. Robert *was promised an interview for the job.*

1 They showed Sarah the photographs. Sarah

2 Normally, they pay me my salary every month. Normally, I

3 I think that they have sent us the wrong tickets. I think that we

4 I hope that someone will give Sally the message. I hope that Sally

5 They didn't ask me for my address. I

6 I thought that someone had told you about the meeting. I thought that you

**3 The passive with by and with (Страдательный залог с by и with)**

1 *By + agent (агенс)*

Compare:

Active: *Marconi invented the radio.*

Passive: *The radio was invented by Marconi.*

Active: *The strong winds blew down a number of trees.*

Passive: *A number of trees were blown down by the strong winds.*

Иногда подлежащее в предложении в действительном залоге (например, *Marconi, the strong winds*) употребляется как ‘агент’ в предложении в страдательном залоге. Когда это имеет место, для введения агента в страдательном залоге употребляется *by*.

*By + агенс* употребляется лишь только в том случае, когда важно знать, кто или что ответственно за выполнение чего-то.
It is said that he ... /He is said to ... etc (Говорят ... и др.)

1 Когда речь идет о том, что другие люди говорят, считают и т.д., можно употреблять две формы в страдательном залоге. Compare:

Active: People say that Mr Ross is a millionaire.

Passive (1): It + passive + that-clause
It is said that Mr Ross is a millionaire.

Passive (2): Subject + passive + to infinitive
Mr Ross is said to be a millionaire.
It is said that he... / He is said to... etc

It is believed that they own a lot of land in the north.  
They are believed to own a lot of land in the north.

It is reported that the president is seriously ill.  
The president is reported to be seriously ill.

It is expected that a new law will be introduced next year.  
A new law is expected to be introduced next year.

Когда мнение и т.д. относится к более раннему действию, употребляется 'perfect infinitive' (to have + past participle). Compare:

It is believed that the fire started late last night.  
The fire is believed to have started late last night.

It was thought that two prisoners had escaped.  
Two prisoners were thought to have escaped.

Be supposed to

Supposed to может употребляться в значении "говорят, считают".

I'd like to read that book. It's supposed to be very good. [Считают, что она очень хорошая.]  
He's supposed to have been married before. [По-лагают, что он был ранее женат.]

Supposed to иногда предполагает некоторое сомнение относительно истинности или неистинности чего-то.

Обратите внимание, что supposed to употребляется также для выражения ожидаемого действия как результата долга, предварительной договоренности или существующих правил, например: I'm supposed to see Maria this afternoon. СМ. 42.3.

EXERCISE 64A

Read each sentence. Then make two new sentences in the passive, beginning with the words in brackets.

Example:

People expect that taxes will be reduced soon.  
It is expected that taxes will be reduced soon.  
(Taxes)  
(Taxes are expected to be reduced soon.)

1 People say that the monument is over 2000 years old.  
(It)  (The monument)

2 People expect that the president will resign.  
(It)  (The president)

3 People think the fire started at about 8 o'clock.  
(It)  (The fire)

4 Journalists reported that seven people had been injured in the fire.  
(It)  (Seven people)
EXERCISE 64B
Read each sentence. Then make a new sentence with be + supposed to, as in the example.
Example:
People say that Whitby is a very nice town.  
Whitby is supposed to be a very nice town.

People say that the new film is very violent.  
1 People say that those cars are rather unreliable.  
3 People say that he moved to New York last year.  
4 People say that the new restaurant is very expensive.  
5 People say that the concert was very good.

65 Have something done

1 Form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>have + object</th>
<th>past participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/ am having</td>
<td>built at the moment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How often do you have</td>
<td>cut?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We had</td>
<td>serviced last week.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Simon has just had</td>
<td>made.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You should have</td>
<td>tested.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Are you going to have</td>
<td>fitted in your flat?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The past participle of regular verbs ends in -ed eg painted, serviced. Irregular verbs have different past participle forms eg build → built, cut → cut (see 190).

When we add -ed to verbs, there are sometimes changes in spelling eg fit → fitted. See 188.6.

For the pronunciation of -ed, see 187.2.

2 Use

a Конструкция have something done употребляется для выражения ситуации, в которой для выполнения чего-то для одних привлекаются другие лица.

I'm having a garage built at the moment.

Compare:

I'm building a garage at the moment. [Я сейчас строю гараж. (Я строю гараж сам.)]
I'm having a garage built at the moment. [Мне строят сейчас гараж. (Я нанял кого-то, чтобы это сделали для меня.)]

More examples:

We had the carpet cleaned by a professional carpet cleaner. We didn't do it ourselves.
I usually have my car serviced at a garage in East Street.
Have something done может также употребляться в ситуациях, когда никто не привлекается для выполнения чего-то.

I had my leg broken in a football match.  
We had our fence blown down in a storm last week.

Have something done часто употребляется таким образом, когда с кем-то происходит что-то неприятное или неожиданное.

Обратите внимание, что get something done может часто употребляться вместо have something done, особенно, в неофициальном стиле, например: / must get this jacket cleaned.

EXERCISE 65A
What are these people having done? Make sentences using the words in the box.

Example:
1 They're having their flat decorated.

EXERCISE 65B
Complete the sentences using the correct form of have something done.

Example:
I haven't had my central heating serviced (my central heating | service) since last autumn.

1 Are you going to_____ (these shoes | repair) or shall I throw them away?
2 My neighbours are_____ (an extension | build) onto their house at the moment.
3 I must_____ (my glasses | mend). They keep falling off.
4 Where do you_____ (your hair | do)? It always looks very nice.
5 I_____ (four new tyres | fit) on my car last month.
6 I've just_____ (my suit | dry-clean).
EXERCISE 65C

Something unpleasant happened to each of these people last week. Make sentences using have something done.

Example:

Kate had her wallet stolen (her wallet | steal) from her bag while she was out shopping.

1 Peter_____ (his flat | burgle) while he was out at work.
2 Mr and Mrs Woods_____ (the roof of their house | damage) in a storm.
3 Lynne_____ (the radio | steal) from her car.
4 My brother_____ (his nose | break) in a football match.

EXERCISE 66A

Cindy lives in Brighton. She is going to visit her friend Sarah in London on Sunday. Complete the telephone conversation using if or when.

Sarah: What time are you coming on Sunday, Cindy?
Cindy: I'm not sure yet. There's a train from Brighton at 9.00. If I take that one, I'll arrive in London at 10.20. The next train is at 9.35 if I catch that one, I won't be there until 11.25.
Sarah: Will you phone me if you know which train you're catching? I'd like to meet you at the station if you arrive.
Cindy: Yes, all right. I may phone you tomorrow. But if I don't, I'll phone you on Friday evening. OK?
Sarah: All right. What would you like to do if you're here on Sunday?
Cindy: Shall we go for a walk if the weather is fine?
Sarah: Yes, all right. We could go to the zoo if you like!

Note

-- Иногда if = when (ever). См. 72.
- Относительно предложений с if см. также 67-74.
67 Conditionals: introduction (Условное наклонение: введение)

1. *If* может употребляться со многими различными конструкциями. Ниже представлены наиболее употребительные:
   a. Open present or future conditionals (see 68)
      
      \[
      \text{If } \text{present simple } + \text{ will } + \text{ infinitive}
      \]
      
      *If he asks me, I'll help him.* [Если он меня попросит, я ему помогу. (Возможно, он попросит меня.)]

   b. Unreal present or future conditionals (see 69)
      
      \[
      \text{If } \text{past simple } + \text{ would } + \text{ infinitive}
      \]
      
      *If he asked me I would help him.* [Если бы он попросил меня, я бы ему помог. (Но он не попросил меня или он, возможно, не попросит.)]

   c. Unreal past conditionals (see 71)
      
      \[
      \text{If } \text{past perfect } + \text{ would have } + \text{ past participle}
      \]
      
      *If he had asked me, I would have helped him.* [Если бы он попросил меня, я бы ему помог. (Но он не попросил меня.)]

   d. General conditionals (see 72)
      
      \[
      \text{If } \text{present simple } + \text{ present simple}
      \]
      
      *If he asks me, I always help him.* [Если он меня попросит, я всегда ему помогу. (Когда бы он меня ни попросил ...)]

2. Придаточное предложение с *if* может находиться как перед главным предложением, так и после него.

   *If it rains, I'll stay at home.*
   *I'll stay at home if it rains.*

   Часто после придаточного предложения с //, когда оно стоит перед главным предложением, ставится запятая (,).

3. Сослагательное наклонение может употребляться и без *if* (см.: 73).

   *Unless we hurry, we'll be late.*
   *Suppose you won a lot of money, what would you do?*
68 Open present or future conditionals
(Открытое настоящее время или будущее условное наклонение)

1 Basic form (See also 3 below.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IF-CLAUSE</th>
<th>MAIN CLAUSE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(ПРИДАТОЧНОЕ ПРЕДЛОЖЕНИЕ С IF)</td>
<td>(ГЛАВНОЕ ПРЕДЛОЖЕНИЕ)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If I go out,</td>
<td>I'll buy a newspaper.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If you don't study,</td>
<td>you won't pass your exam.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If they offer you the job</td>
<td>what will you do?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

if + present simple + will + infinitive without to

Эта конструкция часто называется 'первое сослагательное наклонение' ('first conditional').

2 Use

Эта конструкция употребляется в том случае, когда существует предположение, что действие в придаточном предложении с if произойдет в будущем.

If I go out, I'll buy a newspaper. [Если я выйду, я куплю газету. (Возможно, я куплю газету, возможно, нет.)]
If we have enough time, we'll visit Robert. [Если у нас будет достаточно времени, мы навестим Роберта. (Возможно, у нас будет достаточно времени, возможно, нет.)]

Эта конструкция также употребляется в том случае, когда существует предположение, что действие в придаточном предложении с if реально в настоящем времени.

If you're hungry, I'll make you something to eat. [Если вы голодны, я приготовлю вам что-то поесть. (Возможно, вы голодны, возможно, нет.)]

3 Other forms

a Можно также употреблять shall вместо will с I и we в главном предложении.

If I fail the exam, I shall take it again.

b В этой конструкции может употребляться модальный глагол, например, can, may вместо will в главном предложении.

If we have enough time, we can visit Robert.

c В главном предложении может также употребляться повелительное наклонение.

If you see Maria, give her a message for me, please.

d В придаточном предложении с if может употребляться present perfect или present continuous вместо present simple.

If you have finished the letter, I'll post it for you.

I'll come back later if you're working now.

e Можно также употреблять should после if в случае, когда существует меньшая уверенность в возможности действия. Compare:

If I see Maria, I'll give her your message. | If I should see Maria. I'll give her your message.
(Возможно, я увижу Марию.) | (Я менее уверен, что увижу Марию.)

Когда существует меньшая уверенность в выполнении действия, предложение может начинаться с should.

Should I see Maria, I'll give her your message.
EXERCISE 68A

Put the verbs into the correct form: will/won’t or the present simple. Are these things true?

Example:
If we keep on (keep on) using more and more cars, we’ll run out (run out) of oil.

1. If we _____ (run out) of oil, we _____ (need) other kinds of energy.
2. Pollution _____ (increase) if we _____ (use) more oil and coal.
3. If pollution _____ (increase), more and more trees _____ (die).
4. The climate _____ (change) if more trees _____ (die).
5. If we _____ (try) to control pollution, it _____ (be) very expensive.
6. If we _____ (not control) pollution soon, it _____ (be) too late!

EXERCISE 68B

Complete the sentences using the words in the box.

Example:
If I don’t leave now, I might be late.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>have finished</th>
<th>can lend</th>
<th>might be</th>
<th>should need</th>
<th>are feeling</th>
<th>may go</th>
<th>should phone</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. If you need any more money I _____ you some.
2. You can go now if you _____.
3. If the weather is fine tomorrow, we _____ for a picnic.
4. Just ask me if you _____ any help.
5. If anyone _____ for me while I am out, tell them I’ll be back at 4 o’clock.
6. Go to bed now if you _____ tired.

9 Unreal present or future conditionals

(Нереальное настоящее или будущее сослагательное наклонение)

1. Basic form (See also 3 below.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IF-CLAUSE</th>
<th>MAIN CLAUSE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>If I had a lot of money,</td>
<td>I’d travel round the world.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If he got up earlier,</td>
<td>he wouldn’t be late for work.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If you didn’t pass the exam,</td>
<td>would you take it again?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

if + past simple + would + infinitive without to

Эта конструкция часто называется ‘второе сослагательное наклонение’ (‘second conditional’).

2. Use

Эта конструкция употребляется для выражения нереальных настоящих или будущих ситуаций.

If I had a lot of money, I’d travel round the world. [Если бы у меня было много денег, я бы путешествовал по всему свету. (Но у меня денег немного.)]

If I didn’t feel so tired, I’d come out with you. [Если бы я не был столь уставшим, я бы пошел с тобой. (Но я чувствую себя очень уставшим.)]

If the weather was nice, I’d go to the beach. [Если бы погода была прекрасной, я бы пошел на пляж. (Но погода не прекрасная.)]
Unreal present or future conditionals

Такие предложения также употребляются для выражения маловероятных настоящих или будущих ситуаций.

*If she really loved you, she wouldn’t be so horrible to you.*
*If I won a lot of money, I’d take a long holiday.*

Форма past tense, например *had, loved*, не имеет значения прошедшего времени в этих предложениях; она имеет гипотетическое настоящее или будущее значение.

3 Other forms

а) Часто после *if* употребляется *were* вместо *was*, особенно в более официальном стиле.

*If the weather were nice, I’d go to the beach.*
*I’d come out for a walk with you if I weren’t so busy.*

Часто *if I were you* употребляется для выражения совета.

*If I were you, I’d apply for the job.*

б) В главном предложении вместо *would* могут употребляться модальные глаголы *might* или *could*.

*If I won a lot of money. I might stop working.* (= Я бы, вероятно, прекратил работать.)
*I could repair the car, if I had the right tools.* (= Я бы смог отремонтировать автомобиль...)

EXERCISE 69A

Complete the sentences.

Example:

What *would* this woman *do* if she *knew* the boy was there?

1 If she ____ he was there, she ____ him to go away.
2 She ____ her purse and perhaps she ____ the police.
3 What ____ the boy ____ if he ____ the two policemen were nearby?
4 If he ____, he ____ to take the woman’s purse.
5 Perhaps he ____ away if he ____ them.

1 do, know
2 know, tell
3 move, call
4 do, know
5 know, not | try
6 run, see
70 Open and unreal present or future conditionals (Открытое и нереальное настоящее или будущее сослагательное наклонение)

‘Открытое’ сослагательное наклонение (см.: 68) употребляется для выражения возможных настоящих или будущих ситуаций.

If you need the money, I’ll lend it to you. [Если вам нужны деньги, то я вам одолжу (Вероятно, вам нужны деньги.)]
If we leave at 1.30, we’ll arrive at 2.30. [Если мы уедем в 1.30, то прибудем в 2.30. (Вероятно, мы уедем в 1.30.)]

‘Нереальное’ сослагательное наклонение (см.: 69) употребляется для выражения нереальных или маловероятных настоящих или будущих ситуаций.

If you needed the money, I’d lend it to you. [Если бы вам нужны были деньги, то я вам одолжил бы. (Но вам не нужны деньги или вы, вероятно, не нуждаетесь в них.)]
If we left at 2.00, we’d arrive late. [Если бы мы уехали в 1.30, то прибыли бы в 2.30. (Но мы не уедем в 2.00 или мы, вероятно, тогда не уедем.)]

EXERCISE 70A

Find the endings. Put the verbs into the correct form.

Example: 1 I’d give up work if I were a millionaire.

1 I’d give up work if it (be) a nice day tomorrow.
2 We’d go for a picnic if I (not | have) such a big nose.
3 If I took more exercise, the world (be) a better place.
4 I’ll watch TV tonight if I (go) to the concert next week.
5 I’d be better-looking if I (be) a millionaire.
6 If people weren’t so greedy, if I (not | go) out.
7 If I can get a ticket, I (not | be) so unfit.

71 Unreal past conditionals
(Нереальное прошедшее сослагательное наклонение)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Basic form (See also 3 below.)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IF-CLAUSE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If the weather had been nice yesterday,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If I had studied hard,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If you hadn’t missed your bus,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If I hadn’t helped you,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Эта конструкция часто называется ‘третье сослагательное наклонение’ (‘third conditional’).

Стяжение had и would - ‘d. If I’d (= had) studied hard, I’d (= would) have passed the exam.
Use

Эта конструкция употребляется для выражения нереальных ситуаций в прошлом.

*If the weather had been nice yesterday, I would have gone to the beach.* (Но погода не была прекрасной.)

*If I'd studied hard, I would have passed the exam.* (Но я не занимался прилежно.)

*If you hadn't missed your bus, you wouldn't have been late for school.* (Но вы опоздали на автобус.)

Other forms

В главном предложении вместо *would* могут употребляться модальные глаголы *might* и *could*.

*If you had taken the exam, you might have passed it.* (= ... вы, вероятно, сдали бы его.)

/ *could have repaired the car, if I'd had the right tools.* (= Я бы смог отремонтировать автомобиль ...)

---

**EXERCISE 71 A**

Put the verbs into the correct form: the past perfect, or *would (n't) have* + past participle.

Example:

She would have spoken to you if she *had seen* (see) you.

1 If I _____ (not | be) so busy yesterday, I would have visited you.
2 If you had seen the film, you _____ (enjoy) it.
3 She would have gone to university if she _____ (have) the opportunity.
4 If he had been more careful, he _____ (not | have) an accident.

**EXERCISE 71B**

Read the situation. Then make a sentence with *if*.

Example:

I didn't have time. I didn't go shopping.

*If I'd had time, I would have gone shopping.*

1 She was ill. She didn't go to work.
2 It rained all morning. We didn't go out.
3 She didn't have enough money. She couldn't buy the shoes.
4 I wasn't hungry. I didn't have breakfast.
5 He was tired. He made a mistake.
6 We didn't have a map. We got lost.

### General conditionals (Общее сослагательное наклонение)

#### Form

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IF-Claus e</th>
<th>Main clause</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>If I have a big lunch,</em></td>
<td>it makes <em>me sleepy.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>If you mix yellow and blue,</em></td>
<td>you get <em>green.</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*If + present simple + present simple*

#### Use

Эта конструкция употребляется для выражения привычных действий и общих истин (здесь *if* = *whenever*).

*If I have a big lunch, it makes me sleepy.* (= Когда бы я хорошо не пообедал ...)  
*If you mix yellow and blue, you get green.* (= Когда бы вы не смешали желтый и синий цвета ...)*

---

118
EXERCISE 72A
Join each idea in A with the most suitable idea from B.
Example:
1. If I get a headache, I usually take some aspirin.

A
1. If I get a headache,  
2. I feel terrible,  
3. If I drink too much coffee,  
4. If flowers don't get any water,  
5. You put on weight

B
they die  
it makes me feel nervous  
if you don't get enough exercise  
I usually take some aspirin  
if I don't get 8 hours' sleep a night

3 Conditional clauses without if
(Pридаточные предложения условия без if)

В придаточных предложениях условия вместо if могут употребляться другие слова:

1. Unless

*Unless* может употребляться в значении ‘if... not’ ["если... нет"].

*Unless you put on some suncream, you'll get sunburnt.* [Если вы не воспользуетесь кремом от солнца...]

/ won't go to the party unless you go too. [... если вы также не пойдете.]

*Unless* часто употребляется в выражениях угрозы, например: *Unless you stop making that noise, I'll scream!* и предупреждений, например: *You'll be hungry later unless you eat now.*

Compare if and unless:

If you eat now, you won't be hungry later.  
I'll go to the party if you go too.

| Unless you eat now, you'll be hungry later.  
| I won't go to the party unless you go too. |

2. As/So long as, provided/providing (that)

*As/so long as* и *provided/providing (that)* употребляется в значении ‘if but only if’ ["лишь в случае, если"].

*You can borrow my camera as long as you're careful with it.* [... лишь в случае, если вы будете с ней осторожны.]

*I'll go to the party provided you go too.* [... лишь в случае, если вы также пойдете.]

3. And и or (else)

Для объединения двух идей иногда употребляется *and* вместо придаточного предложения условия.

*Stay in bed for a few days and you'll be fine.* [Остались в постели на несколько дней, и вы будете хорошо себя чувствовать.]

4. Or (else) может употребляться в значении ‘if not’ ["если нет"] или ‘otherwise’ ["инако"].

*Don't try to lift that box or (else) you'll hurt yourself.* [Не пытайтесь поднять тот ящик, иначе вы себя травмируете.]
4 Should

*Should* может употребляться вместо *if*, когда существует меньшая уверенность возможности выполнения действия. Compare:

*If we have enough time, we'll visit Robert.*

[Если у нас будет достаточно времени, мы навестим Роберта. (Вероятно, у нас будет достаточно времени.)]

*Should we have enough time, we'll visit Robert.*

[Будь у нас достаточно времени, мы бы навестили Роберта. (Я не совсем уверен, что у нас будет достаточно времени.)]

В этом значении *should* может также употребляться после *if*, например: *If we should have enough time, we'll visit Robert.* CM. 69.3.

5 Suppose/supposing

*Suppose* или *supposing* может также употребляться вместо *if*, особенно в предложениях с нереальным условием.

*Suppose/Supposing* you won a lot of money, what would you do?

EXERCISE 73A

Rephrase the sentences using unless.

Example:

If we don't leave now, we'll miss the start of the film.

*Unless we leave now, we'll miss the start of the film.*

1 If you don't *wear* your coat, you'll be cold.
2 I'll phone you, if you don't phone me first.
3 He *won't* receive the letter tomorrow if you don't post it before 1 o'clock today.
4 I won't go to school tomorrow if I don't feel better.
5 I can't write to you if you don't give me your address.
6 Your cough won't get better if you don't stop smoking.

EXERCISE 73B

Choose the correct word or expression.

Example:

We'll have a picnic tomorrow *unless/provided* it rains.

1 *Unless/Provided* you tell the truth, everything will be all right.
2 In Britain you can marry at the age of sixteen *unless/providing* you have your parents' permission.
3 He won't forgive you *unless/as long as* you say you're sorry.
4 *Unless/Providing* you lend me the money, I won't be able to go on holiday.
5 I'll buy the car *unless/as long as* it's not too expensive.

EXERCISE 73C

Read the sentence. Make a new sentence with the same meaning using the word (s) in brackets.

Example:

If you don't lend me your map, I'll get lost. (or)

*Lend me your map or I'll get lost.*

If you do as I say, everything will be all right. (and)

*Do as I say and everything will be all right.*

1 If you don't stop making that noise, I'll hit you. (or)
2 If you take this umbrella, you won't get wet. (and)
3 If you don't drive more carefully, you'll have an *accident*. (or else)
4 If you help me, I'll help you. (and)
EXERCISE 73D
Complete the sentences using should **and** the verbs in the box.
Example: I think I’ll arrive at the meeting on time, but **should I be** late, please start without me.

miss change be need fail

1 I think I’ve got enough money, but_____ any more, I’ll borrow some.
2 I’m sure he’ll pass the exam, but_____, he can always take it again.
3 I don’t think I’ll go to the party, but_____ my mind I’ll let you know.
4 She expects to catch the last bus, but_____ it, she’ll take a taxi.

EXERCISE 73E
Join each idea in A with the most suitable idea from B. Make sentences beginning *Suppose/Supposing* ....
Example: 1 *Suppose/Supposing* I moved to Scotland, would you come and visit me?

A
1 I moved to Scotland, ______
2 someone finds my wallet, ______
3 they had stayed at our house, ______
4 they had offered you the job, ______
5 you had won the competition, ______

B
1 would you have taken it?
2 what would the prize have been?
3 do you think they will take it to the police?
4 would you come and visit me?
5 where would they have slept?

4 Review of conditionals (Обзор сослагательного наклонения)

EXERCISE 74A
Complete the sentences using the correct form of the verbs in brackets: the present simple, past simple, past perfect, will/won’t..., would (n’t)..., or would (n’t) have ....

Examples:
My father would have died if the doctors **hadn’t** operated (not | operate) on him straight away. Don’t worry about getting home. If you **miss** (miss) the last bus, I’ll give you a lift in my car.
My friend **would get** (get) better marks at school if she did more homework. If she doesn’t have much time, she normally **has** (have) a sandwich for lunch.

1 I _____(wear) some warm clothes today, if I were you. It’s quite cold outside.
2 You_____ (not | have) the accident if you’d been more careful.
3 If I_____ (have) enough money, I’d buy a new car.
4 If you_____ (wait) for a few minutes. I’ll come into town with you.
5 I would have told you if I____(know).
6 People_____ (like) Robert more if he didn’t always talk about himself.
7 I _____(speak) to my boss about my holidays today if I get the chance.
8 If he_____ (make) a promise, he always keeps it.
9 I’d go to the cinema more often if it_____ (not | be) so expensive.
10 I_____ (not | leave) my last job if the wages had been better.
11 He always_____ (get) angry if you talk to him about politics.
12 If you go out without a coat, you_____ (catch) a cold.
13 If you_____ (ask) me, I would have helped you.
14 What_____ (you | do) if you saw someone drowning in the sea?
15 I’ll go out this evening if I_____ (not | be) too busy.
75 Direct and reported speech: introduction
(Прямая и косвенная речь: введение)

Когда необходимо передать то, что кто-то сказал, можно употреблять 'прямую речь' или 'косвенную речь':

Direct speech: Annie said, ‘I’m hungry.

В прямой речи передаются точно те же слова, которые сказал говорящий, и употребляются кавычки ('...' или “…”).

Reported speech: Annie said (that) she was hungry.
or: Annie says (that) she’s hungry.

Когда употребляется глагол сообщения в прошедшем времени (например, Annie said), время в косвенной речи обычно меняется (например, I’m превращается в прошедшее время: she was).

Но когда употребляется глагол сообщения в настоящем времени (например, Annie says), время не претерпевает изменений (например, I’m остается в настоящем времени: she’s).

For reported speech, see 77-80.

76 Say and tell

1 Обычно после tell для выражения, к кому обращаются, употребляется личное дополнение (например, Sarah, me, us). Say, как правило, употребляется без личного дополнения. Compare:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>say + something</th>
<th>tell + someone + something</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/ said I was going home.</td>
<td>I told Sarah I was going home.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He says he can speak French.</td>
<td>He tells me he can speak French.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Если необходимо поставить личное дополнение с say, употребляется to.
I said to Sarah that I was going home.

3 В некоторых выражениях tell может употребляться без личного дополнения, например, tell a story [рассказать историю], tell the time [сказать, который час], tell the truth [сказать правду], tell a lie [сказать].
EXERCISE 76A

Complete the sentences using the correct form of say or tell.

Example:
I’ll tell you all about my holiday when I see you.

1 Could you _____ me how to get to Paris?  
2 Do you think she’s _____ us the truth?  
3 Have you _____ goodbye to everyone?  
4 They _____ the plane was going to be late.  
5 Did he _____ you that he could play chess?  
6 Why didn’t you _____ what you wanted?

7 Reported statements (Косвенные утверждения)

1 Времена

He said he was going home.

When the reported speech is in past tense (e.g., he said, you told me), the time in the reported speech is "pushed back":

- Verbs in present tense change to past tense.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SPEAKER’S WORDS</th>
<th>REPORTED SPEECH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>‘I’m going home.’</td>
<td>He said he was going home.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘I want to stop.’</td>
<td>You told me you wanted to stop.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘I don’t like tea.’</td>
<td>She said she didn’t like tea.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘Sally has finished.’</td>
<td>You said that Sally had finished.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Verbs in past tense become past perfect or don’t change.

| ‘I spoke to them.’ | / said I had spoken to them. /I said I spoke to them. |
| ‘We arrived late.’ | They said they had arrived late. /They said they arrived late. |

- Verbs in past perfect don’t change.

| ‘I had seen the film before.’ | I told you I had seen the film before. |
Modal verbs

Обратите внимание на формы этих модальных глаголов в past tense: can → could; will → would; shall → should; may → might.

**SPEAKER’S WORDS**

*I can swim.*

*I will be at home.*

*We may go by train.*

**REPORTED SPEECH**

*He said he could swim.*

*She said that she would be at home.*

*They told me they might go by train.*

Past tense of modal verbs *could, would, should* и *might* в косвенной речи не изменяется.

*You could be right.*

*You should see the film.*

**SPEAKER’S WORDS**

*The population of London is around 9 million.*

*Sue said,* ‘*I’m on holiday with my friend’.*

**REPORTED SPEECH**

*He said that the population of London is around 9 million.*

*She told me that she lives in Brighton.*

Must или не изменяется, или принимает форму past tense (*have to*) had to.

*I must go.*

**REPORTED SPEECH**

*He said he must go. / He said he had to go.*

Когда употребляется past tense глагола сообщения, времена в косвенной речи меняются не всегда. Если то, что сообщается, представляется истиным в настоящее время, иногда употребляется то же время, что и у говорящего.

**SPEAKER’S WORDS**

*The population of London was around 9 million.*

*She said that she was 18 years old, but in fact she’s only 16.*

2 Местоимения, прилагательные, наречия и др.

В косвенной речи местоимения (например, /, me) и притяжательные прилагательные (например, my, your) часто изменяются.

**Direct speech:** Sue said, ‘*I’m on holiday with my friend’.*

**Reported speech:** Sue said (that) she was on holiday with her friend.

Когда речь идет о Сью, говорят she, a не /, а когда речь идет о подруге Сью, говорят her friend, а не my friend.
Such words, as here, now, today, are used to indicate the place where they are spoken and the time when they are spoken. If these words are used in another place and another time, they often change. For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Speaker's Words</th>
<th>Reported Speech</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>here</td>
<td>there</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>this</td>
<td>that/the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>now</td>
<td>then</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>today</td>
<td>that day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tonight</td>
<td>that night</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tomorrow</td>
<td>the next day/the following day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yesterday</td>
<td>the day before/the previous day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>next Monday</td>
<td>the following Monday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>last Monday</td>
<td>the previous Monday</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Compare:

'I'm here on holiday.' She said she was there on holiday.
'I'll see you tomorrow.' He said he would see me the next day.

The way these words change depends on the situation. For example, if someone said 'I'll see you tomorrow,' now we can say: He said he would see me today.

3 That

That is frequently used to connect a sentence with direct speech with the rest of the sentence.

I said that I was feeling tired.
You told me that you would be careful.

После say и tell (+ person) that is usually omitted, especially in informal style.

I said I was feeling tired.
You told me you would be careful.

Exercise 77A

Put these statements into reported speech, as in the examples.

Examples:

'I'm tired,' she said. She said (that) she was tired.
'I need to borrow some money,' my brother told me. My brother told me (that) he needed to borrow some money.

1 'I can't swim very well,' I told her.
2 'Mr Mason has gone out,' the secretary told me.
3 'I don't want to go swimming,' Andrew said.
4 'We’re leaving on Friday,' we said.
5 'We had lunch in Luigi's restaurant,' they said.
6 'I'll phone you later,' Sarah told Simon.
EXERCISE 77B

This is what some people said to Sally today:

The manager of the bank where Sally works: ‘You’ll get a pay rise later in the year.’
An optician: ‘There is nothing wrong with your eyes. You don’t need to wear glasses.’
Sally’s boyfriend, Peter: ‘I’d like a big family. I want at least five children.’
Sally’s father: ‘I’ve done the shopping. I’ll be home at about seven.’
Sally’s driving instructor: ‘You drove very well. You’re making good progress.’
A man who works in a dry-cleaner’s: ‘Your skirt will be ready on Saturday.’

It is evening now and Sally is telling her mother about her day. Complete what Sally says using reported speech.

Sally: I went to the dry-cleaner’s at lunchtime. The man there said my skirt would be ready on Saturday.

Mother: And what about the optician? What did she say?
Sally: Oh, she told me _1_ eyes and that I _2_ glasses.

Mother: Oh, that’s good. And what about your driving lesson? How did that go?
Sally: Oh, fine. My instructor told me that I _3_ and that I _4_ progress.

Mother: That’s very good. And what about Peter? Did you see him today?
Sally: No, but he phoned me at work. He made me laugh. He said he _5_ and that he _6_ children.

Mother: Five! Well, I hope you can afford them.
Sally: Oh, yes. That reminds me. I was speaking to the manager at work and she said that I _7_.

Mother: Oh, that’s good.
Sally: Yes. Oh, and before I forget. Dad phoned. He said he _8_ and that he _9_ seven.

78 Reported questions (Косвенные вопросы)

_The policeman asked the men what they were doing._
Времена, прилагательные, местоимения и др. в косвенных вопросах меняются таким же образом, как и в косвенных утверждениях (см. 77).

В косвенных вопросах порядок слов такой же, как и в утверждениях (например, they were doing, my brother was), и не ставится вопросительный знак (?).

В косвенных вопросах вспомогательный глагол do (do, does или did) не употребляется.

Когда вопросительное слово (например, what, where, why) отсутствует, то для введения косвенного вопроса может употребляться if whether.

Для выражения того, к кому обращен вопрос, после ask часто употребляется дополнение (например, Ken, me).

**EXERCISE 78A**

Which questions would you ask to which people?

1. ‘Will it take long to repair the car?’ a hotel receptionist
2. ‘Can I park my car in West Street?’ a doctor
3. ‘What time does the film finish?’ a policeman
4. ‘Have you got a double room?’ a mechanic
5. ‘How many times a day should I take the medicine?’ a waiter
6. ‘What’s the soup of the day?’ a cinema attendant

Report the questions. Begin: / asked the ....

Example:

1. / asked the mechanic if it would take long to repair the car.
EXERCISE 78B

Andrew had a frightening experience recently while on holiday. He was out walking in the countryside when suddenly he was surrounded by a group of soldiers.

Here are the questions which one of the soldiers asked Andrew.

1 'What are you doing here?'
2 'Why are you carrying a camera?'
3 'Did you see the signs warning people not to enter the area?'
4 'Have you been taking photos of the army base?'
5 'What's your name?'
6 'Can I see some proof of your identity?'

After the holiday, Andrew told some friends what had happened. Complete Andrew's story using reported speech.

'I was about seven miles from the youth hostel in the middle of nowhere when suddenly a jeep roared up to me and I was surrounded by soldiers pointing guns! An officer asked me 1 what I was doing there. Then he pointed at my Kodak and asked me 2 I tried to explain that I was on holiday there, but then he wanted to know 3 I told him I hadn't. Then he asked me 4 I said that I didn't even know there was an army base there. Then he wanted to know 5 and 6 Then, just because I couldn't prove who I was, they put me in the jeep and drove me to some kind of underground army base. They kept me there while they phoned the youth hostel to check up on me.'

79 Using the to infinitive in reported speech

(Употребление to инфинитива в косвенной речи)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SPEAKER'S WORDS</th>
<th>REPORTED SPEECH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>'Get out of my room.'</td>
<td>She told the man to get out of her room.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Could you carry some bags, Mike?'</td>
<td>I asked Mike to carry some bags.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Stay away from me.'</td>
<td>He warned them to stay away from him.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'You should phone the police.'</td>
<td>She advised him to phone the police.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Would you like to have dinner with us?'</td>
<td>They invited me to have dinner with them.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
С помощью конструкции verb + to infinitive часто выражаются предложения, обещания и угрозы.

**SPEAKER’S WORDS**
- ‘Can I help you?’
- ‘I’ll be careful.’
- ‘I’ll hit you!’

**REPORTED SPEECH**
- The woman offered to help me.
- You promised to be careful.
- She threatened to hit me.

В отрицательных приказах, обещаниях и др. употребляется not to + infinitive.

- ‘Don’t touch my camera.’
- ‘I won’t be late.’

He told me not to touch his camera.
You promised not to be late.

**EXERCISE 79A**

Report these sentences using the to infinitive form.

Examples:
- ‘I’ll pay back the money.’ (she promised)  She promised to pay back the money.
- ‘Hurry up.’ (he told me)  He told me to hurry up.

1 ‘Can I do the washing up?’ (I offered)
2 ‘I’ll phone the police!’ (she threatened)
3 ‘You should stop smoking.’ (the doctor advised my brother)
4 ‘Could you change the light bulb for me?’ (he asked me)
5 ‘Don’t be stupid.’ (she told me)
6 ‘Would you like to come to my party?’ (he invited her)
7 ‘I won’t forget the shopping.’ (I promised)
8 ‘Don’t leave the door unlocked.’ (she warned them)

**Exercise 80A**

Report these sentences. Sometimes two answers are possible.

Examples:
- ‘I’m tired,’ he said.
  He said (that) he was tired.
- ‘Did you enjoy the film?’ I asked her.
  / asked her if she had enjoyed the film. /
  I asked her if she enjoyed the film.
  * Switch off the TV,* she told me.
  She told me to switch off the TV.
- Can you lend me some money? he asked me.
  He asked me if I could lend him some money. / He asked me to lend him some money.

1 ‘I can’t type,’ I told them.
2 ‘Are you English?’ they asked me.
3 ‘Where are you going?’ I asked her.
4 ‘We’re going into town,’ they said.
5 ‘I haven’t got any money,’ he told me.
6 ‘Could you speak more slowly?’ he asked her.
7 ‘Don’t touch the wire,’ he warned me.
8 ‘I was on holiday in July,’ he told her.
9 ‘What time did you get home?’ they asked him.
10 ‘Can you do me a favour?’ she asked me.
11 ‘We won’t be home late,’ we told them.
12 ‘I’ve posted the letters,’ I said.
13 ‘My sister doesn’t know,’ he said.
14 ‘My parents had gone to bed,’ she said.
15 ‘You should go to the doctor,’ she told him.
16 ‘We’ll do the dishes,’ they promised.
17 ‘Where do you work?’ I asked her.
18 ‘Can you phone the doctor for me?’ she asked him.
19 ‘I passed my driving test in 1986,’ he told his boss.
20 ‘I don’t know what to do,’ I said.

81 -ing form: participle or gerund
(-ing форма: причастие или герундий)

Слова, заканчивающиеся на -ing, например playing, walking, worrying, употребляются для образования формы continuous.

‘Where’s Sally?’ ‘She’s playing tennis.’

When I was walking along Western Road, I saw Maria.

He’s been worrying a lot recently.

Слово, образованное с помощью -ing формы, называется ‘present participle’ ('причастие настоящего времени').

Present participles также употребляются как прилагательные (см. 99).

It’s a worrying problem.

Participle может употребляться для введения причастного придаточного предложения (см. 100).

I hurt my leg playing tennis.
Who is that girl walking towards us?

С помощью -ing формы также образуются существительные.

Playing tennis isn’t expensive in England.
I enjoy walking in the countryside.

Существительное, образованное с помощью -ing формы, называется ‘gerund’ (герундий).
(Относительно -ing формы, употребляемой таким образом, см. 82–83, 87–90, 92–94, 98.)

Когда к глаголу присоединяется -ing, иногда происходят изменения в написании, например, swim → swimming (см. 188.3–6).
§2 Verb + -ing form or infinitive: introduction
(Глагол + -ing форма или инфинитив: введение)

1 Довольно часто в предложении один глагол следует за другим.
   / enjoy running. I hope to run in the marathon next month.
   После некоторых глаголов, например enjoy, второй глагол принимает -ing форму, например, running (см. 83). После других глаголов, например hope, второй глагол - to infinitive, например, to run (см. 84).

2 После некоторых глаголов, например start, может употребляться -ing форма или to infinitive, без особых различий в значении (см. 87).
   Look. It's started raining/to rain again.
   Но после некоторых других глаголов, например stop, может употребляться -ing форма или to infinitive с большой разницей в значении (см. 88).
   I'm a vegetarian. I stopped eating meat 5 years ago. [Я прекратил есть мясо 5 лет назад.]
   After I'd been working for 3 hours, I stopped to eat lunch. [... я прекратил работу, чтобы пообедать.]

3 После таких модальных глаголов, как can, must, should, и некоторых других глаголов употребляется infinitive без to, например, play, eat (см. 91).
   / can play the guitar.
   You must eat something.

S3 Verb + -ing form (Глагол + -ing форма)

1 Если после этих глаголов следует другой глагол, то он обычно принимает -ing форму.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>admit</th>
<th>enjoy</th>
<th>imagine</th>
<th>practise</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>avoid</td>
<td>fancy</td>
<td>involve</td>
<td>put off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>consider</td>
<td>feel like</td>
<td>keep on</td>
<td>risk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>delay</td>
<td>finish</td>
<td>mind</td>
<td>stand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deny</td>
<td>give up</td>
<td>miss</td>
<td>suggest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dislike</td>
<td>can't help</td>
<td>postpone</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

He admitted breaking the window.
I enjoy getting up early in the summer.
Have you finished doing your homework?
They suggested meeting at two o'clock.

Обратите внимание на отрицание: not + -ing form.
He admitted not paying for the ticket.
После mind можно также употреблять придаточное предложение с if, например: Would you mind if I closed the window?

После некоторых вышеперечисленных глаголов может также употребляться придаточное предложение с that.

He admitted (that) he’d broken the window.
They suggested (that) we met at two o’clock.

2 Do + the/some и т.д. + -ing форма употребляется для указания, например, рода занятий.

You do the cooking. I’ll do the washing up.
We’re going to do some shopping this afternoon.

(Обратите внимание, что -ing форма здесь употребляется как существительное и, как любое другое существительное, может употребляться с the, some и т.д.)

3 Go и come может употребляться с -ing формой, в частности, для выражения занятий спортом или времяпрепровождения.

I’d like to go swimming tomorrow.

EXERCISE 83A

Complete the sentences using the -ing form of the verbs in the box.

do have listen play be read go
not make borrow swim rob

Example:
I enjoy listening to the radio in the mornings.

1 I’ll lend you the book when I’ve finished _____ it.
2 Do you ever go _____ in the sea?
3 They suggested _____ dinner in an Indian restaurant.
4 Robert gave up _____ football years ago.
5 The men admitted _____ the bank.

6 I really don’t mind _____ the housework.
7 I didn’t feel like _____ out last night, so I stayed at home.
8 Would you mind _____ so much noise? I’m trying to study.
9 I normally try to avoid _____ money.
10 Since she moved from London, she misses _____ able to see all her friends there.

Note
– После некоторых других глаголов может употребляться -ing форма или to infinitive, часто с различием в значении. См. 87–88.
84 Verb + to infinitive
(Глагол + to инфинитив)

Если после этих глаголов следует другой глагол, то он обычно употребляется как to infinitive.

| afford | fail | pretend |
| agree | help | promise |
| appear | hope | refuse |
| arrange | learn (how) | seem |
| ask | manage | threaten |
| attempt | mean [намереваться] | want |
| decide | offer | wish |
| expect | prepare |

/ can\'t afford to go on holiday this summer.  
The policeman asked to see my driving licence.  
She decided to stay at home last night.  
My brother expects to find a job soon.  
He\'s going to learn to drive.

Обратите внимание на отрицание: not to + infinitive.

You promised not to tell anyone.   
She seemed not to notice me.

После help может употребляться infinitive с или без to.

I\'ll help (to) carry your bags.

Обратите внимание также, что после can\'t help (= \'не могу не\') употребляется -ing форма, например: / can\'t help thinking we\'ve made a mistake.

После некоторых вышеперечисленных глаголов может также употребляться придаточное предложение с that.

She decided (that) she would stay at home last night.  
My brother expects (that) he\'ll find a job soon.

После некоторых вышеперечисленных глаголов может употребляться object + to infinitive, например: He asked me to help him. См. 86.
EXERCISE 84A

Robert is talking about the day he bought a second-hand car.

Complete Robert’s story using the to infinitive form of the verbs in the boxes.

buy  be  not like  have  test-drive

‘When I got to the garage, I managed to have a quick look at the car before the salesman came out of his office. It seemed in very good condition and was worth about £1000, although the garage was asking £1400 for it. When the salesman came out, I arranged the car straight away. The salesman and I got in and we drove off. I liked the car immediately and I decided that I wanted it, but, of course, I didn’t say this to the salesman. Instead, I pretended the car very much.’

try  get  accept  pay

‘When we had finished the test-drive and had pulled up outside the garage, I told the salesman that I couldn't afford more than £750. The salesman, of course, refused such a miserable little offer. He told me that he expected at least £1200 for the car. I tried offering £800, £850, £875, but he wouldn’t change his mind. Then I decided something different.’

give  be  sell  accept

‘I thanked the salesman politely, said goodbye, got out of the car and started to walk away. It worked! The salesman got out of the car too and hurried after me. He told me that he wanted fair and was prepared a reasonable offer for the car. In the end, he agreed it to me for £1000. He even agreed me £200 for my old car!’

Note

— После некоторых других глаголов может употребляться -ing форма или to infinitive, часто с различием в значении. См. 97.
- To infinitive также употребляется в таких конструкциях: ought to, например: You ought to stop smoking, (CM. 42.1); have (got) to, например: I have to be home by 10 o’clock, (CM. 38.2), and used to, например: /used to smoke, but I stopped 10 years ago. (CM. 51).
- To infinitive также употребляется после глаголов в страдательном залоге, например: She is believed to be living in Brazil. CM. 64.
- Иногда, чтобы избежать повторения, после to глагол опускается, если значение очевидно, например: /didn’t go to the party because I didn’t want to. (= because I didn’t want to go to the party).
85 Verb + question word + to infinitive
(Глагол + слово-вопрос + to инфинитив)

1. После некоторых глаголов может употребляться question word, например, what, how, where (но не why) + to infinitive.

verb + question word + to infinitive

/ don't know what to say.
Do you know how to play chess?
We can't decide what to buy Sue for her birthday.
I'll explain what to do later on.

2. Эта конструкция часто употребляется с object + question word + to infinitive.

verb + object + question word + to infinitive

I'll show you how to play chess.
Somebody told me where to buy a ticket.

EXERCISE 85A
Complete the sentences using the most suitable words in the box.

what | do how | make what | wear
how | get whether | stay how | spell

Example:
'Could you tell me how to get to Western Road, please?' 'Yes. Go down this road and it's second on the left.'

1 'Have you decided____ to the interview?' 'Yes. I'm going to wear my new blue suit.'
2 Could you tell me____ your name please?
3 'What are you going to do this evening?' 'I can't decide____ at home or go out.'
4 Do you know_____ a Spanish omelette?
5 I felt very embarrassed when she started shouting. I didn't know____, so I just stood there.
86 Verb + object + to infinitive
(Глагол + дополнение + to инфинитив)

1 Послед приведенных ниже глаголов обычно употребляется object (eg Sue, me, you) перед to
infinitive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>force</th>
<th>order</th>
<th>teach (how)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>get [убеждать]</td>
<td>persuade</td>
<td>tell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>invite</td>
<td>remind</td>
<td>warn</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

verb + object + to infinitive

We invited Sue to have dinner with us.
She persuaded me to go to the party.
He warned you not to be late again.

Обратите внимание, что после этих глаголов в страдательном залоге может
употребляться to infinitive без дополнения, например: Sue was invited to have dinner with
us.

2 Object + to infinitive может также употребляться после этих глаголов:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ask</th>
<th>help</th>
<th>want</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>expect</td>
<td>mean [намереваться]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

He asked me to help him.
I didn’t expect Maria to write to me.
I don’t want you to go.

После help может употребляться object + infinitive с или без to.

I’ll help you (to) carry your bags.

После этих глаголов может также употребляться to infinitive без дополнения,
например: I expect to see Simon tomorrow. См. 84.

Обратите внимание, что после want нельзя употреблять придаточное предложение с that.
For example, we cannot say / don’t want that you go.

3 После глаголов advise, allow, encourage, permit и recommend может употребляться -ing
форма или object + to infinitive. Compare:

verb + -ing form  verb + object + to infinitive

/ wouldn’t advise going there. I wouldn’t advise you to go there.
They don’t allow fishing here. They don’t allow people to fish here.

136
EXERCISE 86A
Complete the sentences.
Example:
I couldn't do the job on my own, so I asked Simon to help me.

1 I was surprised that my brother failed his driving test. I expect him to pass easily.
2 Annie wanted to stay up late, but her parents told her to go to bed at 9 o'clock.
3 Simon phoned Sarah yesterday. He invited her to go to a party on Saturday.
4 I was going to buy the car, but a friend of mine persuaded me to change my mind.
5 Don't tell Sue what I've done. I don't want her to know.
6 One of the plane's engines caught fire, which forced the pilot to land.
7 When I was a child, my mother warned me not to talk to strangers.
8 If you hadn't reminded me to lock the door, I would have forgotten.

EXERCISE 86B
What did they say? Complete the sentences using an object + to infinitive ...

Examples:
‘Remember to phone Chris,’ Sue told Peter. Sue reminded Peter to phone Chris.
‘Can you lend me some money?’ I asked him. I asked him to lend me some money.

1 ‘Close the door,’ Ken told Andrew. Ken told ______
2 ‘Can you help me?’ I asked her. I asked ______
3 ‘Would you like to go to a party?’ they asked us. They invited ______
4 ‘Please don’t be late home,’ Kate said to Sally. Kate asked ______
5 ‘Get out of your car,’ the policeman told the woman. The policeman ordered ______
6 ‘Don’t be late for work again,’ my boss told me. My boss warned ______.

EXERCISE 86C
Put the verbs into the correct form: the -ing form or the to infinitive.

Example:
She doesn't allow anyone to drive (drive) her car.

1 They don’t allow ______ (talk) in the examination.
2 He’s always encouraged me ______ (have) confidence in myself.
3 I’d recommend you ______ (see) the film. It's very good.
4 I wouldn't recommend ______ (drive) through the city centre now. The traffic is terrible at this time of the day.
5 What would you advise me ______ (do)?
6 I wouldn't advise ______ (tell) anyone what’s happened.
87 Verb + *ing* form or *to* infinitive
(Глагол + *ing* форма или *to* инфинитив) (1)

1 После приведенных ниже глаголов может употребляться -*ing* форма или *to* infinitive, обычно без существенных различий в значении.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>begin</th>
<th>can’t bear</th>
<th>like</th>
<th>prefer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>continue</td>
<td>hate</td>
<td>love</td>
<td>start</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*He began looking/to look* for a job 6 months ago.
*I like swimming/to swim in the sea.*
*She prefers working/to work at night.*

But see 2–4 below.

2 *Like*

a В британском варианте английского языка часто употребляется *like* + -*ing* форма для выражения того, что ‘нравится’.

/ like going to the cinema. [Мне нравится ходить в кино.]

*Like* + *to* infinitive употребляется для выражения того, что выбрано для выполнения, поскольку это считается хорошим решением.

/ like to go to the dentist’s for a check-up every 6 months. (= я считаю, что это нужно делать, хотя мне это может и не нравится.)

b После *would like*, *would love*, *would hate* и *would prefer* употребляется *to* infinitive.

‘*Would* you like to go out this evening?’  ‘I’d prefer to stay at home.
‘*We’d* love to see you at the weekend.’

c Compare *like* and *would like:*

*Do you like cooking?* (= Вам нравится готовить вообще?)
*Would you like to cook the dinner this evening?* (= Вы хотите приготовить ужин сегодня вечером?)

3 *Prefer*

Обратите внимание на эти конструкции:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>prefer + -<em>ing</em> form + <em>to</em> + -<em>ing</em> form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

*I prefer playing football to watching it.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>would prefer + <em>to</em> infinitive + <em>rather than</em> + infinitive without <em>to</em></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

*I would prefer to drive home tonight rather than wait until tomorrow.*
**4** Begin, start, continue

a Обычно -ing форма не употребляется после форм continuous begin, start, continue (чтобы избежать дублирования -ing форм).

*I’m beginning to feel cold.* (Not normally: *I’m beginning feeling cold.*)

b После begin, continue и start обычно употребляются глаголы understand, know и realize как to infinitive, а не -ing форма.

/ began to realise. (Not normally: / began realising.)

---

**EXERCISE 87A**

Put the verbs into the correct form. Sometimes two answers are possible.

Examples:

I quite enjoy driving (drive) at night.
Do you like getting up/to get up (get up) early?

1 Would you like ___(listen) to some music?
2 Simon and Sally have started ___(cook) the dinner.
3 I prefer ___(windsurf) to ___(sail).
4 I’d prefer ___(walk) home rather than ___(go) by taxi.

5 My sister loves ___(go) shopping.
6 I’d love ___(visit) Australia one day.
7 My brother hates ___(have to) work at weekends.
8 Do you like ___(play) chess?
9 I try to look after my car. I like ___(take) it to the garage to be serviced regularly.
10 Shh! The orchestra is starting ___(play)?

---

**88 Verb + ing form or to infinitive**

(Глагол + ing форма или to инфинитив) (2)

После приводимых ниже глаголов может употребляться -ing форма или to infinitive с различным значением.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>remember</th>
<th>forget</th>
<th>try</th>
<th>stop</th>
<th>go</th>
<th>on</th>
<th>regret</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1 **Remember/forget doing and remember/forget to do**

*Remember/forget + -ing форма употребляется в том случае, когда мы помним или забыли что-то после того, как мы это сделали.*

**ACTION** + REMEMBER

*I remember going to the 1972 Olympics.*
(Я ездил туда и сейчас это помню.)

*Have you forgotten giving me the money?*
(Вы дали мне деньги.)

*Remember/forget + to infinitive употребляется в том случае, когда мы вспоминаем или забываем что-то до того, как мы должны это сделать.*

**REMEMBER** + ACTION

*Here’s your medicine.*
(Я вспомнил, а затем туда пошел.)

*Don’t forget to give me the money.*

---

139
**EXERCISE 88A**

Put the verbs in brackets into the -ing form or to the to infinitive.

**Example:**

‘I introduced you to Sue last month.’ ‘Really? I don’t remember meeting (meet) her.’

1 ‘You said Ken was stupid.’ ‘I don’t remember (say) that.’
2 I’ll never forget (visit) Istanbul in 1983.
3 When I go shopping I must remember (buy) some bread.
4 Please remember (turn off) the radio before you go out.
EXERCISE 88B

Put the verbs in brackets into the -ing form or the to infinitive.

Example:

‘I need to borrow some money.’ ‘Why don’t you try asking (ask) your parents to lend you some?’

1 I’ll try____(come) to the meeting, but I’m not sure if I’ll be able to.
2 If you get hiccups, you should try____ (drink) a glass of water. If that doesn’t work, try____(hold) your breath.
3 You can borrow my camera, but please try _____(be) careful with it.
4 ‘This soup doesn’t taste very good.’ ‘Try _____(put) in some more salt.’

EXERCISE 88C

Complete the sentences using the -ing form or the to infinitive of the verbs in the box. Use each verb only once.

Example:

Could you stop working for a moment? I’d like to speak to you.

ask not learn tell work make

1 He went on_____a noise even though I’d asked him to stop.
2 She started by talking about her job. Then she went on_____me about her family.
3 He stopped reading_____me a question.
4 I regret_____to play a musical instrument when I was younger.

89 Be used to + -ing form and used to + infinitive

(Be used to + -ing форма и used to + инфинитив)

1 Compare:

Be used to + -ing форма употребляется в значении ‘привыкать’.

I’m used to driving my new car now, but I found it very strange at first. (= Сейчас я уже привык к вождению автомобиля, в этом для меня нет ничего удивительного.)

Used to + infinitive употребляется для выражения привычных действий в прошлом, которые к данному моменту уже завершены.

I used to drive a Mercedes, but now I drive a Citroen. (= Я водил Мерседес в прошлом постоянно, но не вожу его сейчас.)

2 Get (= become) used to + -ing форма также может употребляться, например: I’ve got used to driving my new car.

3 После be/get used to можно также употреблять номинативное словосочетание, например: English food, my new computer.

He isn’t used to English food.
I haven’t got used to my new computer yet.
EXERCISE 89A

Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form: to + -ing form or to + infinitive.

Example:
When I was younger, I used to play (play) a lot of football. Now I never play.

1 It won't take you long to get used (work) with your new word processor.
2 My parents used (live) in London, but now they live in Bristol.
3 Bruno is Italian, but he has lived in London for over 5 years. He has got used (eat) English food now, but when he first arrived in England he didn't like it very much.
4 Mike found Africa strange at first. He wasn't used (live) in such a hot climate.
5 I normally go to bed at about 10 o'clock. I'm not used (stay) up late.
6 I used (work) on a farm once and had to get up at 5 o'clock every morning. It was difficult at first because I wasn't used (get up) so early.

Note
- Относительно used to см. также 51.

90 Need + -ing form or to infinitive (Need + -ing форма или to инфинитив)

1 После смыслового глагола need может употребляться to infinitive.
   *I'm tired. I need to get some sleep.*
   *We've got plenty of time. We don't need to hurry.*

2 После смыслового глагола need может употребляться -ing форма в страдательном залоге.
   *My car needs servicing.*
   *These trousers need cleaning.*

   После need может также употребляться to be + past participle в том же значении страдательного залога.
   *My car needs to be serviced.*
   *These trousers need to be cleaned.*

EXERCISE 90A

Complete each sentence using the correct form of the most suitable verb in the box. Sometimes two forms are possible.

Examples:
There is a hole in my sock. It needs mending/to be mended.
Tomorrow is a holiday, so I don't need to get up early in the morning.

```
buy adjust get up ask
renew practise feed mend
```

1 Your passport is out of date. It needs _____
2 You need _____ the piano every day if you want to improve.
3 The brakes on my car aren't working very well. I think they need _____.
4 The cat is hungry. It needs _____
5 We've got plenty of milk. We don't need _____ any more.
6 I went to see her because I needed _____ her some questions.

91 Infinitive without to (Инфинитив без to)

1 Infinitive без to употребляется после модальных глаголов, например, can, must, should (см. 35).
   / can speak Italian.
   We must go now.

Исключение: после модального глагола ought употребляется to infinitive, например: You ought to be careful.

2 Infinitive без to употребляется после let's (= let us) и why don't we/you... ?, когда необходимо сделать предложение (см. 30, 50.2).
   'What shall we do this afternoon?' 'Let's go to the cinema.'
   Why don't we have a party next Saturday?
   Why don't you apply for the job?

Infinitive без to также употребляется после would rather (см. 57.1) и had better (см. 42.2).
   'Would you like to go out this evening?' 'I'd rather stay at home.'
   I think it's going to rain. You'd better take an umbrella with you when you go out.

3 После глаголов let ['разрешать'] и make ['заставлять, принуждать, побуждать'] употребляется дополнение, например, their children, me, us + infinitive без to.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>let/make</th>
<th>object</th>
<th>infinitive without to</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>They let their children stay up late at weekends. (= разрешили детям дольше не ложиться спать)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Will you let me use your camera? (= разрешите мне воспользоваться)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You can't make us go if we don't want to. (= заставлять нас идти)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The film made me cry. (= побудил меня заплакать)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

EXERCISE 91 A
Complete each sentence using the most suitable verb in the box. Use each verb only once.

Example:
'Would you like a cup of tea?' 'I'd rather have coffee.'

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>eat</th>
<th>hurry</th>
<th>tell</th>
<th>type</th>
<th>wear</th>
<th>lend</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sit</td>
<td>promise</td>
<td>cry</td>
<td>wait</td>
<td>use</td>
<td>have</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 It's very cold today. You'd better_____ a coat when you go out.
2 'I haven't got any money.' 'Let me_____ you some'.
3 Chopping onions makes me_____.
4 'I'm tired of walking.' 'Let's_____ down for a while, then.'
5 I can't_____ you what Sally said. She made me_____ that I wouldn't tell anyone.
6 'Why don't we_____ dinner now?' 'I think I'd rather_____ until later.'
7 It's getting late. We’d better_____
8 I couldn't_____ the letter because my brother wouldn't let me_____ his typewriter.
EXERCISE 91B

Sally is speaking about her boyfriend, Peter.

Complete what Sally says using the correct form of make or let and the verbs in the box.

have understand laugh feel go

‘Peter’s very funny. He makes me laugh a lot. We usually get on very well together, but sometimes I get really angry with him because he’s so jealous and won’t 1 me out on my own. He 2 me jealous, too, when he talks about his ex-girlfriends! But I always 3 him his own friends and never ask him who he is going out with. I’ve talked to him about this, but I can’t 4 him that his attitude is unfair.’

Note

— После таких глаголов, как see, hear, feel, можно употреблять object + infinitive без to или -ing форму. См. 97.

— При объединении двух конструкций to infinitive употребляется or или and. Часто второй infinitive употребляется без to, например: I'd like to go and see that film.

92 Preposition + -ing form (Предлог + -ing форма)

1 Когда глагол следует после предлога (eg in, of, about, before, after), к нему всегда присоединяется -ing форма.

Are you interested in playing tennis tomorrow?
I’m thinking of changing my job.
How about going to the cinema this evening?

2 To

Иногда to является частью формы инфинитива.

We’ve decided to go on holiday next month.
Would you like to eat now or later?

Иногда to является предлогом.

She’s travelling to Greece tomorrow.
We’re looking forward to the party.
Carlos isn’t used to English food.

Если после to можно поставить существительное - это предлог. Если to является предлогом, после него употребляется -ing форма глаголов.

I’m looking forward to going to the party.
Carlos isn’t used to eating English food.
EXERCISE 92A

Complete the sentences. Use a preposition from the box and the -ing form of the verbs in brackets. Use some prepositions more than once.

for at about in to of after

Example:

‘What shall we do this evening?’ ‘How about going (go) to the cinema?’

1 There is a good film on TV tonight. I'm really looking forward (see) it.
2 Are you interested (learn) to play the guitar?
3 (have) breakfast, I did the washing up.
4 I'm not used (eat) such spicy food.
5 Did she apologize (be) late?
6 I'm tired (hear) her complain.
7 We thanked her (give) us a lift in her car.
8 She's very good (paint) and (draw).

93 Person + -ing form (Лицо + -ing форма)

1 В неформальном английском языке обычно употребляется объектная форма, например, me, you, Simon + -ing форма.

Do you mind me asking you a question?
They were angry about Simon arriving late.

2 В официальном английском языке употребляется притяжательный падеж, например, my, your, Simon's + -ing форма.

Do you mind my asking you a question?
They were angry about Simon's arriving late.

После таких глаголов, как see, hear и feel, обычно употребляется объектная форма (а не притяжательный падеж) + -ing (см. 97).

You saw me arriving. (Not: You saw my arriving.)

EXERCISE 93A

Complete the sentences using (i) the object form + -ing form, and (ii) the possessive + -ing form.

Example:

Do you mind (I | open) the window?
(i) Do you mind me opening the window?  (ii) Do you mind my opening the window?

1 I don't mind (you | borrow) my car.
2 Do you mind (I | switch on) the TV?
3 They insisted on (we | stay) for dinner with them.
4 How do you feel about (they | get) married?
5 Annie’s parents don’t like (she | go) to bed late.
6 I was surprised about (Sue | forget) to come to the meeting.
**94 -ing form and to infinitive as subjects**

(-ing форма и to инфинитив как подлежащее)

1. В качестве подлежащего может употребляться глагол с -ing формой.

   *Smoking is a terrible habit.*
   *Knowing how to drive is useful.*
   *Playing tennis in England isn't expensive.*

2. В качестве подлежащего может также выступать to infinitive, (eg *To know how to drive is useful*), но это не распространено. Когда в качестве подлежащего употребляется to infinitive, то более обычно с него начинать предложение (как 'предваряющее подлежащее').

   *It is useful to know how to drive.*
   *It isn't expensive to play tennis in England.*

**EXERCISE 94A**

What does *it* mean in each of these sentences? Use the -ing form of the words in the box in your answers.

Example:

It can be dangerous, especially at midday. *Sunbathing can be dangerous, especially at midday.*

live on your own babysit sunbathe smoke read English swim watch late night horror films

1. It is a big responsibility, especially with very young children.
2. It is a very good way of keeping fit.
3. It can give you nightmares.
4. It is quite difficult if you are used to being with a lot of people.
5. It is much easier than speaking it.
6. It can cause lung cancer.

**EXERCISE 94B**

Join each idea in A with the most suitable idea in B. Make sentences using the to infinitive form, as in the example.

Example:

1. *It is very strange to see yourself on video.*

   **A**
   
   1 It is very strange
   2 It isn't necessary
   3 It can be dangerous
   4 It doesn't have to be expensive
   5 It is difficult for old people

   **B**
   
   eat well
   live on a pension
   see yourself on video
   have your car serviced every month
   leave medicine lying around
95 To infinitive of purpose (To инфинитив цели)

1 To infinitive употребляется для выражения цели - с какой целью что-то совершается.
   I’m going out to do some shopping.
   She’s saving up to buy a motor bike.
   I went to a restaurant to have some lunch.

В более официальном стиле употребляются словосочетания in order to или so as to.
   I went to Paris in order to learn French.
   We left early so as to have plenty of time.

2 В отрицательных предложениях обычно употребляются in order not to или so as not to
   (а не лишь not to).
   We left early so as not to be late. / We left early in order not to be late. (Not: We left early
   not to be late.)

For purpose, see also 163-164.

EXERCISE 95A
Where did you go yesterday, and why did you go to each place?
1 Chemist’s  2 Post Office  3 Cinema
4 Hairdresser’s  5 Car Rental Agency  6 Park
Make sentences using / went to the (place) to ... and the words in the box.

Example:
1 / went to the chemist’s to buy some medicine.

EXERCISE 95B
Join each idea in A with an idea from B. Make sentences using (i) in order (not) to, and
(ii) so as (not) to.

Example:
1(i) He drank lots of black coffee in order to keep awake.
   (ii) He drank lots of black coffee so as to keep awake.

A
1 He drank lots of black coffees
2 I often write things down
3 She took an umbrella
4 We’ll use the computer
5 I want to pass the exams
6 We turned down the music

B
disturb the neighbours
save time
get a better job
forget them
keep awake
get wet
hire
buy
have
play
post
see

a haircut
tennis
a film
some letters
a car
some medicine
96 Нoun/pronoun/adjective + to infinitive
(Существительное/местоимение/прилагательное + to инфинитив)

1 Noun/pronoun + to infinitive

*To infinitive* может употребляться после некоторых существительных и прилагательных
(часто указывается на то, что с ними делается).

*I've got some letters to write.*
*We need some scissors to cut the paper.*
*Would you like something to read?*

Эту конструкцию можно употреблять с adjective + noun + to infinitive.

*That's an impossible question to answer.*

2 Adjective + to infinitive

a После ряда прилагательных можно употреблять *to infinitive*.

*I'm very pleased to see you.*
*I was disappointed to hear that you didn't pass the exam.*
*He'll be surprised to get your letter.*
*It isn't easy to learn a foreign language,*

b Конструкцию *of (someone) + to infinitive* можно употреблять после следующих
прилагательных:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>nice</th>
<th>kind</th>
<th>generous</th>
<th>polite</th>
<th>good</th>
<th>mean</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>silly</td>
<td>careless</td>
<td>clever</td>
<td>wrong</td>
<td>stupid</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*It's kind of you to help.*
*It was stupid of me to say that.*

c Конструкцию *for + object + to infinitive* можно употреблять после следующих
прилагательных:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>easy</th>
<th>important</th>
<th>essential</th>
<th>(un) usual</th>
<th>(un) necessary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>common</td>
<td>normal</td>
<td>rare</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*It won't be easy for us to get tickets for the concert now.*
*It's important for everyone to be here on time.*

Эту конструкцию можно употреблять после некоторых существительных и глаголов.

*It was a mistake for me to come here.*
*I'm waiting for my sister to phone me.*
EXERCISE 96A

Complete the sentences using the to infinitive form of the verbs in the box.

Example:
Are you hungry? Would you like something to eat?

say unlock catch wear eat write tell

1 Have you got a key_____ this door?
2 Can we meet today? I’ve got something important_____ you.
3 I’m staying at home this evening. I’ve got some letters_____.
4 ‘Why are you so quiet?’ ‘I haven’t got anything_____.’
5 I need some new clothes_____ to the party.
6 I really must go now. I’ve got a train_____.

EXERCISE 96B

Complete the sentences using the correct form of the words in the box.

Example:
Goodbye. It was very nice to meet you.

impossible | finish please | hear safe | go
nice | meet easy | use interesting | plan

1 My new video recorder looks complicated, but it’s actually very_____.
2 That is a very dangerous part of the city. It isn’t____ out there at night.
3 I was_____ that you had passed your exam.
4 I don’t like package holidays. I think it’s much more_____ your own holiday.
5 It’s_____ all that work today. There just isn’t enough time.

EXERCISE 96C

Make sentences beginning with the words in brackets, as in the examples.

Examples:
You lent me the money. (It was kind)
It was kind of you to lend me the money.
I forgot my keys. (It was stupid)
It was stupid of me to forget my keys.

1 She sent me a birthday card. (It was nice)
2 He opened your letter. (It was wrong)
3 You found the answer. (It was clever)
4 I left my wallet at home. (It was careless)
5 He threw the ticket away. (It was silly)
6 You did my shopping for me. (It was good)

EXERCISE 96D

Rephrase the sentences. Use the words in brackets + for + object + to infinitive, as in the examples.

Examples:
You needn’t explain. (It isn’t necessary)
It isn’t necessary for you to explain.
She isn’t normally late for work. (It’s unusual)
It’s unusual for her to be late for work.

1 You needn’t pay me back the money. (It’s unnecessary)
2 We must leave immediately. (It’s essential)
3 Everyone should try to keep calm. (It’s important)
4 He doesn’t normally complain. (It’s unusual)

Note

– Относительно употребления to infinitive c too (например, It’s too early (for me) to go to bed) и enough (например, Is he old enough to drive a car?), CM. 138.4–5.
97 See someone doing and see someone do, etc

После глаголов see, hear, feel, watch, listen to и notice можно употреблять object + ... -ing или infinitive без to.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{verb + object + ... -ing} & \quad \text{verb + object + infinitive without to}
\end{align*}
\]

We saw Peter leaving.  
I heard them going out.  

Часто существует различие в значении. Compare:

Глагол с -ing формой употребляется тогда, когда мы видим [see], слышим [hear] и т.д. лишь часть происходящего действия.  
As I drove past the park, I saw some people playing football. (= Они продолжали играть.)  

Infinitive без to употребляется, когда мы видим [see], слышим [hear] и т.д. все действие от начала до конца.  
Last week, I went to London and saw England play Brazil in the big football match. (= Я смотрел всю игру.)  

EXERCISE 97A

Put the verbs in brackets into the -ing form or the infinitive without to.

Example:

I saw Sue drop (drop) the bag and pick it up again.

1 As I walked past the room, I heard two people ___ (argue).
2 We stopped for a moment and watched them ___ (build) the new hospital.
3 Did you see someone ___ (break) the window?
4 We watched them ___ (climb) up to the top of the hill and then come down again.
5 We saw the man ___ (post) a letter and walk down the street.
6 As I looked out of the window I noticed the woman ___ (repair) her car.

98 Review of -ing form and infinitive (Обзор -ing формы и инфинитива)

EXERCISE 98A

Complete the sentences using the verbs in brackets in the -ing form, the to infinitive, or the infinitive without to. Sometimes two answers are possible.

Examples:

You really should try (try) to stop smoking (smoke).

1 I hate ___ (work) at weekends.
2 Would you like ___ (come) to a disco this evening?
3 Can I help you ___ (move) your things?
4 I had hoped ___ (see) the musical Rainbow, but I couldn't ___ (get) any tickets.
5 Stop ___ (make) so much noise. People are trying ___ (sleep).
6 Would you like something_____(drink) ?
7 You should_____(try) to avoid_____(drive) through the city centre at the rush hour.
8 I want a few days_____(think) about their offer before_____(make) a decision.
9 What time do you need_____(leave)_____(catch) your bus?
10 It’s unusual for him_____(be) ill.
11 It was horrible to work as an au pair. My family expected me_____(work) seven days a week.
12 Do you prefer_____(ski) to_____(ice-skate) ?
13 I’m very fond of_____(walk) by the sea.
14 I rang the doorbell, but no one seemed_____(be) at home.
15 It was good of you_____(explain) everything to me.
16 I’d advise you_____(not | walk) alone in that part of the city. It can be very dangerous there at night.
17 I remember_____.(meet) her once, but I can’t remember her name.
18 I’d like_____(make) a copy of a letter. Could you_____(show) me how_____(use) the photocopier? I’ve never used it before.
19 I feel like_____(not | do) anything at all this evening.
20 We’re very much looking forward to_____(see) you next week.
21 I mustn’t_____(forget)_____(phone) the doctor tomorrow morning.
22 The customs officer made me_____(empty) my suitcases.
23_____(eat) too many sweets is bad for your teeth.
24 Sarah has decided_____ (not | go) away on holiday this summer.
25 They stopped_____(work) at one o’clock_____(have) something_____(eat).

EXERCISE 98B

Complete each sentence using the correct form of one of the verbs in the box.
Use each verb only once.

Example:
I phoned my bank manager and I arranged to meet him next Tuesday.

repair open have travel sunbathe
meet fall go lend shop switch off

1 It was very kind of her____you the money.
2 I can’t stand____by Underground.
3 These shoes need_____. They’ve got holes in them.
4 I wouldn’t recommend____in that supermarket. It’s very expensive.
5 Would you mind____the door for me, please?
6 When you leave the room, don’t forget____all the lights.
7 They saw Maria____in the garden as they drove past.
8 Autumn is coming. The leaves are starting____from the trees.
9 I’m tired. I regret____to bed so late last night.
10 I like____my eyes tested regularly.
99 Participle (-ing and -ed) adjectives
(Причастные прилагательные, оканчивающиеся на -ing и -ed)

Сравните прилагательные, оканчивающиеся на -ing и -ed:

- ed

She's annoyed.

Прилагательные, оканчивающиеся на -ed, употребляются для передачи чувств.

I'm interested in photography.

Everyone was excited.

We all feel relaxed.

- ing

The noise is annoying.

Прилагательные, оканчивающиеся на -ing, употребляются для обозначения предметов и лиц, вызывающих эти чувства.

/ think photography is interesting.

It was an exciting tennis match.

We're having a relaxing holiday.

EXERCISE 99A

Choose the correct form.

Example:

I enjoyed the book. It was very interested/interesting.

1 Are you interested/interesting in art?

2 They were shocked/shocking when they heard the news.

3 I thought the story was quite amused/amusing.

4 We were all very worried/worrying when he didn't come home.

5 It was surprised/surprising that she didn't come to the meeting.

6 I usually find football rather bored/boring.

7 Are you frightened/frightening of spiders?

EXERCISE 99B

Complete the sentences. Use adjectives formed by adding -ing or -ed to the words in brackets.

Example:

I don't get embarrassed very easily. (embarrass)

I find it quite ______ to talk in front of a group of people. (embarrass)

2 I think reading newspapers is ______ (depress)

3 I'm ______ in all kinds of sport. (interest)

4 I find walking in the countryside very ______ (relax)

5 I think learning a language is very ______ (interest)

6 I get ______ when people smoke in restaurants. (annoy)

7 I don't normally get ______ when I watch horror films. (frighten)

Are these things true for you?
### 100 Participle (-ing) clauses  
(Причастное придаточное предложение с -ing)

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 1 | Present participle, например sitting, playing, употребляется для введения ‘participle clause’.  
  
  *Simon is the boy sitting in the corner.*  
  *I had an accident driving to work.* |
| 2 | Некоторые participle clauses подобны прилагательным: они больше характеризуют существительные.  
  
  *Simon is the boy sitting in the corner.*  
  *The girl wearing the black dress is Sarah.* |
| 3 | Другие participle clauses подобны наречиям: они могут выражать такие понятия, как время или причину:  
  
  **a** Когда одно действие происходит посредине другого, более длительного действия, -ing clause употребляется для более длительного действия.  
  
  / had an accident driving to work. (= Со мной случилось происшествие, когда я ехал на работу.)  
  
  **b** Когда два действия происходят одновременно, -ing clause можно употреблять для одного из них.  
  
  / walked out of the room smiling to myself. (= Когда я вышел из комнаты, я улыбался сам себе.)  
  
  **c** Когда одно действие произошло ранее другого, having + past participle можно употреблять для выражения первого действия.  
  
  *Having finished breakfast, I went out for a walk. (= Я закончил завтракать, а затем вышел на прогулку.)*  
  
  **d** Также -ing clause употребляется для выражения причины происходящего.  
  
  *Knowing you wanted to go to the concert, I bought a ticket for you. (= Поскольку я знал, что вы хотите пойти на концерт ...)*  
  
  *Having failed the exam the first time, he decided to take it again. (= Потому что он провалился на экзамене первый раз ...)* |
EXERCISE 100A

Identify the people in the picture by saying what each one is doing.
Example:
Doris is the girl reading the book. /The girl reading the book is Doris.

EXERCISE 100B

Peter had a very bad day yesterday. What happened to him?
Complete the sentences using the words in the box as -ing clauses.
Example:
1 He fell off a ladder changing a light bulb.
2 He burnt himself driving to work
3 He ran out of petrol get out of his car
4 He lost his keys do the washing-up
5 He broke a cup change a light bulb
6 He cooked his dinner

EXERCISE 100C

Join the sentences using an -ing clause, as in the example.
Example:
I was sitting in the park. I was writing a letter.
I was sitting in the park writing a letter.
1 The woman was driving along. She was listening to her car radio.
2 I arrived at the examination hall. I was feeling very nervous.
3 He came into the room. He was carrying a suitcase.
4 They were walking down the street. They were holding hands.

EXERCISE 100D

Rephrase the sentences using Having + past participle, as in the example.
Example:
I finished the washing up, then I sat down and watched TV.
Having finished the washing up, I sat down and watched TV.
1 He typed the letters, then he put them all in envelopes.
2 I did all the housework, then I went out for a walk.
3 He got out of bed, then he had a shower.
4 She locked all the doors, then she went to bed.
EXERCISE 100E

Rephrase the sentences using an -ing clause, as in the examples.

Examples:

Because she didn’t want to miss the train, she ran all the way to the station.
Not wanting to miss the train, she ran all the way to the station.
Because I had just eaten, I wasn’t hungry. Having just eaten, I wasn’t hungry.

1 Because she is a little deaf, she wears a hearing-aid.
2 Because I don’t like classical music, I didn’t go to the concert.
3 Because she is rich, she can afford expensive holidays.
4 Because I had finished the book, I decided to take it back to the library.
5 Because they had gone to bed so late the night before, they felt quite tired the next day.

Note
- Обычно подлежащее придаточного предложения с -ing формой одновременно является подлежащим главного предложения, например: Having just eaten, I wasn’t hungry. (= Because I had just eaten, I wasn’t hungry.) Как правило, ошибочным является построение предложений, в которых разные подлежащие. Например, нельзя сказать Running down the street, the envelope fell out of my hand (поскольку из контекста явствует как будто конверт бежал вдоль улицы!)

101 Singular and plural nouns
(Единственное и множественное число существительных) (1)

1 Regular plurals
(Правильные формы образования множественного числа)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR NOUN</th>
<th>PLURAL NOUN</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>book</td>
<td>books</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>day</td>
<td>days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>girl</td>
<td>girls</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>church</td>
<td>churches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dish</td>
<td>dishes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bus</td>
<td>buses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>box</td>
<td>boxes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tomato</td>
<td>tomatoes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>potato</td>
<td>potatoes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hero</td>
<td>heroes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>piano</td>
<td>pianos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>radio</td>
<td>radios</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>baby</td>
<td>babies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>factory</td>
<td>factories</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Copyright © 1998 by superlanguage.com
All rights reserved.
Irregular plurals (Неправильные формы образования множественного числа)

a В некоторых существительных, оканчивающихся на -f/-fe, опускается -f/-fe и прибавляется -ves во множественном числе, например, half, thief, leaf, loaf, self, shelf, wolf, knife, wife, life.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>half</td>
<td>halves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thief</td>
<td>thieves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leaf</td>
<td>leaves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>knife</td>
<td>knives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wife</td>
<td>wives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>life</td>
<td>lives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foot</td>
<td>feet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tooth</td>
<td>teeth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>goose</td>
<td>geese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>man</td>
<td>men</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>woman</td>
<td>women</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mouse</td>
<td>mice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>child</td>
<td>children</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ox</td>
<td>oxen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b Некоторые существительные образуют множественное число путем изменения гласной или гласных.

Множественное число слова mouse - mice.

c Несколько существительных образуют множественное число с помощью -en.

d Некоторые существительные имеют одну и ту же форму единственного и множественного числа.

e Некоторые существительные, заимствованные из греческого и латинского языков, во множественном числе имеют греческие и латинские окончания.

f Обычно формой множественного числа person является people (не persons).

*fish* - обычная форма множественного числа от fish; fishes также возможно, но менее распространено.

Относительно произношения окончания *(e)s* см. 187.1.

**EXERCISE 101A**

Complete the sentences using the plurals of the nouns in brackets.

Example:

1 I like oranges, apples, peaches and **strawberries**. (orange | apple | peach | strawberry).

1 They've got five__, three____ and two______ (child | girl | boy)

2 London has many different ____, ____, ____, and______ (restaurant | theatre | cinema | disco)

3 When he fell over, he broke two of his _____. (tooth)
4 We’ve got enough, but we need some more and (plate | knife | fork)
5 On their tour of Europe, they visited seven in six (country | day)
6 hunt (cat | mouse)
7 Do you know those over there? (person)
8 These are too small for me. They hurt my (shoe | foot)
9 We’ve got some and , but we haven’t got any (egg | tomato | potato)
10 Autumn is coming. The are starting to all from the (leaf | tree)

02 Singular and plural nouns
(Единственное и множественное число существительных) (2)

1 Обычно единственное число существительных употребляется с единственным числом глаголов и местоимений.

‘Where’s the key?’ ‘It’s on the table.’ ‘Where are the keys?’ ‘They’re on the table.’

But see 2-9 below.

2 С групповыми существительными, например family, team, group, crowd, class, company, government, употребляется единственное или множественное число глаголов и местоимений.

a Множественное число глаголов и местоимений употребляется в том случае, когда под группой имеется в виду определенное количество людей.

My family are on holiday.
The government think they can solve the problem.

b Единственное число глаголов и местоимений употребляется, когда под группой имеется в виду безличное целое.

The family is a very important part of society.

3 Существительные people, (the) police и cattle всегда употребляются во множественном числе.

People are strange, aren’t they?
The police in Britain wear blue uniforms.

4 Множественные формы глаголов и местоимений употребляются с a number of или group of.

A number of my friends are planning a holiday together. They hope to go to Greece and Turkey.

For a lot of, see 116.

5 После выражений one of ту/his/her и др. употребляется множественное число существительного и единственное число глагола.

One of my friends is coming to see me.

6 Когда речь идет о величине или количестве, часто употребляется единственное число глагола и местоимения с множественным числом существительного.

Ten thousand pounds is a lot of money.
‘The nearest town is five kilometres from here.’ ‘That isn’t very far.’
103 Составные существительные (Составные существительные)

Составные существительные - это существительные, состоящие из двух и более частей:

- **a toothbrush** (щитка для чистки зубов)
- **a shoe shop** (магазин, где продается обувь)
- **a taxi driver** (лицо, управляющее такси)

Многие составные существительные образованы путем употребления одного существительного (как прилагательного) перед другим существительным. В этом случае первое существительное почти всегда стоит в единственном числе (даже если имеет значение множественного числа).

**EXERCISE 102A**

Choose the correct form. In one sentence either answer is possible.

Example:

There were/was a lot of people at the party.

1 Economics is/are an interesting subject. 2 My trousers have/has got a hole in it/them. 3 Rabies isn't/aren't a very common disease in Britain. 4 My family lives/live in the North of England. 5 The news was/were quite surprising. 6 ‘Is this/Are these your scissors?’ ‘Yes, they are/it is.’ 7 Two weeks isn't/aren't a very long time, is it/are they? 8 My hair is/are quite greasy. It needs/They need washing.
Существует несколько исключений, например, clothes, sports, men, women.

*a* clothes shop *a* sports car *women* doctors

Некоторые составные существительные пишутся, как одно слово, например, toothbrush, другие - через дефис (-), например, tin-opener, третьи - как отдельные слова, например, shoe shop.

Некоторые составные существительные можно писать, как одно слово, или через дефис, или как два слова, например, babysitter, baby-sitter, baby sitter (на этот счет не существует определенных правил).

Некоторые составные существительные образуются с помощью -ing формы + noun или adjective + noun.

*a* shopping bag *a* waiting room *drinking* water *a* greenhouse (= теплица)

Обычно множественное число составных существительных образуется путем добавления -(e)s* к второму слову.

*a* shoe shop *shoe* shops
*a* toothbrush *two* toothbrushes

Но обратите внимание, что составные существительные, оканчивающиеся на -in-law, принимают -s в первом слове.

*one* brother-in-law *two* brothers-in-law
*my* mother-in-law *some* mothers-in-law

Некоторые другие составные существительные также присоединяют -s к первому слову, например, passer-by [прохожий].

*a* passer-by *some* passers-by

EXERCISE ЮЗА

Make compound nouns from the words in the box to describe the objects in the pictures.

Examples:

1 alarm clock 2 T-shirts 3 crossroads

![Image of objects with labels: screw, mower, hole, suit, alarm, roads, cork, hangers, bottle, driver, cross, shirts, track, lawn, clock, opener, punch, screw, hangers, tracks, lawn, clock, opener, screw, mowers, paths, roads, cross, bottle, shirt, hanger, cross, lawn, clock, opener, screw]
### 104 Possessive ’s (genitive)
(Притяжательный (родительный) падеж с окончанием ’s)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Use</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sally's motorbike</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**a** Possessive ’sc именами собственными (например: Sally, Andrew) указывает на отношение между лицом и чем-то или кем-то еще.

- Sally’s motorbike (мотоцикл, принадлежащий Сэлли)
- Andrew’s bedroom (кровать, на которой спит Эндрю)
- my sister’s school (школа, в которую ходит моя сестра)

Possessive ’супотребляется с личными неопределенными местоимениями, например, someone, nobody.

- someone’s passport
- nobody’s problem

**b** Possessive ’s может употребляться с названиями животных.

- a dog’s life
- the cat’s milk

**c** Possessive ’s может употребляться с существительным, обозначающим группу людей, или с местом, где живут, работают люди и т.д.

- the company’s office
- the club’s rules
- the world’s problems
- London’s traffic

**d** Possessive ’s может также употребляться в некоторых выражениях времени.

- yesterday’s newspaper
- last week’s football match
- next year’s plans

Possessive ’sупотребляется с периодами времени.

- a week’s holiday
- two days’ work

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Form</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>my father’s car</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sally’s clothes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>my parents’ car</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the ladies’ clothes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the men’s car</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>children’s clothes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| **a** | После существительного в единственном числе ставится ’s. |
| **b** | После существительного во множественном числе, оканчивающегося на -s, ставится только ’. |
| **c** | После существительного во множественном числе, не оканчивающегося на -s, ставится ’s. |
Иногда к существительному в единственном числе с окончанием на -s лишь подставляется '.

*Sherlock Holmes' best friend Archimedes' Law*

Но более употребительным является добавление 's.

*Mrs Jones's husband Chris's idea*

Possessive 'сможет ставиться и к целому словосочетанию.

*Sue and Frank's daughter*

Но в случае с более длинным словосочетанием употребляется ... of ..., например, the daughter of the Australian couple who live next door (see 105).

Possessive 'сможет также употребляться и без последующего существительного (когда очевидно, о ком или о чем идет речь).

*My car is next to Ken's. (= ... рядом с автомобилем Кена.)*

Possessive 'счаст часто употребляется, когда речь идет о магазинах, мастерских, ателье, лавках, кабинете врача и т.д.

*She has just been to the hairdresser's. I went to the doctor's yesterday.*

Относительно произношения окончания 'см. 187.1.

**EXERCISE 104A**

Look at the family tree. Make sentences using the possessive 's and the words in the box.

```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Charles = Daisy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ken = Kate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sally Simon Andrew</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>George = Gloria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chris Linda</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

Examples:

Kate-Ken

*Kate is Ken's wife.*

Simon and Andrew - Sally

*Simon and Andrew are Sally's brothers.*

Gloria-Ken

*Gloria is Ken's sister-in-law.*

1 Gloria - Chris and Linda
2 Linda - Chris
3 George - Chris and Linda
4 Chris - George and Gloria
5 Charles - Ken
6 Daisy - Linda and Chris
7 Kate - Chris and Linda
8 Sally, Simon and Andrew - Chris and Linda
EXERCISE 104B

Complete the sentences using the correct form of the possessive ’s.

Example:
What is your friend’s name?
1 Sarah found somebody _____ credit cards in the street.
2 The Eiffel Tower is Paris ____ most famous landmark.
3 The boy’s _____ bedroom has just been painted.
4 I read about a murder in this morning’s newspaper.
5 Can you borrow your parents’ _____ car at the weekend?
6 I need to get some medicine. Is there a chemist _____ near here?

EXERCISE 105A

Complete the sentences. Use the words in brackets with the possessive ’s or ... of ..., as in the examples.

Examples:
Have you seen Steven Spielberg’s new film? (the new film | Steven Spielberg)
Have you repaired the wheel of the bicycle? (the wheel | the bicycle)
1 We had to leave the cinema early so we didn’t see _____ . (the end | the film)
2 We met Sue and Frank at ______(the party | Sarah)
3 My flat is on ______(the top floor | the house)
4 The bus crashed into ______(the back | my car)
5 We heard the news from ____ (a friend | the woman who works in the post office)
6 There’s a hospital at ______ . (the end I this road)
7 I’ve spoken to ______(the parents | the girls)
8 The police want to interview ______(the manager | the Black Cat Club)
**6 Double possessive (Сдвоенный притяжательный падеж)**

В сдвоенном притяжательном падеже могут употребляться две формы: ... of ... и собственно притяжательный падеж.

- ... of ... + possessive

Sarah is a friend of Simon’s. (= одна из друзей Симона)
A cousin of mine is coming to visit me. (= один из моих двоюродных братьев или сестер)
Sue is having lunch with some colleagues of hers. (= некоторыми из ее коллег)

Обратите внимание что после of может употребляться притяжательное местоимение, например, mine, hers, и т.д., но не личное, например, me, her и т.д.

**EXERCISE 106A**

Make a new sentence using ... of ... + possessive, as in the example.

Example:

1 I met one of my friends in London. I met a friend of mine in London.
2 Robert visited one of his relatives.
3 One of our neighbours is going to babysit for us.
4 Sally is going on holiday with some of her friends.
5 Simon has borrowed some of Sarah's records.
6 Two of my colleagues are ill at the moment.

**.07 Countable and uncountable nouns (Исчисляемые и неисчисляемые существительные)**

1 Существительные могут быть исчисляемыми или неисчисляемыми (countable or uncountable):

   a Исчисляемые существительные - это названия отдельных предметов, людей и т.д.,
   которых можно сосчитать; они имеют форму единственного и множественного числа.

   one book two books a man some men

   Неисчисляемые существительные - это названия предметов или веществ,
   которые представляют как целое и которых нельзя сосчитать;
   они не имеют формы единственного и множественного числа.

   milk rice weather

   b Благодаря исчисляемым существительным могут употребляться глаголы в единственном или множественном числе.

   This book is expensive.
   That man lives next door.
   Milk is good for you.

   These books are expensive.
   Those men live next door.
   The weather was very good yesterday.
Перед исчисляемыми существительными могут употребляться формы артикля а/an и числительные.

**a man**  **one book**  **two books**

Как правило, непосредственно перед неисчисляемыми существительными не употребляются а/an или числительные. Нельзя, например, сказать a weather, two weather и т.д. Но иногда могут употребляться а/an и числительные с такими словами, как например, coffee, tea, beer и т.д., когда в ресторане делается заказ этих напитков в чашке или стакане.

*Excuse me, waiter. Could we have two coffees and a tea, please?*

Артикль а употребляется перед словами, начинающимися с согласных, например a book, a man, и an - перед словами, начинающимися с гласных звуков an apple, an egg (см. 108.1).

Перед исчисляемыми и неисчисляемыми существительными употребляется some (см. 115).

| some books | some rice |
| some men | some milk |

Некоторые существительные могут употребляться как исчисляемые, так и неисчисляемые с разницей в значении. For example:

**COUNTABLE**

| a glass |
| a hair |
| a paper (= a newspaper) |
| an iron |

**UNCOUNTABLE**

| glass  [стекло] |
| her hair  [её волосы] |
| some paper [бумага] |
| iron  [железо] |

| some potatoes |
| some potato |
### 107 Countable and uncountable nouns

Some nouns are countable and some are uncountable in English. Here are some examples of uncountable and countable nouns:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>UNCOUNTABLE</th>
<th>COUNTABLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>accommodation</td>
<td>a place to live/stay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>advice</td>
<td>a piece of advice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bread</td>
<td>a loaf/slice/piece of bread</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>information</td>
<td>a piece of information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>luggage</td>
<td>a piece of luggage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>money</td>
<td>a note/coin; a sum of money</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>news</td>
<td>a piece of news</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>traffic</td>
<td>a car/bus etc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>travel</td>
<td>a journey/trip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>work</td>
<td>a job; a piece of work</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Compare:*

- *I've just had some news.*
- *Where is your luggage?*
- *We need some bread.*

*Compare:*

- *I've just had a piece of news.*
- *Where are your suitcases?*
- *We need a loaf of bread.*

Some nouns can be used in both countable and uncountable forms. For example, a piece of advice can be used in a more formal style, while a bit of advice is used in a more informal style.

**Exercise 107A**

(i) Look at the things in the pictures. Are they countable (C) or uncountable (U) here?

Example:

1. banana C
   - 1 wine
   - 2 bread
   - 3 egg
   - 5 water
   - 6 orange
   - 7 rice
   - 8 carrots
   - 4 tomatoes
   - 9 apples
   - 10 meat

(ii) Make a list of the things in the pictures using *a/an* or *some.*

Examples:

- *Some cheese, a banana...*
EXERCISE 107B
Choose the correct form.
Example:
I'd like some information/informations about hotels in London.

1 Sue is the woman with blonde hair/hairs who lives opposite.
2 Did you have a good travel/journey from Switzerland?
3 I've got a problem and I'd like some advice/adVICES.
4 Don't forget to buy a bread/somebread when you go shopping.
5 I'd like to find out what's on TV this evening. Have you got a paper/some paper?
6 There is/are usually a lot of traffic/traffics in the city at this time of the day.
7 He's trying to find a work/job at the moment, but there isn't/aren't much work/works available.
8 Is/Are good accommodation/accommodations difficult to find in the city centre?

108 Articles: a/an and the
(Артикли: a/an и the)

1 Form and pronunciation
   a Артикль a /ə/ употребляется перед словами, начинающимися с согласного звука.
   
   a book /ə bʊk/
   a car /ə ka: /
   a day /ə deɪ /
   a friend /ə frend /
   a girl /ə ɡɜːl /

   an apple /æn ˈæpl /
   an egg /æn ˈɛɡ /
   an interview /ˈɛnɪntvɪˈjuː /
   an old coat /ˈæn əld ˈkəʊt /
   an umbrella /ˈæn ʌmˈbrelə /

   b Артикль the произносится как /ðe/ перед словами, начинающимися с согласного звука.
   
   the book /ðe bʊk /
   the car /ðe ka: /
   the day /ðe deɪ /

   the apple /ðe ˈæpl /
   the egg /ðe ˈɛɡ /
   the interview /ði ˈɛntvɪˈjuː /

   c Артикли а и the /ðə/ употребляются перед буквой u, когда она произносится как согласный звук /ju/.
   
   a university /ə ˈjuːnɪvɜːsətɪ /
   the university /ðe ˈjuːnɪvɜːsətɪ /

   an hour /æn ˈaʊə(r) /
   the hour /ði ˈaʊə(r) /
2. Use of *a/an*

For countable and uncountable nouns, see 107.

a) Артикль *a/an* употребляется перед исчисляемыми существительными в единственном числе.

*a student*  *a book*  *an idea*

Артикль *a/an* не употребляется перед исчисляемыми существительными во множественном числе. Нельзя, например, сказать *a students* or *an ideas*. Обычно *a/an* не употребляется перед неисчисляемыми существительными. Нельзя, например, сказать *в water* or *a music* (но см. 107.1-2).

Исчисляемые существительные в единственном числе не употребляются самостоятельно, без *a/an*, *the*, *my*, *this* и др.

*I'm a student.* (Not: *I'm student.*)

b) Артикль *a/an* употребляется в том случае, когда слушающий или читающий не знает точно, какое лицо или предмет имеется в виду.

*There is a book on the table.* (Неизвестно, какая книга.)
*He met a girl last night. She works in a bank.* (Неизвестно, какая девушка или какой банк.)

Артикль *a/an* употребляется в том случае, когда о ком-то или о чем-то идет речь.

*I'm an architect*  *He's a vegetarian*  *It was a good film.*

3. Use of *the*

For countable and uncountable nouns, see 107.

a) Артикль *the* употребляется с исчисляемыми существительными в единственном и множественном числе и с неисчисляемыми существительными.

*the man*  *the shoes*  *the water*

Артикль *the* употребляется в том случае, когда слушающий или читающий знает точно, какое лицо или предмет имеется в виду:

- Артикль *the* употребляется в том случае, когда лица или предметы уже упоминались.

/ *met a girl and a boy. I didn’t like the boy much, but the girl was very nice.*
*My father bought a shirt and some shoes. The shoes were quite expensive.*

- Артикль *the* употребляется в том случае, когда по ситуации очевидно, какие лица или предметы имеются в виду.

*Where’s Simon?*  *‘He’s in the bathroom.’* (= ванная в этом доме)
*Are you hot? I’ll open the window.* (= окно в этой комнате)
*got into a taxi. The driver asked me where I wanted to go.* (= водитель такси, в которое я сел)

- Артикль *the* употребляется, когда что-то единично, например, *the sun, the moon, the sky, the earth, the world.*

*I enjoy lying in the sun.*  *Would you like to travel round the world?*
EXERCISE 108A

Put the words in the correct column: A or B.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a and the /ðə/</td>
<td>an and the /ðiː/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clock</td>
<td>orange</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>envelope</td>
<td>university</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

EXERCISE 108B

Add a or an where necessary.

Examples:
I’d like a hamburger, please.
Sarah and Simon are _______ students.

1 There’s _______ post office in West Street.
2 I’ve got _______ envelope, but I haven’t got ______ stamp.
3 We ate _______ cheese and drank _______ wine.
4 Can you see those two men? They’re _______ policemen.
5 Would you like _______ cup of tea?
6 I saw _______ very good film on TV last night.
7 There isn’t _______ garage near here.
8 I’m working as _______ secretary in _______ office in London.
9 Do you always _______ milk?
10 I asked my father for _______ advice about finding _______ job.

EXERCISE 108C

Complete the sentences using a, an or the.

Example:
The Queen of England lives in Buckingham Palace in London.

1 Who’s _______ best footballer in _______ world?
2 My brother works in _______ large garage in Brighton. He’s _______ engineer.
3 Did you enjoy _______ party you went to on Saturday?
4 _______ earth moves round _______ sun.
5 I had _______ cup of coffee and some toast for breakfast this _______ morning—coffee was delicious.
6 Could you switch off _______ TV? Nobody is watching it.
7 ‘What’s _______ capital of India?’ ‘Delhi.’
8 ‘What do you think of Lynne?’ ‘She’s _______ extremely nice person.

109 Talking in general: no article and a/an
(Разговор вообще: отсутствие артикля и a/an)

1 Когда речь идет о чем-то вообще, употребляются существительные во множественном числе или нечислимые существительные без the.

Shoes are expensive. (= обувь вообще)
Milk is good for you. (= молоко вообще)

Когда речь идет о чем-то конкретном, употребляется the.

These are the shoes which I bought last week. (= конкретные туфли, которые я купил на прошлой неделе)
Could you pass the milk, please? (= конкретное молоко на столе)
More examples:

GENERAL (ОБЩЕЕ)  |  PARTICULAR (КОНКРЕТНОЕ)
---|---
/ like horses. | Look at the horses in that field.
He only cares about money. | Where is the money I gave you yesterday?

Не всегда легко можно установить, идет ли речь об общем или конкретном. For example:

GENERAL  |  PARTICULAR
---|---
/ enjoy talking to old people. (= старики вообще) | Do you know the old people sitting over there? (= конкретные старики, сидящие там)

Можно также говорить о чем-то вообще, используя a/an (в значении ‘любой’) с исчисляемыми существительными в единственном числе.

A vegetarian doesn't eat meat.
An architect designs buildings.

EXERCISE 109A

Add the where necessary.

I find—history an interesting subject.
We studied the history of the Spanish Civil War at school.

1 Andrew hates____examinations.
2 How did you get on in____examinations yesterday?
3 Do you take____sugar in____coffee?
4 'Where is____coffee I bought?' 'It's in____kitchen.'
5 I'm a vegetarian, I don't eat____meat or____fish.
6 I'll put____shopping away. Shall I put____meat into____freezer?
7 Do you like____English beer?
8 Do you think____love is the most important thing in____life?

EXERCISE 109B

Rephrase these general statements using a/an, as in the example.

Example:

Carpenters make things from wood.
A carpenter makes things from wood.

1 Florists sell flowers.
2 Children need love.
3 Corkscrews take corks out of bottles
4 Large cars are expensive to run.
5 Teetotallers don't drink alcohol.
110 Talking in general: *the* (Разговор вообще: *the*)

1. **The + noun**
   
   a. Артикль *the* иногда употребляется с исчисляемым существительным в единственном числе, когда речь идет о чем-то вообще. Это имеет место, например, с названиями животных, цветов и растений.

   *The dolphin is an intelligent animal.*
   *The orchid is a beautiful flower.*

   *(the dolphin = дельфины вообще; the orchid = орхидеи вообще)*

   b. Артикль *the* употребляется в общем смысле с названиями музыкальных инструментов и научных открытий.

   *She can play the guitar and the saxophone.*
   *Marconi invented the radio.*

   c. Некоторые употребительные выражения с *the* имеют общее значение, например, *the town, the country (side), the sea (side), the mountains, the rain, the wind, the sun (shine), the snow.*

   *I enjoy going for long walks in the country.*
   *They often go to the mountains at weekends.*
   *I like the sound of the rain.*

   d. *The cinema и the theatre* также употребляются в общем значении.

   *Which do you prefer, the cinema or the theatre?*

2. **The + adjective**
   
   a. Артикль *the* употребляется перед некоторыми прилагательными, например *young, old, rich, poor, blind,* с общим значением.

   *The young should listen to the old.*

   *(the young = молодежь вообще; the old = старики вообще)*

   b. Артикль *the* также употребляется перед некоторыми названиями национальностей, например *English, Italian, French, Swiss, Japanese,* для обозначения ‘народ данной страны’.

   *The English drink a lot of tea.*

   Обратите внимание, что эти слова оканчиваются на *-sh* (eg *the English, the Irish*), *-ch* (eg *the French, the Dutch*) или *-ese* (eg *the Japanese, the Chinese*).

   С другими национальностями употребляется существительное во множественном числе, оканчивающееся на *-s* с или без *the*, например, *(the) Indians, (the) Germans.*
EXERCISE 110A

Complete each sentence using *the* and the most suitable noun in the box.

Example:
*The blue whale* is the largest animal in the world.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>piano</th>
<th>radio</th>
<th>tulip</th>
<th>sea</th>
<th>blue</th>
<th>whole</th>
<th>country</th>
<th>swan</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. **____** is a large white bird with a long neck.
2. Do you often listen to that programme on **____**?
3. My grandmother has lived in a small village in **____** all her life.
4. **____** has a bell-shaped flower.
5. Chopin wrote a lot of music for **____**.
6. Do you ever go swimming in **____**?

EXERCISE 110B

What do we call these people? Use *the* + the adjectives in the box.

Example:
people who are unable to hear
*the* deaf

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>blind</th>
<th>sick</th>
<th>deaf</th>
<th>unemployed</th>
<th>dead</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. people who are no longer alive
2. people who have no jobs
3. people who cannot see
4. people who are unwell

EXERCISE 110C

What do we call the people of these countries?

Example:
Portugal
*the* Portuguese

1. Britain
2. Australia
3. Spain
4. France
5. Greece
111 Common expressions without an article
(Общие выражения без артикля)

1 **School, the school, church, the church etc**
   Часто следующие существительные употребляются без артикля.

   - school
   - university
   - college
   - hospital
   - prison
   - church
   - bed

   Maria goes to school every morning.
   I studied history at university.
   Mr Woods has gone into hospital.
   John has been in prison for three years.
   I think I'll go to bed early tonight.

   Эти существительные употребляются без артикля, когда имеется в виду главное назначение определенного места. Compare:

   / think I'll go to bed early tonight, (спать)
   Maria goes to school every morning. (учиться)
   Mr Woods has gone into hospital, (для лечения)
   There are some shoes under the bed.
   The school was painted last month.
   Sarah met Simon outside the hospital.

2 **Means of transport** (Средства передвижения)

   Выражения by car/bus/train/plane и т.д. употребляются без артикля, когда речь идет о способе передвижения.

   / usually go to school by car.
   We went to Rome by train.

   Говорят также on foot (= пешком), например, / came home on foot.

3 **Meals** (Еда)

   Обычно с названиями еды артикль не употребляется.

   What time do you usually have breakfast?
   When would you like to have dinner?

   Но the употребляется в конкретном случае, например, / enjoyed the dinner we had last night.

   Можно также сказать a/the meal, например, We had a meal on the plane. A/an также употребляется, когда перед breakfast/lunch/dinner и т.д. стоит прилагательное.

   They had a large breakfast.
EXERCISE 111A

Add the where necessary.

Examples:
Mrs Woods goes to——church every Sunday.
There is a cemetery behind the church.

1 What time does Annie normally go to——school?
2 They are painting——school at the moment.
3 I went to——bed at 10 o’clock last night.
4 I was lying on——bed reading a book.
5 Kate arrives——home from——work at about 6.00 every evening.
6 Did you go to——work by——bus or on——foot yesterday?
7 Sue went to——prison to visit John last month.
8 My mother has gone into——hospital for an operation.
9 The ABC cinema is opposite——hospital.
10 I usually have coffee and toast for——breakfast.

Note
— Относительно выражений времени с артиклем и без него, например, in the morning, at night, on Monday, in (the) summer CM. 169.

112 Place-names with and without the (Географические названия с и без the)

1 Place-names without the
a Обычно the не употребляется с географическими названиями:
continents [материков и континентов]
countries, states, departments, etc [стран, штатов, административных областей, округов и др.]
cities, towns and villages [городов, сел, деревень]
individual islands [отдельных островов]
lakes [озер]
individual mountains [отдельных гор]
streets [улиц]

Africa | Europe | Australia
---|---|---
England | Spain | Brazil
California | Hampshire
Sydney | Tokyo | Bilbao

Crete | Long Island
Lake Michigan | Lake Geneva
Mount Everest | Mount Fuji
Oxford Street | North Road

b Но the употребляется с этими названиями, когда они содержат исчисляемое существительное, например, union, republic, states, kingdom, isle.
the Soviet Union | the Federal Republic of Germany | the United States | the United Kingdom

c Артикль the также употребляется с географическими названиями во множественном числе, например, the Netherlands, the West Indies, the Alps.
Артикль the также употребляется с различными другими названиями, например, the North/ South Pole, the Arctic/Antarctic, the Middle East, the Far East, the Costa Brava, the Ruhr.

### Place-names with the

**a** Обычно the употребляется с названиями:

- oceans and seas [океанов и морей]
- rivers [рек]
- canals [каналов]
- deserts [пустынь]
- island groups [групп островов]
- hotels, cinemas [гостиниц, отелей, кинотеатров]
- museums, clubs [музеев, клубов]
- restaurants, pubs [ресторанов, баров (пивных)]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>the Pacific</th>
<th>the Mediterranean</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>the Mississippi</td>
<td>the Nile</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the Panama Canal</td>
<td>the Suez Canal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the Sahara</td>
<td>the Kalahari</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the Canaries</td>
<td>the West Indies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the Plaza Hotel</td>
<td>the Cannon Cinema</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the Prado Museum</td>
<td>the Black Cat Club</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the Hard Rock Cafe</td>
<td>the Swan (pub)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**b** Однако the не употребляется с названиями гостиниц, отелей, ресторанов и т.д., в честь открывших их лиц + притяжательный падеж с 's.

**Macy’s Hotel** (Not: the Macy’s Hotel)  
**Brown’s** (Not: the Brown’s)

Эти имена часто пишутся без апострофа (’), например, Lloyds Bank, Woolworths.

Артикль the не употребляется с названиями церквей, святых + притяжательный падеж с ’s.

**St Peter’s Church**  
**St Paul’s Cathedral**  
(St = Saint [святой])

**c** Артикль the ставится перед названиями с of.

- the Statue of Liberty
- the Bank of Scotland
- the University of London (или: London University)

### EXERCISE 112A

Answer the questions using the where necessary. You can find the answers in brackets!

Examples:

Which is the longest river in Europe? (GOVAL) the Volga

What’s the capital of India? (HELDI) Delhi

1 What’s the capital of Australia (BRECARAN)
2 Which country has the largest population in the world? (NICAH)
3 Which is the largest city in the world? (EXCOMI YICT)
4 Which is the largest desert in the world? (HAAARS)
5 In which state of the USA is Los Angeles? (FLIARIACON)
6 Which is the largest lake in the world? (KEAL PERSORIU)
7 Which is the largest ocean in the world? (AIPFCCIC)
8 Which is the highest mountain in the world? (TUMON STEER VE)
9 Which are the highest mountains in Europe? (LAPS)
EXERCISE 112B
Add the where necessary.

Example:

The Louvre Museum is in Paris.

1. Ron Lewis was born in Manchester, but he lives in Bristol now. He's a lecturer at University of Bristol.
2. Luigi's restaurant is between Albany Hotel and Jimmy's Wine Bar in Cambridge Road.
3. When we were in Rome we visited St Peter's Church, Castle of St Angelo and National Roman Museum.

Review of articles: a/an, the and no article

EXERCISE 113A

Add a, an or the where necessary.

Examples:

We saw an interesting film at the cinema last night.
I start work at 9 o'clock every morning.

1. Soviet Union is biggest country in world.
2. Have you ever been to St Peter's Square in Rome?
3. weather was lovely when I woke up yesterday morning: sun was shining and there was beautiful blue sky.
4. My sister works in large hospital in London. She's doctor.
5. Who was woman you were talking to just now?
6. 'Where's Kate?' 'She's in living room.'
7. What time do you usually have lunch?
8. Do you prefer cooking with gas or electricity?
9. We visited Prado Museum when we were in Madrid.
10. What time does Andrew finish school?
11. There are 20 classrooms in school.
12. Who invented telescope?
13. How long have you been looking for work?
14. Did you go to Scotland by car or by train?
15. Japanese export a lot of cars.
16. Sue and Frank have got two children: girl and boy. girl is student and boy is engineer.
17. Giovannis' restaurant is next to Midland Bank in Bath Road.
18. Are you interested in politics?
19. Atlantic Ocean is larger than Indian Ocean.
20. Mont Blanc is higher than Mount Etna.
21. Sue's brother is ill in hospital.
22. The government plan to help poor and unemployed.
114 Quantity: general (Количество: общие положения)

Когда речь идет о количестве, употребляются следующие слова:

- *some, any* (see 115)
- *all, every, each* (see 118)
- *much, many, a lot, (a) little, (a) few* (see 116)
- *both, either, neither* (see 119)
- *no, none* (see 117)
- *more, most, half*

1 Эти слова (за исключением *none, a lot и half*) могут употребляться непосредственно перед существительным.

- *There are some eggs in the fridge.*
- *Have we got any milk?*
- *There are no letters for you today.*
- *Both films were very good.*

2 Эти слова (за исключением *no и every*) также употребляются перед of + the, her, your, this и др. + noun.

- *I've finished writing some of the letters.*
- *Can either of your parents speak French?*
- *Not all of these books are mine. Some of them are Peter's.*
- *Neither of us saw the film.*

3 Эти слова (за исключением *no и every*) могут употребляться самостоятельно, без существительного.

- *If you want some coffee, I'll make some.*
- *Have you read these books? 'Not all of them.' (Not: ... all them.)*
- *I haven't finished my homework. I've done about half of it.*
- *They've got three children and each one goes to a different school.*
- *Every one of the students passed the exam.*
- *I've read some of those books, but not every one of them.*
EXERCISE 114A

Choose the correct answer.

Example:

I’ve finished most/most of my homework.

1 Not all/all of birds can fly.
2 The teacher interviewed each/each of student in turn.
3 I’ve heard some/some of those records, but not all/all of them.
4 I can’t lend you any/any of money because I haven’t got any/any of.
5 Most/Most of people like Kate.
6 Neither/Neither of my parents will be at home this evening.
7 Neither/Neither of these jackets fits me properly.
8 ‘How much/much of coffee have we got?’
   ‘Not a lot/a lot of.’
9 A few/A few of Simon’s friends went to the concert, but not many/many of.
10 Are there many/many of museums in Brighton?
11 We tried several chemists’ and every/every one of them was closed.
12 He spends most/most of his time watching TV.
13 My sister has read nearly every/every one of book in the library.
14 I answered each/each of question carefully.
15 Do either/either of these books belong to you?
16 We haven’t painted the whole house yet, but we’ve done about half/half of it.
17 They’ve got five children and each of each one is quite different.

115 Some and any

Some и any перед существительными во множественном числе и неисчисляемыми существительными употребляются для выражения неопределенной КОЛИЧЕСТВЕННОСТИ:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Some</th>
<th>Any</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>some letters</td>
<td>any letters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>some money</td>
<td>any money</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Вообще, some употребляется главным образом в утвердительных предложениях, а any в основном в отрицательных предложениях.

There are some letters for you. | There aren’t any letters for you.
I’ve got some money. | I haven’t got any money.

But see 3, 4 and 6 below.

3 Any употребляется после слов с отрицательным значением, например, without, never, seldom, rarely, hardly.

Ifound a taxi without any trouble.
You never do any homework.
There are hardly any eggs left.

4 Some или any может употребляться после if.

If you need some/any money, tell me.
Обычно any употребляется в ‘открытых’ вопросах (когда не ожидается конкретный ответ).

*Have you got any writing paper?*
*Is there any tea in the cupboard?*

Some часто употребляется в вопросах, на которые ожидается ответ ‘yes’ ['да'].

*Have you got some paper I could have, please?* (Я полагаю, что у вас есть бумага; я рассчитываю на ответ ‘yes’)

Some также употребляется в вопросах, когда мы подталкиваем собеседника ответить ‘yes’, например, в просьбах и предложениях.

‘*Can you let me have some paper?*’ ‘*How much do you want?*’
‘*Would you like some more tea?*’ ‘*Oh, yes, please.*’

Any также может употребляться в значении ‘безразлично какой’ или ‘какой вы хотите’.

*You can get the tickets from any travel agency.*
*I can come and see you any day next week.*

Some (с сильным произношением /sʌm/) употребляется также для создания контраста.

*Some people like lying in the sun, others don’t.*

**EXERCISE 155A**

Complete the sentences using *some* or *any*. Sometimes either word is possible.

**Example:**

He hasn’t got *any* brothers or sisters.

1 There are_____people outside who want to see you.
2 I like_____water sports, but not all of them.
3 Can you buy_____butter when you go to the shops? There’s hardly_____left.
4 ‘*Could I have_____more coffee, please?*’
   ‘*Yes, of course.*’
5 ‘*I haven’t got_____money.*’ ‘*Would you like me to lend you_____?*’
6 If you need_____more information, please ask me.
7 Phone me_____time you like tomorrow. I’ll be at home all day.
8 I’ve done_____revision for the exams, but not much.
9_____museums are worth visiting, but others aren’t.
10 Tell me if you want_____help.

**Note**

– Относительно *some* и *any* см. также 114.
– *Some time* означает ‘в какое-то неопределенное время’, например: *Let’s meet some time next week; sometimes means* означает ‘иногда’, например: *We sometimes meet after school.*
– Различия между *something* и *anything*, *somebody/someone* и *anybody/anyone* такие же, как и различия между *some* и *any*. См. 125.
Much, many, a lot of, (a) little, (a) few

1 Much и (a) little употребляются с неисчисляемыми существительными, а many и (a) few с исчисляемыми существительными во множественном числе.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>much milk</th>
<th>many cars</th>
<th>many books</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(a) little wine</td>
<td>(a) little sugar</td>
<td>(a) few jobs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) few eggs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A lot of, lots o/и plenty of употребляются как с неисчисляемыми, так и с исчисляемыми существительными во множественном числе.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>a lot of milk</th>
<th>a lot of cars</th>
<th>a lot of books</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lots of rice</td>
<td>lots of books</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plenty of wine</td>
<td></td>
<td>plenty of jobs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Обратите внимание: *a lot/lots* = большое количество или много; *plenty* = множество; более чем достаточно.

2 Much, many, a lot (of)

Much и many главным образом употребляются в вопросах и отрицательных предложениях.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>How much milk have we got?</th>
<th>We haven’t got much milk</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Is there much rice left?</td>
<td>There isn’t much rice left.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Has he got many books?</td>
<td>He hasn’t got many books.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

В утвердительных предложениях обычно употребляются *a lot (of)*, *lots (of)* и *plenty (of)*, а не *much* и *many*.

*We’ve got a lot of milk.* (Not: *We’ve got much milk.*)

*There are lots of rice left.* (Not: *There are much rice left.*)

*He’s got plenty of books.* (Not normally: *He’s got many books.*)

Однако очень часто употребляются *much* и *many* в утвердительных предложениях после *too, as, so и very*.

*We’ve got far too much milk.*

*Take as much milk as you want.*

*I’ve got so many jobs to do today.*

*We enjoyed the party very much.*

3 (A) little, (a) few

(A) little, (a) few имеют положительное значение. *A little* означает ‘небольшое, но некоторое количество’; *a few* означает ‘небольшое, но некоторое число’.

*There’s still a little work to do before we go home.* (= небольшой, но некоторый объем работы.)

*The exam was extremely difficult, but a few students passed it.* (= небольшое, но некоторое число студентов.)


*There’s little work to do. We’ve already finished most of it.* (= почти нет работы)

*The exam was extremely difficult and few students passed it.* (= почти нет студентов)
Much, many, a lot of, (a) little, (a) few

Little или few (без a) - достаточно формальные слова. В повседневной речи более употребительными являются not much, not many, only a little, only a few, или hardly any (= почти ничего).

There isn't much time left.
Hardly any students passed the exam.

Однако very little и very few довольно употребительны в повседневной речи.

I've got very little money.
Very few people went to the football match.

EXERCISE 116A

Complete the sentences using much, many, a lot (of), a little or a few. Sometimes more than one answer is possible.

Examples:

There are so many jobs to do today and we haven't got much/a lot of time.
There were only a few people in the cinema.

1 I know people in London, but not many
2 We've got coffee left, but not much.
3 He earns money in his job.
4 She's got classical music records.
5 We had wine with our meal, but not very much.
6 Have we got potatoes left?
7 How money did you spend on holiday?
8 I didn't enjoy the party on Saturday very

EXERCISE 116B

Choose the correct answer.

Example:

I've got a little money, so I could lend you some if you want.

1 I'm sorry, but I've got very a little money at the moment. I'm afraid I can't lend you any.
2 He has very a few friends and he gets rather lonely.
3 She has a few friends in London and she's very happy there.
4 It is an extremely poor country: it has a few natural resources and a little good agricultural land.
5 Would you like more wine? There's still left in the bottle.
6 It won't take long to drive into town. There's very traffic on the road at this time of the day.
7 I think Peter went out minutes ago.
8 It's a very boring little town; there's very to do there.
1 No (= ‘не, ни’ или ‘ничтожно, ничуть’) употребляется перед существительным.

There’s no lock on the door.
There are no letters for you today.
We’ve got no milk.

No может употребляться перед исчисляемыми существительными, например lock, перед исчисляемыми существительными во множественном числе, например letters, и перед неисчисляемыми существительными, например, milk.

No более эмфатичное, чем not a или not any, например: There isn’t a lock on the door. There aren’t any letters for you today.

2 None – это местоимение; оно употребляется самостоятельно, без существительного.

‘Are there any letters for me today?’ ‘No, none, I’m afraid.’
‘How much milk have we got?’ ‘None.’

Перед my, this, the и т.д. или объектным местоимением, например us, them, употребляется none of.

None of my friends have seen the film.
None of the photographs were very good.
None of us have any money.

Когда none of употребляется с существительным во множественном числе, глагол может быть в единственном или множественном числе.

None of my friends have/has seen the film.

Употребление глагола в единственном числе носит более формальный оттенок.

EXERCISE 117A

Complete the sentences using no or none.

Example:

We really must hurry. There’s no time to lose.

1 _____ of my family are rich.
2 Unfortunately, there were _____ tickets left for the concert.
3 He’s so serious. He’s got _____ sense of humour.
4 I’ve got _____ idea what I’m going to do when I leave school.
5 _____ of the students failed the examination.
6 I haven’t got any money at the moment, _____ at all.
7 My friends and I would all like to go to the concert, but _____ of us has got a ticket.
118 All, every, everybody, everything, whole

1 All and every

Every сходно по значению с all: every означает ‘все без исключения’. Compare:

All the students in the class passed the exam.
Every student in the class passed the exam. (= все студенты без исключения)

Обратите внимание, что all может употребляться со словами во множественном числе, в то время как every может только употребляться со словами в единственном числе.

All children like playing. Every child likes playing.

All, но не every может употребляться с неисчисляемыми существительными.

Do you like all pop music? (Not: ... every pop music?)

2 All, everybody, everything

a Обычно all не употребляется отдельно без существительного в значении everybody или everyone. Compare:

All the people stopped talking. Everybody stopped talking. (Not: All stopped...)
I have invited all the students in my class to the party. I have invited everyone in my class to the party. (Not: ... all in my class...)

b All редко употребляется в значении everything.

Everything is so expensive these days. (Not: All is so expensive these days.)
Have you got everything? (Not: Have you got all?)

Однако all может употребляться в значении everything в конструкции all (that) + относительное придаточное предложение.

Have you got all (that) you need?
He’s forgotten all (that) I told him.

All также употребляется в выражении all about.

Tell me all about yourself.

All может также употребляться в значении ‘единственное, что’ или ‘ничего более, чем’.

I’m not hungry. All I want is a cup of tea.

3 All and whole

a Whole означает ‘весь, целый, полный’. Обычно whole употребляется с исчисляемыми существительными в единственном числе.

I didn’t see the whole film. I missed the first part.
I spent my whole salary on clothes last month.

The, my, this и др. всегда употребляются перед whole + a singular noun, например, the whole film, my whole salary.

The, my, this и др. могут также употребляться с all, но с другим порядком слов. Compare:

all the film • the whole film
all my salary • my whole salary
A whole может также употребляться перед существительными (в единственном числе).

Mike ate a whole chicken himself.

Обычно whole не употребляется с неисчисляемыми существительными.

We've finished all the coffee. (Not: the whole coffee.)

All day, every day, etc

All употребляется с некоторыми исчисляемыми существительными в единственном числе, например day, morning, week, year, в значении 'всё'; every употребляется с day, morning и др. для обозначения, как часто происходит действие. Сравните:

/ work hard all day. (= целый день) / work hard every day. (= понедельник, вторник и т.д.)

The whole day/morning и т.д. можно употреблять вместо all day/morning и т.д.

We've been waiting the whole morning/all morning.

В этом значении the whole сильнее, чем all.

**EXERCISE 118A**

Complete the sentences using all, every, everybody or everything. Sometimes two answers are possible.

Example:

Have you spent all the money I gave you?

1. I tried _____ key in the lock, but none of them fitted.
2. _____ enjoyed the film except Peter.
3. I'm really tired _____ I want to go to bed.
4. Listen to me. I can explain _____
5. Has Sarah told you _____ about her holiday in Austria?
6. It was late when Simon arrived home and _____ was asleep.
7. Did you remember to switch off _____ the lights?
8. I believe _____ word he says.
9. Have you packed _____ into this suitcase?
10. I learnt _____ I know about physics at school.

**EXERCISE 118B**

Complete the sentences using all (the) or the whole. Sometimes more than one answer is possible.

Examples:

We've finished all the wine.
I didn't see all the/the whole film.

1. I didn't see _____ the whole film.
2. _____ family went on holiday together.
3. Have you spent _____ money I gave you?
4. The tap was dripping _____ night.
5. Did you understand _____ information I gave you?

**EXERCISE 118C**

Choose the correct answer.

Example:

My favourite TV programme is on at 8.30 all/ every Tuesday evening.

1. What time do you normally get up all/every morning?
2. The weather was terrible yesterday, so we spent all/every day at home.
3. Peter was late for work all/every day last week,
4. My neighbours had a party last night and the noise kept me awake all/every night.
Note

— Сравните every и each: every употребляется, когда речь идет о целой группе; each употребляется, когда речь идет о членах группы отдельно, каждом отдельно.

**every**
I asked every person in the room the same question.

**each**
Each person gave a different answer.

— Относительно all, every и each см. также 114.

119 Both, either, neither

1 Both

*Both* (= ‘оба, обе; и тот и другой’) может употребляться перед исчисляемыми существительными во множественном числе.

*Both films* were very good.
*I spoke to both girls.***

*Both o/употр*ебляется перед the, your, these и т.д. + существительное во множественном числе; в этом случае o/часто опускается.

*Both (of) the films* were very good.
*Do both (of) your parents like dancing?***

*Both o/также употребляется перед объектным местоимением во множественном числе you, us, them; в этом случае of нельзя опускать.*

*She invited both of us to the party. (Not: ... both us ...).*

*Both* может употребляться после объектного местоимения.

*She invited us both to the party.*

2 Either and neither

*Either* (= ‘и тот и другой; оба’) и *neither* (= ‘ни тот, ни другой; ни один’) может употребляться перед исчисляемыми существительными в единственном числе.

*We could meet on Saturday or Sunday. Either day is fine with me.*

*Neither road* goes to the station.
Either of у neither of употребляются перед your, these, the и т.д. + исчисляемое существительное во множественном числе.

*Can either of your parents speak French?*
*Neither of these roads goes to the station.*

Either of neither of также употребляются перед объектными местоимениями во множественном числе you, us, them.

*Can either of you type?*
*Neither of us went to the party.*

После neither of можно употреблять глагол в единственном или множественном числе.

*Neither of these roads goes/go to the station.*
*Neither of us is/are hungry.*

Глагол в единственном числе более характерен для официального стиля.

(Н)either имеет два варианта произношения: /naiðə(r)/ или /niːðə(r)/.

3 Both, either и neither употребляются для соединения понятий в этих конструкциях:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>both ...and...</th>
<th>either ... or...</th>
<th>neither ... nor...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

*I spoke to both Sally and Peter.*
*John is both thoughtful and generous.*
*She both speaks Japanese and writes it.*
*I don't like either football or rugby very much.*
*We can either stay in or go out.*
*Neither Mrs Woods nor her husband were at home.*
*He neither apologised nor explained.*

**EXERCISE 119A**

Complete the sentences using both, both of, either, either of, neither, neither of. In one sentence two answers are possible.

Example:

The tennis match was very exciting. *Both* players were very good.

1 *'Have* your parents got a car?' *'No,______them can drive.*'
2 They don't like each other and I made the mistake of inviting them______to my party.
3 *'What* does "ambidextrous" mean?' *'It means being able to use______hand with equal skill.*'
4 *'Which* of these shirts do you prefer?' *'I don't really like______them very much.*'
5 *'What's* the capital of Switzerland, Geneva or Zurich?' *'______It's Berne.*'
6 Simon had a very bad accident when he was younger. He fell from a tree and broke______his legs.
EXERCISE 119B

Link these ideas by completing the sentences.

Example:
Sue plays the piano. And she sings.
Sue both plays the piano and sings.

1 We could eat now. Or we could wait until later.
We could either _______
2 My father couldn’t read Arabic. And he couldn’t write it. My father could neither _______
3 Ken didn’t know the address. And Kate didn’t know the address. Neither Ken _______

Note
- Относительно both, either и neither см. также 114; относительно Neither do I, I don’t either и т.д. см. 151.

120 Personal pronouns (Личные местоимения)

1 Личные местоимения:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUBJECT PRONOUNS</th>
<th>OBJECT PRONOUNS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(СУБЪЕКТНЫЕ МЕСТОИМЕНИЯ)</td>
<td>(ОБЪЕКТНЫЕ МЕСТОИМЕНИЯ)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SINGULAR</td>
<td>PLURAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1st person</td>
<td>/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd person</td>
<td>you</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd person</td>
<td>he, she, it</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Личные местоимения употребляются для замены существительных, когда очевидно, о ком или о чем идет речь:

a Subject pronouns употребляются как подлежащие глаголов.

‘Where’s Simon?’ ‘He’s in the kitchen.’
Sue didn’t go out last night. She stayed at home.

Обратите внимание, что в английском языке подлежащее в предложении обычно всегда выражается.

‘Where’s Simon?’ ‘He’s in the kitchen.’ (Not: ‘Is in the kitchen.’)

b Object pronouns употребляются как подлежащие глаголов и предлогов.

verb + object pronoun  preposition + object pronoun

Help me.  I’ve written to her.
I like him.  Look at them.
Can you see it?  They’re waiting for us.
Object pronouns также употребляются как косвенные дополнения.

*Can you lend me some money?*
*I'll send him a postcard.*

Object pronouns могут употребляться после *than* и *as* в сравнениях.

*I'm older than him.*
*She isn't as tall as me.*

Но в более официальном стиле употребляются subject pronoun + verb.

*I'm older than he is.*

Object pronouns могут употребляться после *be.*

*‘Who’s there?’ ‘It’s me.’*

Subject pronouns также возможны после *be*, например: *It's I*, но это очень официально и не весьма распространено.

Object pronouns также употребляются как отдельные местоимения в ответах.

*‘Who has got my book?’ ‘Me.’ (Not: I)*

3 Употребление:

a) *I/me* вместо лица, которое говорит [*я/меня*]

b) *we/us* вместо лица, которое говорит, и другого лица или других людей [*мы/нас*]

c) *you* вместо лица или людей, к которым обращаются [*ты/тебя, вы/вас*]

d) *he/him* вместо лица мужского пола и некоторых животных-самцов [*он/его*], например, a pet

e) *she/her* вместо лица женского пола и некоторых животных-самок [*она/её*], например, a pet

f) *it* вместо предмета или животного, когда пол неизвестен или не имеет значения [*оно/его, она/её*]

g) *they/them* вместо людей или предметов [*они/их*]

But see also 4–9 below.

4 *You* может употребляться в значении ‘люди в целом, включая вас и меня’.

*You can easily lose your way in Rome.*
*You can drive a car in Britain when you're 17.*

*One* также употребляется в этом значении, особенно в официальном стиле.

*One can easily lose one's way in Rome.*

5 *They* может употребляться в значении ‘люди вообще, исключая вас и меня’.

*They say she’s a good teacher.*

*They* употребляется, когда речь идет о правительстве или о людях во власти.

*‘What are the government’s plans?’ ‘They’re going to increase taxes.’*
*‘They say the new motorway will be finished by next April.*
Местоимения во множественном числе they и them употребляются в значении единственного числа, особенно в неофициальном стиле.

Somebody forgot to lock the door, didn't they?
If anyone phones for me while I'm out, tell them I'll phone them back later on.

В подобных предложениях they употребляется вместо 'he' или 'she', а them вместо 'him' или 'her' (в случае, когда не уточняется пол лица).

We иногда включает слушателя; иногда - нет. Compare:

Why don't we go to the cinema this evening? (we включает слушателя)
Why don't you come with us? (we не включает слушателя)

It может употребляться для лица в случае, когда мы спрашиваем или говорим, кем оно является.

'There's someone at the door. Who is it?' 'It's Peter.'

Л также употребляется как 'пустое' подлежащее в ряде выражений. Например, it употребляется для выражения времени, расстояния, погоды и температуры.

It's 8 o'clock.
It's the first of June.
How far is it to the next town?
It's usually very warm here in the summer.

Часто предложение начинается с it как 'предваряющего подлежащего' вместо того, чтобы начинать его с to infinitive или that-clause.

It is interesting to study a foreign language. (Instead of: To study a foreign language is interesting.)
It was lucky that we didn't miss the bus. (Instead of: That we didn't miss the bus was lucky.)

EXERCISE 120A

Choose the correct answers.

Example:

We/Us met Sally yesterday afternoon. She/Her came to the cinema with we/us.

1 I phoned Sarah last night and gave she/her the message.
2 My brother is older than I/me, but he/him isn't as tall as I/me am.
3 ‘Who wants a cup of coffee?’ ‘I/Me.’
4 ‘Have you seen Simon today?’ ‘Yes. I/Me saw he/him this morning. He/Him was going to the swimming pool.’
5 ‘What did those people want?’ ‘They/Them asked I/me to help they/them.’
EXERCISE 120B

Complete the sentences using the pronouns in the box.

Example:

‘I'm looking for Andrew. Have you seen him?’ ‘Yes, he was here a few minutes ago.’

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>you</th>
<th>he</th>
<th>she</th>
<th>it</th>
<th>we</th>
<th>they</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>me</td>
<td>you</td>
<td>him</td>
<td>her</td>
<td>it</td>
<td>us</td>
<td>them</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Peter and I are going out this evening—are going to the cinema. Would you like to come with ______ ?
2 Where are my keys? I put ______ on the table a moment ago, but now ______ 've disappeared.
3 ______ 's usually quite cold in New York in the winter.
4 ‘What did you think of the film, Simon?’ ______ enjoyed ______ very much.’
5 ______ 's strange that Kate didn't come to the meeting.
6 ‘What do the government plan to do about education?’ ______ say that ______ 're going to build more schools.’
7 ______ aren't allowed to drive a car in Britain until ______ 're 17 years old.
8 If you have any problems, just tell someone and ______ 'll help you.
9 How far is ______ from Madrid to Paris?
10 My sister and I are quite different — ______ 's much more serious than ______ am.

1. Possessive adjectives and pronouns
   (Притяжательные прилагательные и местоимения)

1 The possessive adjectives and pronouns are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES</th>
<th>POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>SINGULAR</strong></td>
<td><strong>PLURAL</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>my</td>
<td>our</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>your</td>
<td>your</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>his</td>
<td>his</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>her</td>
<td>hers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>its</td>
<td>their</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mine</td>
<td>ours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yours</td>
<td>yours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>his</td>
<td>theirs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Possessive adjectives употребляются перед существительным для выражения, кому принадлежит существительное.

_I can’t find my keys._
_Sally bought her motorbike last year._

3 Possessive pronouns употребляются без существительного, когда существительное подразумевается.

‘Is this Peter’s book?’ ‘No, it’s mine.’ (= моя книга)
_I've got my coat, but Maria can’t find hers._ (= ее пальто)
_Their flat is smaller than ours._ (= наша квартира)
Практический материал:

**4 ПРИЛАГАТЕЛЬНЫЕ И ПРОНИКСЧИКИ СОБСТВЕННЫЕ, ИМЕНЬЯ СОБСТВЕННЫЕ**

Мои собственные, твои собственные, его собственные, наши собственные, их собственные.

**Текст:**

- *My own/your own/his own, etc*

*Являются для подчеркивания, что что-то принадлежит только одному лицу, оно ни с кем не делится и не одалживается* [мои собственные, моя собственная, моё собственное, мои собственные; ваш собственный, ваша собственная, ваше собственное, ваши собственные; его собственный, его собственная, его собственное и т.д.].

**Примеры:**

*This is my office.* 

I've got my own/own office now. I don't share with anyone else. 

This isn't my own/bicycle. I only borrowed it.

*My/your/his/her и т.д. всегда стоит перед own. Нельзя сказать, например, an own room/book и т.д.*

**Больше примеры:**

I've got an office of my own/own now. I don't share with anyone else.

*My own/your own и т.д. также употребляются для подчеркивания того, что одно лицо выполняет что-то вместо того, чтобы кто-то другой делал это для них.*

**Примеры:**

Clean your room. 

Clean your own room! I'm not going to do it for you.

*On my own/on your own и т.д. может означать ‘сам, сама’ или ‘без чьей-то помощи’.*

I don't live on my own, I share a flat with two friends.

I can't move this table on my own. It's too heavy.

**Упражнение 121A**

Выберите правильные варианты.

*Пример:*

Have you seen my/mine coat?

1 We know their/their telephone number, but they don't know our/ours.

2 My/Mine car wasn't as expensive as her/hers.

3 'How are your/yours children?' ‘Fine, thanks. How are your/yours?’

4 Maria has got her/hers suitcase, but her/hers friends haven't got their/theirs.

5 Our/Ours flat isn't as big as their/theirs, but our/ours is much more comfortable.

**Упражнение 121B**

Положите предложения, используя my own, your own, his own, her own, etc.

*Пример:*

I don't have my own telephone yet, so I have to use the public phone.

1 Sarah shares a flat with some friends. She would prefer to have a flat of_____, but she can't afford one.

2 'That isn't______ camera, is it?' ‘No, I borrowed it from my______.’

3 You can wash______ dirty clothes! I’m not going to wash them for you.

4 We helped them move the piano; they couldn't have done it on______

5 Sometimes I'm allowed to use my parents' car, but I wish I had a car of______

6 He's always using my shampoo. Why doesn't he buy______?

**Примечание:**

- *By myself, by yourself и т.д. может употребляться вместо on my own, on your own и т.д., например, I don't live by myself.* CM. 122.4
22 Reflexive pronouns (Возвратные местоимения)

The reflexive pronouns are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st person</td>
<td>myself</td>
<td>ourselves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd person</td>
<td>yourself</td>
<td>yourselves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd person</td>
<td>himself, herself, itself</td>
<td>themselves</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Reflexive pronouns употребляются, когда подлежащее и дополнение предложения одно и то же.

I burnt myself cooking the dinner.
Annie hurt herself when she fell over.

Обратите внимание: enjoy yourself = хорошо проводите время; help yourself (to something) = угостить (чем-то).

Did you enjoy yourself at the circus?
Help yourself to some more coffee.

После предлогов используются объектные местоимения, например me, him, вместо reflexive pronouns, когда очевидно, о чем идет речь. Compare:

I'll take some money with me. (Я не мог взять деньги с кем-то еще!) | I'm very angry with myself (Я не мог сердиться на кого-то еще!)

By myself/by yourself и т.д. может означать ‘самостоятельно’ или ‘без чьей-то помощи’.

/ don't live by myself. I share a flat with two friends.
I can't move this table by myself. It's too heavy.

On my own/on your own и т.д. также употребляются в этом значении (см. 121.4)

Reflexive pronouns обычно не употребляются после feel, relax или concentrate.

I feel fine. (Not: ...feel myself fine.)
I must try to relax. (Not: ...relax myself.)
I can't concentrate. (Not: ...concentrate myself.)

Обычно reflexive pronouns не употребляются для выражения действий, которые люди, как правило, выполняют по отношению к себе, например, wash, shave, dress.

Ken got up. Then he washed, shaved and dressed. (Not: ...washed himself, etc.)

Но говорят dry myself/yourself и т.д., например: got out of the bath and dried myself.

Reflexive pronouns также употребляются для подчеркивания: ‘то лицо, никто другой’.

Nobody helped me build the swimming pool. I built it myself. [sam]
I'm not going to clean your room for you. You clean it yourself! [sam, сами]
Когда reflexive pronouns употребляются таким образом, они обычно следуют в конце предложения. Однако могут также следовать за подлежащим.

The manager himself told me the news.
I myself prefer golf to tennis.

Сравните -selves (например, themselves, ourselves) и each other:

They're looking at themselves.  They're looking at each other.

More examples:

Sue and I can take care of ourselves. (= Сью может позаботиться о себе, а я - о себе.)
Sue and I can take care of each other. (= Сью может позаботиться обо мне, а я - о ней.)

One another можно использовать вместо each other.

They're looking at one another.

Но обратите внимание на то, что некоторые люди предпочитают употреблять each other для двух лиц или предметов, а one another д для более чем двух. Compare:

Chris and Sue often help each other.  We should all try to help one another.

EXERCISE 122A

Complete the sentences using myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves.

Example:
I taught myself to play the guitar; I've never had lessons.

1 Sue's children are too young to look after____
2 An elephant hurt____when it tried to get out of the zoo yesterday.
3 I couldn't borrow my mother's car last night because she was using it____
4 I don't need any help. I can take care of____
5 Mr Woods fell over and hurt____when he was running for a bus.
6 Would you all like to help____to sandwiches and cakes?
7 Sarah and I didn't really enjoy____at the disco last night.
EXERCISE 122B

Complete each sentence using by + a reflexive pronoun.

Example:
The dog opened the door by itself.

1 ‘Who did you go to the cinema with?’ ‘Nobody, I went_____’
2 Since the old lady’s husband died, she’s been living_____ 
3 Did someone help you move all the furniture, or did you do it all _____?
4 They need some help: they can’t manage_____

EXERCISE 122C

Last Wednesday Sarah stayed up very late to revise for an examination.

Sarah is explaining what happened last Wednesday night. Complete what she says by adding myself where necessary.

‘I was really annoyed with myself for leaving all my revision to the last moment, so I decided to stay up and work. At first, I felt_____I_____fine and I even started to congratulate___2__on all the work I was doing. But at about 3 o’clock in the morning I started to feel_____3____tired. I went to the kitchen and made_____4___a strong black coffee. Then I went back to work, but I couldn’t concentrate_____5_____. In the end, I started to feel sorry for _____6___, so I went to my bedroom, undressed _____7____ and went to bed to get some sleep. Then, of course, I couldn’t relax _____8____ because I couldn’t stop thinking about all the work I had to do!’

EXERCISE 122D

Complete the sentences using a reflexive pronoun.

Example:
Sally didn’t buy that sweater, she made it herself.

1 I didn’t buy the cake from the shop. I made it ______.
2 ‘Who built your swimming pool for you?’ ‘Nobody, We built it_____.’
3 Did someone phone the doctor for you? Or did you phone him_____?
4 ‘Who told you they were moving?’ ‘They told me_____’.
5 Mr Mason_____offered me the job.

EXERCISE 122E

Complete the sentences using each other or -selves.

Example:
My penfriend and I write to each other every month.

1 They’re good friends. They like____very much.
2 Mike and Sue phone_____every evening.
3 We all enjoyed_____at the party.
4 A lot of people can take care of____.
5 My husband and I first met_____on holiday.
6 The children hurt_____when they fell over.
EXERCISE 123A
Complete the table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PERSONAL PRONOUN</th>
<th>POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVE</th>
<th>REFLEXIVE PRONOUN</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SUBJECT</td>
<td>OBJECT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>me</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he</td>
<td>me</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td>her</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>your</td>
<td>me</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>me</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>my</td>
<td>me</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>her</td>
<td>me</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>your</td>
<td>me</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>theirs</td>
<td>me</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yours</td>
<td>me</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>myself</td>
<td>me</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yourselves</td>
<td>me</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

EXERCISE 123B
Complete the sentences using the correct pronoun or adjective.

Examples:
Could you lend me some money? (you | I)
Why didn’t she ask us to help her? (she | we | she)
Do you ever talk to yourself when you’re on your own? (you | you | you | you)

1. The house is much bigger than theirs. (they | we)
2. Is this book yours or mine? (you | I)
3. ‘Is Lynne going on holiday with her friend?’ ‘No, I’m going by myself.’
   (she | she | she)
4. How long have you been waiting for her? (she | we)
5. Don’t blame me; that wasn’t my mistake, (you | it | you)
6. I was very angry with you for being so stupid. (I | I)
7. He was very angry with her when she broke his camera, (he | I | I | he)
8. Someone came to see you while you were out. (you | you | I | they | you)
9. ‘Who painted the flat?’ ‘Nobody painted it.’ (you | we | we)
10. It’s a coincidence that her birthday is on the same day as mine. (it | he | her)
One (s)

1 One часто употребляется вместо повторения существительного.
   My new flat is much bigger than my old one. (= моя старая квартира)
   ‘Which of those girls is your sister?’ ‘She’s the one with the blonde hair.’ (= девушка со светлыми волосами)
   Существует множественное число - ones.
   I like these shoes more than the other ones. (= другие туфли)

2 Артикль a/an употребляется с one в том случае, если перед ним стоит существительное, например, a blue one, но не a one. Compare:
   I’m looking for a tie.  I’m looking for a tie.
   I want a blue one.  I want one with stripes.

3 One может употребляться после указательных прилагательных this, that.
   Which picture do you prefer, this one or that one?
   Но, как правило, множественное число ones употребляется только после these или those, когда перед ним стоит прилагательное, например, those black ones. Compare:
   / like these shoes more than those.  \ I like these brown shoes more than those black ones.

4 Which one (s) употребляется в вопросах.
   I like the green shirt best. Which one do you prefer?

5 One может употребляться после each.
   I’ve got three children, and each one goes to a different school.

6 One (s) употребляется только вместо исчисляемых существительных; с неисчисляемыми существительными, например milk, sugar, существительное или повторяется, или его часто можно опускать.
   There’s some brown sugar in the cupboard, but there isn’t any white (sugar).

EXERCISE 124A

Complete each sentence using one or ones. What does one(s) mean in each case?

Example:

The best road to the centre of town is the one on the left. one = road

1 ‘Would you like a drink?’ ‘Oh yes, please, I’d love _______.’
2 My new glasses are much stronger than my old _______.

3 ‘Which of the women in this photo is your aunt?’ ‘She’s the _______ with the dark hair.’
4 There are two films on TV this evening. Which _______ would you prefer to see?

Note

В официальном стиле one может также употребляться для выражения людей вообще.
   См. 120.4.
Сложные слова могут образовываться путем соединения some, any, no и every с -thing, -body, -one и -where.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>some</th>
<th>any</th>
<th>no</th>
<th>every</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-thing</td>
<td>something</td>
<td>anything</td>
<td>nothing</td>
<td>everything</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-body</td>
<td>somebody</td>
<td>anybody</td>
<td>nobody</td>
<td>everybody</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-one</td>
<td>someone</td>
<td>anyone</td>
<td>no one</td>
<td>everyone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-where</td>
<td>somewhere</td>
<td>anywhere</td>
<td>nowhere</td>
<td>everywhere</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Разница между something/somebody и т.д. и anything/anybody и т.д. аналогична разнице между some и any:

a. Вообще something, somebody и т.д. употребляются главным образом в утвердительных предложениях, а anything, anybody и т.д. в основном в отрицательных предложениях и вопросах.

I've got something to ask you.
There's somebody at the front door.
I don't want to do anything this evening.
I can't see anybody outside.
Have you got anything to say?
Did anybody phone for me?

b. Но очень часто something, somebody и т.д. употребляются в вопросах, когда мы ожидаем или хотим ответа 'yes', например, в просьбах и предложениях.

Could I have something to eat?
Would you like someone to help you?

Более подробно о различиях между some и any см. 115.

3. Все эти сложные слова: something, anyone, nobody, everywhere и т.д. имеют форму единственного числа.

Something is wrong. What is it?
There was nobody at home when I phoned.
Everything is so expensive these days.

Но иногда употребляется форма множественного числа they, them и their со сложными словами с окончанием на -body или -one, например, somebody/someone, anybody/anyone, главным образом в неофициальном стиле.

Somebody forgot to lock the door, didn't they?
If anybody phones for me while I'm out, tell them I'll phone them back later on.
Look. Someone has left their bag on this seat.

В таких предложениях they употребляется вместо 'he' или 'she', them вместо 'him' или 'her' и their вместо 'his' или 'her' (если не уточняется пол лица).
EXERCISE 125A

Complete the sentences using the words in the box.

Example:

**Somebody** has written in my book.

1 There's ______ in this envelope. It's empty!
2 Why don't we go out ______ for dinner this evening?
3 There's ______ waiting outside to see you. She didn't tell me her name.
4 They've got ______ to live; they're homeless.
5 There isn't ______ watching the TV at the moment.
6 He lost ______ in the fire: his house and all his possessions.

- something anything nothing everything
- somebody anybody nobody everybody
- somewhere anywhere nowhere everywhere

7 Lynne is the only one in the office at the moment ______ else has gone home.
8 ‘Shall I make you ______ to eat?’ ‘Oh, yes, please. I'm really ______. I've had hardly ______ all day.’
9 It's a ______ knows about it.
10 Have you seen my glasses? I've looked ______ for them, but I can't find them ______
Некоторые прилагательные, например asleep, alone, alive, awake, afraid, ill, well, могут следовать после глагола, но не перед существительным. Например, можно сказать he is asleep, но нельзя сказать an asleep man. Перед существительными употребляются другие прилагательные, например, sleeping вместо asleep, living вместо alive, frightened вместо afraid, sick вместо ill и healthy вместо well.

a sleeping man    a frightened animal
sick children    healthy people

В выражениях измерений прилагательное обычно идет после ‘измеряемого’ существительного.

He’s eighteen years old. I’m 1.80 metres tall.

3 Order

Когда употребляются два и более прилагательных вместе, ‘оценочные’ прилагательные (например, interesting, beautiful) обычно идут перед ‘фактическими’ прилагательными (например, new, blue).

an interesting new film    a beautiful blue dress

Когда два и более прилагательных ставятся перед существительным, они обычно следуют в таком порядке:

[size + age + shape + colour + origin + material + purpose + NOUN]

[size + origin]
[size + shape]
[colour + material + purpose]

a small rubber ball (size + material)
a young Spanish woman (age + origin)
a large round hat (size + shape)
white leather running shoes (colour + material + purpose)

EXERCISE 126A
What can we call these people and things?

Examples:
a child who is four years old    a four-year-old child
a journey which takes six hours    a six-hour journey

1 a concert which lasts for two hours
2 a man who is fifty years old
3 a delay which lasts for twenty minutes
4 a letter which has ten pages
5 a meeting which lasts for two hours

EXERCISE 126B
Which of these words are adjectives?

Example:
‘You look tired.’ ‘Yes, I don’t feel very well.’
Adjectives: tired, well

1 It's a very long book, but it's not at all boring.
2 Were you late for work today?
3 You seem sad. Is something wrong?
4 The boss sounded angry when I spoke to him on the phone.
5 He’s quite a shy person. He often feels embarrassed when he meets people.
EXERCISE 126C
Put the words in the right order.

Examples:
1. is | a | generous | Kate | woman | very |.
   Kate is a very generous woman.
2. look | very | Simon | angry | did | ?
   Did Simon look very angry?
3. children | asleep | the | are?
4. very | city | is | a | Sydney | modem |.
5. building | over | old | that | 500 years | is |.
6. don’t | happy | very | you | sound |.
7. a | he | very | man | healthy | looks |.
8. bridge | long | is | 1.55 kilometres | the |.
9. blue | seen | have | my | you | T-shirt | ?

EXERCISE 126D
Put the adjectives in the box under the correct headings.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Opinion</th>
<th>Size</th>
<th>Age</th>
<th>Shape</th>
<th>Colour</th>
<th>Origin</th>
<th>Material</th>
<th>Purpose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>horrible</td>
<td>short</td>
<td>old</td>
<td>round</td>
<td>grey</td>
<td>English</td>
<td>glass</td>
<td>shopping</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>old</th>
<th>horrible</th>
<th>grey</th>
<th>glass</th>
<th>round</th>
<th>shopping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>short</td>
<td>middle-aged</td>
<td>plastic</td>
<td>Italian</td>
<td>beautiful</td>
<td>sports</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ugly</td>
<td>square</td>
<td>leather</td>
<td>red</td>
<td>German</td>
<td>small</td>
<td>young</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>writing</td>
<td>curly</td>
<td>large</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

EXERCISE 126E
Put the adjectives in brackets into their usual order.

Example:

an (German | interesting | young) woman  an interesting young German woman

| 1 a (fat | short) man | 2 a (middle-aged | tall) woman | 3 two (white | small | paper) cups | 4 some (Japanese | tiny) TV sets | 5 a (young | handsome) doctor | 6 a (red | plastic | cheap) raincoat | 7 an (blue | long | attractive) coat | 8 a pair of (leather | expensive | black) shoes |

Note

- Прилагательное обычно имеет одну и ту же форму в единственном и множественном числе (см. 126.1), но обратите внимание, что указательные прилагательные this и that принимают форму these и those с существительными во множественном числе, например, this man, these men.
### 127 Comparative and superlative adjectives

(Сравнительная и превосходная степень прилагательных)

**1 Form of comparatives and superlatives**

**a** Short [Краткие] adjectives'

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ADJECTIVE</th>
<th>COMPARATIVE</th>
<th>SUPERLATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>small</td>
<td>smaller</td>
<td>smallest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>high</td>
<td>higher</td>
<td>highest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>young</td>
<td>younger</td>
<td>youngest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cold</td>
<td>colder</td>
<td>coldest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

При присоединении -er или -est к прилагательным иногда имеют место некоторые изменения в написании, например, big → bigger. См. 188.3, 4, 6.

**b** Двусложные и многосложные прилагательные

Прилагательные из трех и более слогов образуют сравнительную степень с помощью more, а превосходную - с помощью most.

В двусложных прилагательных с окончанием на согласную + -y -у меняется на -i и добавляется -er и -est.

Некоторые другие двусложные прилагательные образуют степени сравнения также с помощью -er и -est, например, quiet, clever, simple, narrow, gentle.

Большинство других двусложных прилагательных образуют степени сравнения с помощью more и most.

Некоторые двусложные прилагательные могут образовывать степени сравнения или с помощью -er/-est, или more/most, например, polite, common, pleasant, stupid.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ADJECTIVE</th>
<th>COMPARATIVE</th>
<th>SUPERLATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>exciting</td>
<td>more exciting</td>
<td>most exciting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interesting</td>
<td>more interesting</td>
<td>most interesting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>happy</td>
<td>happier</td>
<td>happiest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sunny</td>
<td>sunnier</td>
<td>sunniest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quiet</td>
<td>quieter</td>
<td>quietest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clever</td>
<td>cleverer</td>
<td>cleverest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>honest</td>
<td>more honest</td>
<td>most honest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>careful</td>
<td>more careful</td>
<td>most careful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>polite</td>
<td>politer/more</td>
<td>politest/most</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>common</td>
<td>commoner/more</td>
<td>commonest/most</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Образование сравнительной и превосходной степени прилагательных не по общим правилам

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ADJECTIVE</th>
<th>COMPARATIVE</th>
<th>SUPERLATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>good</td>
<td>better</td>
<td>best</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bad</td>
<td>worse</td>
<td>worst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>far</td>
<td>farther/</td>
<td>farthest/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>further</td>
<td>furthest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>old</td>
<td>older/</td>
<td>oldest/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>elder</td>
<td>eldest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>little</td>
<td>less</td>
<td>least</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>much/many</td>
<td>more</td>
<td>most</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Use of comparatives

**a** Comparatives употребляются, когда сравнивается одно лицо, предмет и т.д. с другим.

*Martin is taller than Annie.*

More examples:

*The Amazon is longer than the Mississipi.*  
*Good health is more important than money.*

После сравнительной степени часто употребляется than, например, taller than, longer than, more important than.

**b** Comparative + and + comparative может также употребляться для выражения увеличения или уменьшения чего-то, например, colder and colder, more and more expensive.

*The weather is getting colder and colder.*  
*Things are becoming more and more expensive all the time.*

**c** The + comparative clause, the + comparative clause можно употреблять для выражения изменений двух вещей или предметов одновременно или зависимости чего-то одного от другого.

*The smaller a car is, the easier it is to park.*  
*The colder the weather, the higher my heating bills are.*

**d** Перед сравнительной степенью можно употреблять (very) much, a lot, a little, a (little) bit, rather или far (= гораздо).

*very much taller*  
*a lot more important*  
*a little cheaper*  
*a bit more expensive*  
*rather colder*  
*far more interesting*
Use of superlatives

Superlatives употребляются, когда сравнивается одно лицо или предмет в группе с двумя и более предметами или лицами той же группы.

Martin is the tallest of the three children.

More examples:

I'm the youngest in my family.

Which is the most beautiful place you've ever been to?

Обычно с превосходной степенью употребляется the, например, the tallest, the youngest, the most beautiful.

Перед превосходной степенью часто употребляется by far или easily, например, by far the tallest, easily the most interesting.

EXERCISE 127A

Compare these things.

Example:

a lamb and a sheep (old | small)

A sheep is older than a lamb.

A lamb is smaller than a sheep.

1 wood and steel (light | hard | strong)
2 a bus and a train (slow | comfortable)
3 milk and cream (thick | healthy | fattening)
4 windsurfing and swimming (cheap | exciting | good exercise)

EXERCISE 127B

Maria is a foreign student in London. She is speaking about the problems of learning English.

Complete what Maria says using comparatives of the adjectives in brackets; add than where necessary.

‘Oh, why is English such a difficult language! I think it's much more difficult than (much | difficult) French. Sometimes I feel that my English is getting____(1)_____ (bad), not_____ (2)_____ (good)! When you first start learning English, it seems____ (3)_____ (a lot | easy) other languages and the grammar looks____ (4)_____ (much | simple). However, when you become____ (5)_____ (a little | advanced), it gets____(6)_____ (a lot | complicated). There are also so many words in English! The dictionary I bought when I first came to Britain is far too small. I’m already looking for something____ (7)_____ (rather | big) and____ (8)_____ (comprehensive).’
EXERCISE 127C
Complete these sentences about the world today using the structure:
comparative + and + comparative.
Example:
Computers are becoming more and more important in our lives. (important)
1 The world's population is getting ______ (big)
2 The problem of feeding all the people in the world is getting ______ (bad)
3 Many of the world's seas, rivers and lakes are becoming ______ (polluted)
4 Life is becoming ______ (automated)

EXERCISE 127D
Make sentences using the structure:
the + comparative clause, the + comparative clause.
Example:
(small) a house is | (easy) it is to look after
The smaller a house is, the easier it is to look after.
1 (big) a car is | (expensive) it is to run
2 (bad) the weather | (dangerous) it is to drive on the roads
3 (old) he gets | (thoughtful) he becomes |
4 (complicated) the problem | (hard) it is to find a solution

EXERCISE 127E
Complete the sentences using the and superlatives of the adjectives in brackets.
Example:
What's the most precious (precious) metal in the world?
1 Who's ______ (good) footballer in Europe?
2 This was ______ (cheap) watch that they had in the shop.
3 I bought ______ (reliable) washing machine I could find.
4 This is one of ______ (expensive) restaurants in Milan.
5 The blue whale is ______ (large) of all the animals.
6 He's ______ (stupid) people I know.
7 ______ (old) university in the world is in Morocco.
8 I think that was one of ______ (bad) days of my life.
9 Sydney Opera House is one of ______ (famous) modern buildings in the world.

Note
- Further (а не farther) может значить 'больше' или 'в дополнение', например: Tell me if you have any further problems (= any more problems).
- Older/oldest (а не elder/eldest) употребляется в сравнительной и превосходной степени, например: My sister is older than me. (He: elder than me.) Elder/eldest употребляется часто перед существительным, например, sister, son, brother главным образом, когда речь идет о членах семьи, например, my elder sister.
- В превосходной степени предлог in употребляется с обстоятельствами места, например: Mount Everest is the highest mountain in the world.
- В неофициальном стиле употребляются объективные местоимения me, him после than, например: She's older than me. В более официальном стиле употребляются субъективные местоимения /, he + verb, например: She's older than I am. Некоторые считают более правильной форму подлежащее + глагол.
- Иногда most + adjective означает 'очень', например: It was most kind of you to lend me the money (= very kind).
As ... as

1. As ... as употребляется для выражения того, что двое людей, два предмета и т.д. в некотором роде сходны, одинаковы.

   Judy is as tall as Martin.

   as + adjective + as

   Judy is as tall as Martin
   I'm as old as you are.
   Was the exam as difficult as you’d expected?

2. После not может употребляться as ... as или so ... as.

   not as/so + adjective + as

   Judy isn't as/so tall as Carlo.
   Today isn't as/so cold as yesterday.

EXERCISE 128A

Complete the sentences using as ... as and the adjectives in the box.

Example:

'Are you as old as Mike?' 'No, I'm younger than he is.'

interesting cheap old clever tall

1. Jill is almost ____. her father. She's 164 cm and he's 166 cm.
2. I'm not_____ my brother. He's very intelligent.
3. The film wasn't______ I'd thought it would be. In fact, it was quite boring.
4. Going by train is almost_____ taking the coach. They both cost around £5.
EXERCISE 128B

Make comparisons using isn’t as ... as and the adjectives in brackets.

Example:

Japan | India (large | industrialised)

*Japan isn’t as large as India.*

*India isn’t as industrialised as Japan.*

1 a giraffe | an elephant (tall | strong | fast)
2 iron | gold (strong/valueable)
3 a gorilla | a human (intelligent | strong)
4 a car | a bicycle (expensive | fast | easy to park)

Note

В неофициальном стиле употребляются объектные местоимения, me, him после as, на-
пример: You aren’t as tired as me. В более официальном стиле употребляются субъектные
местоимения, например, *I, he + verb You aren’t as tired as I am.* Некоторые считают более
правильной форму подлежащее + глагол.

129 Review of comparatives, superlatives and as ... as

(Обзор сравнительной и превосходной степени прилагательных
и as ... as)

EXERCISE 129 A

Complete the sentences using the correct form of the adjectives in brackets. Add than, the or as
where necessary.

Examples:

A mile is longer than a kilometre (long)
Today isn’t as sunny as yesterday. (sunny)
What’s the best holiday you’ve ever had? (good)

1 Baseball is____sport in the USA. (popular)
2 She’s much____her brother. (serious)
3 He wasn’t as____he usually is. (friendly)
4 That was_____film I’ve ever seen. (good)
5 He’s much____any of his brothers. (generous)
6 You aren’t as____you think you are. (clever)
7 Where’s____place in the world? (hot)
8 Debbie is far____she used to be. (self-confident)
9 My brother is one of____people I know. (strange)
10 Which is____building in the world? (tall)
11 Our holiday was much____we’d expected. (cheap)
12 That was one of____times of my life. (enjoyable)
130 Adjectives and adverbs of manner
(Прилагательные и наречия образа действия)

1 Adverbs of manner указывают на то, как что-то происходит.

She sings beautifully.
I passed the exam easily.

Сравните прилагательные и наречия образа действия:

Прилагательные более определяют существительное, например, singer, worker, exam.

She's a beautiful singer.
He's a slow worker.

Наречия образа действия более определяют глагол, например, sings, works, passed.

She sings beautifully.
He works slowly.
I passed the exam easily.

2 Большинство наречий образа действия образуются путем добавления -ly к прилагательному.

ADJECTIVE
beautiful
slow

ADVERB
beautifully
slowly

Но обратите внимание, что наречием от good является well.

You're a good swimmer. You swim very well.

Fast, hard, early и late употребляются как прилагательные, так и наречия.

It's a fast car.
It was hard work.
I was early.

The car goes very fast.
We worked hard.
I arrived early.

3 Не все слова, оканчивающиеся на -ly, являются наречиями. Некоторые прилагательные также оканчиваются на -ly, например, friendly, lovely, lonely, silly, ugly. Эти прилагательные не имеют формы наречия: вместо них употребляются различные конструкции, например, in a ... way.

She smiled in a friendly way. (Not: She smiled friendly/fricndily.)

EXERCISE 130A

Answer the questions.

1 How do you usually feel before an interview? (nervous/nervously?)
2 How do you usually walk when you are tired? (slow/slowly?)
3 How do you feel when you get good news? (happy/happily?)
4 What kind of a driver are you? (careful/carefully?)
5 How do you usually study before an exam? (hard/hardly?)
6 What kind of a dancer are you? (wonderful/wonderfully?)
7 How should you pick up a baby? (careful/carefully?)
8 What is your English like? (good/well?)

Now make sentences.

Example: 1 / usually feel nervous before an interview.
Adverbs of manner, place and time

1. Наречие может быть одним словом, например quickly, или словосочетанием (иногда называемое 'адвербиальным словосочетанием'), например, in the park.

   Наречие, которое указывает на то, как что-то происходит, например carefully, well, является adverb of manner.

   Наречие, которое указывает, где что-то происходит, например here, in the park, является adverb of place.

   Наречие, которое указывает, когда что-то происходит, например now, yesterday, называется adverb of definite time.

2. Position

   a. Наречия образа действия, места и (определенного) времени обычно следуют после прямого дополнения.

      direct object + adverb

      / read the letter carefully.
      We saw Maria in the park.
      He bought a camera yesterday.

   b. Если прямое дополнение отсутствует, то наречие обычно следует после глагола.

      verb + adverb

      She drove carefully.
      He lives here.

   c. Если имеется больше одного наречия, то обычный порядок следующий:

      manner + place + time

      I slept very well last night. (manner + time)
      He lives here now. (place + time)
      We worked hard at school yesterday. (manner + place + time)

   d. Обратите внимание, что наречие, как правило, не ставится между глаголом и его прямым дополнением.

      verb + direct object + adverb

      / like Maria very much. (Not: I like very much Maria.)
      He drank his coffee quickly. (Not: He drank quickly his coffee.)
      We played tennis yesterday. (Not: We played yesterday tennis.)
Некоторые наречия образа действия, места и времени могут также ставиться в начале предложения (если необходимо особо указать на образ действия, место или время).

Slowly, he started to walk away.
In London, we went to the zoo.
Tomorrow I have to go to the doctor's.

**EXERCISE 131 A**

Complete the sentences by putting the parts in brackets in the order: object + manner + place + time.

Example:
Annie did (last night | her homework | very quickly)
Annie did her homework very quickly last night.

1 Sue can play (now | very well | the piano)
2 I posted (early this morning | in the town centre | your letters)
3 The children have been playing (this afternoon | in the park | football)
4 It snowed (yesterday evening | heavily | in the north of Scotland)
5 They studied (carefully | later on in the day | the map)
6 He walked (out of the room | at the end of the meeting | angrily)
7 She played (at the concert | last night | beautifully | the guitar)

**Note**

Некоторые наречия образа действия могут употребляться с глаголами, например: He angrily walked out of the room. Некоторые наречия неопределенного времени, например still, already, just и неопределенной частотности, например, always, never могут употребляться с глаголами, например: I still love you, He always starts work at 8.00.

Относительно подробностей употребления наречий с глаголами см. 132.

**132 Adverb position with verbs**

(Положение наречия относительно глагола)

Некоторые наречия, например usually, never, always, probably, certainly, still, already, just, almost, могут употребляться только с глаголами:

1 Обычно наречие ставится перед смысловым глаголом.

**adverb + verb**

They usually watch TV in the evenings.
I never eat sweets.
He probably knows what to do.
We still live here.
Но наречие обычно ставится после глагола be или вспомогательных глаголов, например, have, will, can.

**be + adverb**

*They’re usually in bed by 11.30.*

*He’s probably at home now.*

*We’re still here.*

**auxiliary verb + adverb**

*I’ve never eaten Chinese food.*

*We’ll probably be late this evening.*

*I can never remember your phone number.*

Если имеется более одного вспомогательного глагола, то наречие обычно следует после первого.

*These curtains have never been cleaned.*

*Ken has probably been working all day.*

В отрицательных предложениях наречия вероятности, например probably, certainly, обычно следуют перед отрицанием won’t, not и т.д.

*We probably won’t be here tomorrow.* / *We’ll probably not be here tomorrow.*

**EXERCISE 132A**

Put the adverb in brackets into the correct place (with the verb).

Example:

*He’ll be in Paris until next Friday.* (probably)

*He’ll probably be in Paris until next Friday.*

1 They’ve been trying to contact us. (probably)

2 She went to the meeting last week. (probably)

3 They take their summer holidays in May. (normally)

4 Have you lived in a foreign country? (ever)

5 I’ve eaten Indian food. (never)

6 Do you live in the same flat? (still)

7 He wants to borrow the money. (only)

8 I won’t see Martin again until next weekend. (probably)

9 We’ve finished painting the outside of the house. (almost)

10 I try to go jogging at least three times a week. (always)

11 We haven’t got any time to lose. (certainly)

12 I can lend you some money until next week. (certainly)

13 He’s complaining about something. (always)

14 I don’t watch this TV programme. (usually)
133 Time: *still, yet and already*

(Время: до сих пор, (всё) ещё, (пока) уже)

1 *Still* [‘до сих пор, (всё) ещё'] употребляется перед смысловым глаголом, после *be* или вспомогательного глагола (см. 132).

> My brother is 18, but he *still* behaves like a child.

> ‘Has Andrew woken up?’ ‘No, he’s *still* asleep.’

*I can still remember the first time we met.*

Still также употребляется после подлежащего в отрицательных предложениях; в этом случае *still* может выражать нетерпение, нетерпеливость или удивление.

> They received the bill a month ago and they *still* haven’t paid it.

*I’ve known Mike for years, but I *still* don’t understand him.*

2 *Yet* [‘до сих пор; (пока) ещё’] употребляется только в вопросах и отрицательных предложениях; *yet* обычно ставится в конце предложения.

> Have you *had* your exam results yet?

*I wrote to her a week ago, but she hasn’t answered my letter yet.*

*Yet* часто употребляется после *not* в отрицательных кратких ответах.

> ‘Have you passed your driving test yet?’ ‘No, not *yet.*’

3 Обычно *already* [‘уже, ранее’] ставится перед смысловым глаголом, после *be* или вспомогательного глагола (см. 132).

> You *don’t* need to tell Ken the news; he *already* knows.

> ‘What time is Sue going to be *here*?’ ‘She’s *already* here.’

> ‘Could you do the washing up?’ ‘I’ve *already* done it.’

*Already* может также употребляться в конце предложения для эмфазы.

> I’ve seen the film *already*.

> *Have you finished* *already*?

**EXERCISE 133 A**

Complete the sentences using *still, yet or already.*

Example:

Is Lynne *still* here, or has she gone home?

1 When we arrived at the cinema, the *film* had ____ started.

2 Paul has been looking for a job for ages, but he ____ hasn’t found one _____.

3 Do you ____ drive the same car or have you sold it?

4 Have you had your exam results, or are you ____ waiting for them?

5 She only started the book yesterday, but she’s finished it_____.

6 ‘They started the job ages ago. Haven’t they finished it ____?’ ‘No, not ____.’
EXERCISE 133B

Put the word in brackets in the correct place in the sentence. Sometimes two answers are possible.

Example:
The meeting started three hours ago and it still hasn’t finished, (still)
1 You needn’t clean the kitchen; I’ve done it. (already)
2 You don’t need to tell me; I know what to do. (already)
3 Haven’t you received your invitation to the party? (yet)
4 I can’t decide what to do this evening. (still)
5 I can remember the first time I flew in a plane. (still)
6 Robert works for the same company in London. (still)

EXERCISE 134A

Put the correct word in brackets in the correct place in the sentence.

Example:
I don’t want to stay here. (any more/no longer)
/ don’t want to stay here any more.

1 Sue works for the same company in London. (any longer/no longer)
2 My brother isn’t a young child. (any more/no longer)
3 Her father is unemployed. (any longer/no longer)
4 There is a large ship-building industry in Britain. (any more/no longer)
135 Adverbs of frequency (Наречия частотности)

Adverbs of frequency указывают, как часто что-то происходит.

Examples:
always normally usually frequently often occasionally rarely seldom hardly ever never ever

1 Adverbs of frequency обычно ставятся перед смысловым глаголом, но после be и вспомогательного глагола.

*They usually watch TV.*  
She never eats sweets.  
*I always go to work by bus.*  
They're usually in bed by 11.30.  
She's never eaten Chinese food.  
*I'll always remember you.*

Когда употребляется более одного вспомогательного глагола, наречие обычно следует после первого вспомогательного глагола.

These curtains have never been cleaned.  
Have you ever been invited to one of his parties?

2 Sometimes, usually, normally, frequently, often и occasionally могут ставиться в начале или в конце предложения.

Sometimes I walk to work.  
Do you see your parents often?

3 Adverbs phrases of frequency, например every evening, once a week, обычно ставятся в конце (или начале) предложения.

They watch TV every evening.  
I go swimming once a week.

4 Adverbs of definite frequency, например daily, weekly, monthly, yearly, обычно ставятся в конце предложения.

The post is delivered here twice daily.

EXERCISE 135A

Put the adverbs in order of frequency.

| all the time | (1) | always |
| (2) | normally | usually |
| (3) | — | — |
| (4) | — | — |
| (5) | — | — |
| (6) | — | — |
| (7) | — | — |

at no time

212
**EXERCISE 135B**

Put the adverbs in the correct place in the sentences. Sometimes more than one answer is possible.

Example:

She *always* tries to visit her parents at the **weekends**. (always)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>1 I've seen that programme on TV. (never)</th>
<th>2 He’s late for <strong>appointments</strong>. (hardly ever)</th>
<th>3 They go to the cinema <strong>nowadays</strong>. (rarely)</th>
<th>4 Is he bad-tempered? (often)</th>
<th>5 They listen to the <strong>radio</strong>. (every morning)</th>
<th>6 I'm at home before <strong>8 o'clock</strong>. (seldom)</th>
<th>7 Have you had a really serious illness? (ever)</th>
<th>8 I'll forget our holiday <strong>together</strong>. (never)</th>
<th>9 She's been interested in <strong>music</strong>. (always)</th>
<th>10 I brush my teeth. (always/three times a day)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Number</td>
<td>Sentence</td>
<td>Adverb</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>I've seen that programme on TV.</td>
<td>(never)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>He’s late for <strong>appointments</strong>.</td>
<td>(hardly ever)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>They go to the cinema <strong>nowadays</strong>.</td>
<td>(rarely)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Is he bad-tempered?</td>
<td>(often)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>They listen to the <strong>radio</strong>.</td>
<td>(every morning)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>I'm at home before <strong>8 o'clock</strong>.</td>
<td>(seldom)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Have you had a really serious illness?</td>
<td>(ever)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>I'll forget our holiday <strong>together</strong>.</td>
<td>(never)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>She's been interested in <strong>music</strong>.</td>
<td>(always)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>I brush my teeth.</td>
<td>(always/three times a day)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Adverbs of probability (Наречия вероятности)**

Adverbs of probability указывают, насколько мы уверены относительно чего-то.

Examples:

- *certainly*
- *definitely*
- *obviously*
- *probably*

1. Adverbs of probability обычно ставятся перед смысловым глаголом, но после *be* и вспомогательного глагола (см. 132).

   - *He probably knows* your address.
   - *They definitely saw* me.
   - *She obviously likes* you.
   - *He’s probably at home now.*
   - *They’ve definitely gone out.*
   - *She can obviously do the job.*

2. В отрицательных предложениях adverbs of probability обычно ставятся перед отрицанием *won’t*, *isn’t*, *not* и др.

   - *She probably won’t be late.*
   - *He certainly isn’t at home now.*
   - *They’re obviously not very happy.*

3. *Perhaps* и *maybe* обычно следуют в начале предложения.

   - *Perhaps I’ll see you later.*
   - *Maybe you’re right.*

   *Maybe* употребляется в разговорной речи.
**EXERCISE 136A**

Put the adverbs in the correct place in the sentence.

Example:

In the future, machines will *probably* do many of the jobs that people do *today*. (probably)

1 Simon is at Sarah's house at the moment.
   (probably)
2 There will be an election early next year.
   (probably)
3 We’ll play tennis later this *afternoon*. (perhaps)
4 They enjoyed the film *very much*. (obviously)

5 You should go and see the *doctor*. (definitely)

6 I don’t want to be home late *tonight*. (definitely)

7 Computers are becoming more and more *important* in our *lives*. (certainly)

8 The bridge has been repaired by now. (probably)

---

**137 Fairly, quite, rather and pretty (Довольно, вполне и достаточно)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>Наречия <em>fairly, quite, rather</em> и <em>pretty</em> определяют прилагательные или другие наречия. Они обычно ставятся перед прилагательными или наречиями, которые они определяют.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>The film was quite good</em>. (adverb + adjective) / <em>know her fairly well</em>. (adverb + adverb)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Compare:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Graph" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| a | Вообще *quite* немного слабее, чем *fairly*.  
*I’m fairly tired, but I don’t think I’ll go to bed yet.*  
*I’m quite tired. I think I’ll go to bed now.* |
| b | *Rather* сильнее, чем *quite*; *rather* может употребляться для выражения ‘более, чем обычно’, ‘более чем желаемое’ или ‘более чем ожидаемое’.  
*The TV is rather loud. Shall I turn it down?*  
*We’re rather late. We’d better hurry.*  
*The concert was rather good. I was surprised.* |
| c | *Pretty* может употребляться с таким же значением, как *rather*; *pretty* употребляется в более неофициальном стиле.  
*We’re pretty hungry. We haven’t eaten all day.* |
| d | Но обратите внимание на то, что значения *fairly, quite, rather* и *pretty* могут зависеть от ударения и интонации.  
*He’s quite ’nice*. (более положительное)  
*He’s ’quite’ nice*. (менее положительное) |
**Fairly, quite, rather and pretty**

3 **Quite** ставится перед a/an, *fairly*, *a pretty* после a. Compare:

*He's quite a young man.*  
*It was quite an interesting film.*

*He's fairly young man.*  
*It was fairly interesting film.*

**Rather** может ставиться перед или после *a/an*.

*It was rather an interesting film.*  
*It was a rather interesting film.*

4 **Quite** и **rather** могут также определять глаголы; эти слова ставятся перед смысловым глаголом, но после вспомогательного глагола (см. 132).

*She quite enjoyed the film.*  
*I rather like driving at night.*  
*He's quite enjoying himself.*

5 **Rather**, но не **fairly**, **quite** или **pretty** употребляются перед сравнительной степенью прилагательных.

*rather colder*  
*rather more expensive*

6 **Quite** может также означать ‘совершенно, вполне, совсем’ с некоторыми прилагательными.

*The animal was quite dead.* (= совсем мертвым)

**Quite** может означать ‘совсем’ только с такими ‘неградуированными’ прилагательными, как *dead* (обычно что-то не может быть более или менее мертвым; оно или мертвое или нет).

**More examples:**

*The meal was quite perfect.* (= достаточно вкусное)
*The story is quite untrue.* (= вполне неправдоподобный)

С некоторыми наречиями и глаголами *quite* также употребляется в значении ‘довольно, достаточно’.

*She sang quite perfectly.* (= довольно прекрасно)
*I quite understand.* (= достаточно понимаю)

**EXERCISE 137A**

Complete each sentence using the correct word in brackets. Sometimes either word is possible.

Examples:

*She’s quite a generous woman.* (quite/fairly)
*It's rather/fairly cold in this room.* (rather/fairly)

1 I've made ____ a stupid **mistake**. (pretty/rather)
2 She ____ enjoys working at **night**. (fairly/quite)
3 It was a ____ boring football **match**. (pretty/rather)
4 I'm ____ looking forward to the party on **Saturday**. (pretty/quite)
5 The weather was ____ worse than **we'd expected**. (quite/rather)
6 My grandfather was ____ an amazing man. (quite/fairly)
7 Maria speaks English ____ well, doesn't she? (quite/pretty)
8 I'm feeling ____ better **today**. (fairly/rather)
EXERCISE 137B

Complete the sentences using the most suitable expression in the box. Use each expression only once.

Example:
There was nothing in the envelope.
It was quite empty.

1 He's not at all like his sister; they're ______
2 This clock keeps on breaking down. It's really ______
3 I like your idea. It's really ______; I've never heard anything like it before.
4 'What are you going to do this evening?' 'I'm not ______'
5 We can't finish the job by tomorrow. It's ______

138 Too and enough (Слишком и достаточно)

1 Too ставится перед прилагательными и наречиями; enough - после них.
   / don't think I'll go out tonight. I'm too tired.
   Slow down! You're driving too fast.
   Are you warm enough, or do you want me to switch on the heating?
   We aren't working quickly enough. We'd better hurry.

2 Too many, too much и enough ставятся перед существительными:
   a Too many ставится перед исчисляемыми существительными (например, eggs), a too much
   - перед неисчисляемыми существительными (например, salt).

   I bought too many eggs.
   There's too much salt in this soup.

   b Enough употребляется как перед исчисляемыми, так и перед неисчисляемыми
   существительными.

   We can't make an omelette. We haven't got enough eggs.
   There's enough salt in the soup. It doesn't need any more.

   Too many, too much и enough могут употребляться отдельно, без существительного.

   'Is there enough salt in the soup?' 'There's too much. I can't eat it'
   We need some more eggs. We haven't got enough.

3 После too и enough можно употреблять for + object [дополнение].
   This jacket is too small for me.
   The flat isn't really big enough for all of us.

4 После too и enough можно употреблять to infinitive.
   It's too early to have dinner.
   He isn't old enough to drive a car.
Может также употребляться конструкция *too/enough + for + object + to infinitive.*

*It's too early for us to have dinner.*
*This jacket isn't large enough for me to wear.*

Too (но не enough) может определяться словами *much, a lot, far [очень], a little, a bit, rather.*

*much too heavy*    *far too cold*    *a bit too fast*

Compare *very* and *too:*

Too (но не very) имеет отрицательное значение 'более чем необходимо' или 'более чем хороший'.

*She's a good worker. She works very quickly.*    *He works too quickly and makes a lot of mistakes.*
*They arrived at the airport very late, but they just caught their plane.*    *They arrived at the airport too late and missed their plane.*

**EXERCISE 138A**

Complete each sentence using *too* or *enough* and an adjective or adverb in the box.

Example:

Annie can't go to school today. She has got a temperature and isn't *well enough* to get up.

**warm dark well early quietly loud**

1 We couldn't see what was in the room because it was____
2 I couldn't hear everything she said because she spoke____
3 They missed their plane because they *didn't* leave home____
4 He told them the music was____ so they turned it down.
5 We didn't go to the beach yesterday because the weather was____.

**EXERCISE 138B**

Complete the sentences using *too much, too many* or *enough.*

Example:

We've been so busy today we didn't even have *enough* time for lunch.

1 I'd like to go to the cinema, but I haven't got____ money.
2 I can't drink this soup. It's got____ salt in it.
3 Doctors say that____ sugar is bad for you.
4 We didn't really enjoy the party; there were far____ people there.
5 We couldn't make an omelette because we didn't have____ eggs.
EXERCISE 138C

Join these ideas using *too/enough* + *to* infinitive, or *too/enough* + *for* + object + *to* infinitive.

Examples:

Annie isn’t old enough. She can’t leave school.  
*Annie isn’t old enough to leave school.*

The weather was too bad. We couldn’t go out.  
*The weather was too bad for us to go out.*

1 I’m too tired. I can’t go to the cinema this evening.  
2 The table was too heavy. I couldn’t move it.  
3 The children aren’t tall enough. They can’t reach that shelf.  
4 They arrived too late. They didn’t see the beginning of the film.  
5 Our old flat was much too small. We couldn’t live in it.  
6 He kept too quietly. The people at the back of the room couldn’t hear.

139 *So and such*  
*(Так, до какой степени, такой)*

1 *Such* ставится перед существительным с прилагательным или без него.

*She’s such a nice woman.*  
*Don’t be such a fool!*

*So* ставится перед одним прилагательным, без существительного.

*She’s so nice.*  
*Don’t be so foolish!*

*So* может употребляться с наречием.

*He works so slowly.*

2 *So (но не *such*)* может употребляться с *many* и *much*.

*There were so many people on the train.*  
*I’ve got so much to do today. I’m really busy.*

*Such (но не *so*)* может употребляться перед *a lot (of).*

*There were such a lot of people on the train.*  
*I’ve got such a lot to do today. I’m really busy.*

3 После *so* и *such* может употребляться придаточное предложение с *that* (*that-clause*) для выражения результата (см. 162.2).

*The table was so heavy that I couldn’t move it.*  
*It was such a beautiful afternoon that we went to the beach.*
EXERCISE 139A
Complete the sentences using so or such.

Example:
It was such a good film. I really enjoyed it.

1. She's ______ shy. She always gets very nervous when she meets people.
2. You shouldn’t eat ______ quickly; you'll give yourself indigestion.
3. It's ______ an interesting town; there really is ______ much to do there.
4. I was ______ disappointed when I failed my driving test.
5. He felt ______ tired that he decided not to go out.
6. It was ______ a hot day that they had to open all the windows.
7. I've made ______ many mistakes in this letter, I think I'll type it again.
8. He had ______ a lot of luggage that we couldn’t get it all into the car.

Note
- So также употребляется для выражения результата, например: I was hungry so I made something to eat. СМ. 162.2.
- So that и so as to также употребляются для выражения причины, например: I gave her my address so that she could write to me. СМ. 163.3.

40 Comparison: adverbs (Сравнение: наречие)

1. Form of comparative and superlative adverbs

Большинство наречий образуют сравнительную степень (comparative) с помощью more, а превосходную (superlative) - с помощью most.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>形容词形式</th>
<th>形容词形式</th>
<th>形容词形式</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>beautifully</td>
<td>more beautifully</td>
<td>most beautifully</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>carefully</td>
<td>more carefully</td>
<td>most carefully</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Односложные наречия, например fast, hard, late, long, soon, образуют сравнительную степень (comparative) с помощью -er, а превосходную (superlative) - с помощью -est.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>形容词形式</th>
<th>形容词形式</th>
<th>形容词形式</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fast</td>
<td>faster</td>
<td>fastest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hard</td>
<td>harder</td>
<td>hardest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Но обратите внимание: early (ear-ly) также образует степень с помощью -er/-est: earlier → earliest.

Когда к словам присоединяется -er/-est, иногда происходят изменения в написании, например, early → earlie. См. 188.3, 4,6.

Наречия well, badly far образуют сравнительную и превосходную степень не по общим правилам.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>形容词形式</th>
<th>形容词形式</th>
<th>形容词形式</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>well</td>
<td>better</td>
<td>best</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>badly</td>
<td>worse</td>
<td>worst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>far</td>
<td>farther/further</td>
<td>farthest/furthest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Comparison: adverbs

**Making comparisons using adverbs** (Сравнения с помощью наречий)

Для образования сравнений с помощью наречий или прилагательных употребляются те же **конструкции**:

**a**
comparatives (see 127.2)

*You should drive more carefully.*
*They arrived later than I'd expected.*

**b**
comparative + *and* + comparative (see 127.2)

*It snowed more and more heavily as the day went on.*

**c**
*the* + comparative clause, *the* + comparative clause (see 127.2)

*The sooner we leave, the earlier we'll arrive.*

**d**
superlatives (see 127.3)

*She runs the fastest of all the girls.*

**e**
*as... as* (see 128)

*I'm working as fast as I can.*
*Mike can't play the guitar as/so well as Sarah.*

---

**EXERCISE 140A**

Complete the sentences using the correct form of the words in brackets. Add *than, the* or *as* where necessary.

Examples:

Of all those cars, the Alfa Romeo goes **the fastest**. (fast)
*I don't work as **hard** as Sally **does**. (hard)*
*We finished the job a lot more **quickly** than we'd **expected**. (quickly)*

1. She always arrives at work much _____ anyone else. (early)
2. The children are behaving far _____ they normally do. (badly)
3. Of all the animals in the world, which one lives _____? (long)
4. Our new central heating system works a lot _____ our old one did. (efficiently)
5. He doesn't speak French as _____ his sister. (fluently)
6. The car went _____ and _____ down the hill. (fast)
7. They normally play much _____ they did last night. (well)
8. Andrew is studying a lot _____ usual now that his exams are getting closer. (hard)

**Note**

В неофициальном стиле часто употребляются объективные местоимения *me, him* после *than* и *as*, например: *You run faster than me. I can't swim as well as him.* В более официальном стиле употребляются субъектные местоимения */, he + verb*, например: *You run faster than I do. I can't swim as well as he can.* Некоторые считают более правильной форму подлежащее + глагол.
**Negative statements (Отрицательные утверждения)**

Negative statements образуются с помощью *not* (стяжение *n’t*) после вспомогательного глагола (например, *be, have, can*).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive Statement</th>
<th>Negative Statement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>We’re leaving.</em></td>
<td><em>We aren’t leaving.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>They’ve finished.</em></td>
<td><em>They haven’t finished.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>He can swim.</em></td>
<td><em>He can’t swim.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>I may go to the party.</em></td>
<td>/ <em>may not go to the party.</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Negative statements также образуются с помощью *not/n’t* после смыслового глагола *be* и после *have* в *have got*.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive Statement</th>
<th>Negative Statement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>I’m hungry.</em></td>
<td><em>I’m not hungry.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>She’s got a car.</em></td>
<td><em>She hasn’t got a car.</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

В *present simple* и *past simple* отсутствует вспомогательный глагол, поэтому употребляется *do/does* (в *present simple*) и *did* (в *past simple*) перед *not/n’t*.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive Statement</th>
<th>Negative Statement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>I smoke.</em></td>
<td>/ <em>don’t smoke.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>She lives in London.</em></td>
<td><em>She doesn’t live in London.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>We went out last night.</em></td>
<td><em>We didn’t go out last night.</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Обратите внимание, что после *do, does* и *did* глагол всегда стоит в форме *infinitive* без *to*, например, *smoke, live, go*.

Если употребляется два и более вспомогательных глагола, *not/n’t* ставится после первого.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive Statement</th>
<th>Negative Statement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>He’s been working.</em></td>
<td><em>He hasn’t been working.</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Относительно отрицательных стяжений, например, *aren’t (= are not), don’t (= do not)*, см. 189.

**EXERCISE 141 A**

Make these statements into negatives.

Examples:

1. *I’m going to apply for the job.*
   *I’m not going to apply for the job.*
2. *She got up very early this morning.*
   *She didn’t get up very early this morning.*
3. *I like travelling by train.*
4. *He was late for the appointment.*
5. *We’ve got a lot of time.*
6. *The weather is very nice today.*
7. *She can come to the party on Saturday.*
8. *I’ve been working too hard recently.*
9. *She’s got a very interesting job.*
10. *They may have gone home.*
11. *We saw you at school yesterday.*
12. *The bank opens on Saturday afternoons.*
13. *My sister is going to work tomorrow.*
14. *The telephone has been repaired.*
15. *We play tennis every weekend.*
16. *I’ll be seeing Martin tomorrow.*

**Note**

- Отрицательная форма повелительного наклонения образуется путем употребления *not/n’t* после *do*, например: *Don’t shout*. См. 30.1.
- Другие отрицательные слова, например *never*, употребляются для образования отрицательного утверждения, например: / *never smoke.*
Yes/No questions (Вопросы Да/Нет)

1 Yes/No question - это вопрос, который требует ответа Yes или No.

‘Is Sue coming?’ ‘Yes. ’ ‘No.’
‘Have they finished?’ ‘Yes. ’ ‘No.’

2 Questions образуются путем изменения порядка подлежащего (например, Sue, they, he) и вспомогательного глагола (например, be, have, can).

Sue is coming. → Is Sue coming?
They have finished. → Have they finished?
You can cook. → Can you cook?

Questions со смысловым глаголом be образуются таким же образом.

They are English. → Are they English?

Questions с have got образуются путем изменения порядка подлежащего и have.

He has got a car. → Has he got a car?

Если в предложении два и более вспомогательных слов, изменяется порядок подлежащего и первого вспомогательного слова.

He has been waiting. → Has he been waiting?

В present simple и past simple отсутствует вспомогательный глагол, поэтому употребляется do/does в present simple questions и did в past simple questions.

They live here. → Do they live here?
She likes tennis. → Does she like tennis?
He enjoyed the film. → Did he enjoy the film?

Обратите внимание, что после do, does и did глагол всегда стоит в форме infinitive без to, например, live, like, enjoy.

EXERCISE 142A

Make Yes/No questions from these statements.

Examples:

She lives in London. Does she live in London?
You’d like a cup of coffee. Would you like a cup of coffee?

1 They played tennis yesterday.
2 He’s doing his homework.
3 She’s got a lot to do today.
4 They’ve bought a new car.
5 You know Simon Robinson.

6 He can play the piano and the guitar.
7 The shop closes at 6 o’clock.
8 You’d like to go swimming.
9 The job will be finished soon.
EXERCISE 142B

Complete the Yes/No questions, as in the examples.

Examples:
'I’ll be at home this evening.' ‘Will you be there at 7 o’clock?’
'He likes most sports.' ‘Does he like tennis?’

1 They visited Milan.’ ‘_____ Rome?’
2 ‘She bought some coffee.’ ‘_____ any milk?’
3 ‘She’s got two sisters.’ ‘_____ any brothers?’
4 ‘I speak Italian.’ ‘_____ Spanish?’
5 ‘They’ve gone out.’ ‘_____ into town?’
6 ‘I can play the guitar.’ ‘_____ the piano?’
7 ‘He works eight hours a day.’ ‘_____ on Saturdays!'
8 ‘I’m going to the cinema.’ ‘_____ on your own?’

Note

Иногда при постановке вопросов Yes/No утверждение произносится с восходящей интонацией, например: You’re English? Так же образом часто ставится вопрос, когда говорящему что-то известно и он обращается за подтверждением. Так же образом выражается удивление, например: You’re only 18? I thought you were at least 18!

43 Wh- questions (Вопросы, начинающиеся с Wh-)

1 Wh- questions начинаются с вопросительных слов: what, where, who, whose, when, why, which, how (CM. 145).
   What is she reading?
   Where do they live?

2 Questions образуются путем изменения порядка подлежащего (например, she, they, we) и вспомогательного глагола (например, be, have, can).
   She is reading. → What is she reading?
   They have gone. → Where have they gone?
   We can start. → When can we start?

Questions со смысловым глаголом be образуются таким же образом.
   He is here. → Why is he here?

Questions с have got образуются путем изменения порядка подлежащего и have.
   He has got your key. → Why has he got your key?

Если имеется два и более вспомогательных глагола, изменяется порядок подлежащего и первого вспомогательного глагола.
   He has been reading. → What has he been reading?

В present simple и past simple отсутствует вспомогательный глагол, поэтому употребляется do/does в present simple questions и did в past simple questions (но см. 144).
   They start work. → When do they start work?
   She goes to school. → Where does she go to school?
   He arrived. → When did he arrive?

Обратите внимание, что после do, does и did глагол всегда стоит в форме infinitive без to, например, start, go, arrive.
EXERCISE 143A

Complete the questions, as in the examples.

Examples:

They went to the station. ‘What time did they go there?’
‘I’ve got some money.’ ‘How much have you got?’

1 ‘We’re going.’ ‘Where ______?’
2 ‘I’m worried.’ ‘Why ______ worried?’
3 ‘I was reading.’ ‘What ______?’
4 ‘He visits his grandparents.’ ‘How often ______ them?’
5 ‘They’ll do it.’ ‘When ______ it?’
6 ‘She’s been waiting outside.’ ‘How long ______ there?’

7 ‘I come from Australia.’ ‘Which part of Australia ______ from?’
8 ‘I’ve got a car.’ ‘What kind of car ______?’
9 ‘We bought some wine.’ ‘How much wine ______?’
10 ‘She likes pop music.’ ‘What kind of pop music ______?’
11 ‘We saw a film.’ ‘Which film ______?’
12 ‘She was talking to someone.’ ‘Who ______ to?’

144 Subject and object questions
(Вопросы к подлежащему и дополнению)

С помощью who можно поставить вопрос к подлежащему или дополнению. Compare:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Asking about the object</th>
<th>Asking about the subject</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SUBJECT</td>
<td>OBJECT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frank loves ______ someone.</td>
<td>Who does Frank love?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tina phoned ______ someone.</td>
<td>Who did Tina phone?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ken is helping ______ someone.</td>
<td>Who is Ken helping?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Когда с помощью who ставится вопрос к подлежащему, глагол имеет ту же форму, что и в утверждении, например, loves, phoned, is helping, a do, does не употребляется в present simple и did - в past simple.
2 What, which и how many можно также употреблять при постановке вопроса к подлежащему.

‘What made that noise?’ ‘It was the cat.’
‘Which car goes the fastest?’ ‘The Mercedes.’
‘How many people went to the party?’ ‘About fifty.’

EXERCISE 144A
Ask questions with who or what.

Examples:
She wants to see someone.  Who does she want to see?
Someone wants to see her.  Who wants to see her?
Someone told me.  Who told you?

1 I told someone.
2 Someone wrote to me.
3 I wrote to someone.
4 Something is making that noise.
5 He’s making something.
6 Someone makes the decisions.

7 They helped someone.
8 Someone helped them.
9 She was looking for someone.
10 Someone was looking for her.
11 Something moved.
12 Someone gave me the book.

45 Question words (Вопросительные слова)

1 What, who and which (Что, кто и какой)
a What c существительным (например, what colour, what nationality) или без существительного употребляется для того, чтобы поставить вопрос о предметах или вещах.
What colour is your car?
What nationality is Maria?
What is Ken doing?
What would you like to drink?
What иногда можно употреблять, чтобы поставить вопрос о людях.
What actors do you like?
b Who без существительного употребляется, чтобы спросить о людях.
Who is your favourite actor?
Who told you the news?
c Which с существительным или без него употребляется для того, чтобы спросить о предметах или людях, когда существует ограниченный выбор.
Which colour do you like best - red, blue or yellow?
Which actor do you prefer - Robert de Niro or Dustin Hoffman?
Which would you like - wine or beer?
Но очень часто who употребляется даже в случае, когда существует ограниченный выбор.

Who do you prefer - Robert de Niro or Dustin Hoffman?

Which one часто употребляется вместо who или what, когда существует ограниченный выбор.

Which one do you prefer - Robert de Niro or Dustin Hoffman?

Which one do you want - the red one or the blue one?

Можно также употреблять which of ...

Which of these colours do you like best?

Whose (Чей)

Whose употребляется с существительным или без него, чтобы поставить вопрос о принадлежности.

‘Whose book is this?’ ‘It’s Maria’s.’

‘Whose are these?’ ‘They’re mine.’

Where, when, why and how (Где, когда, почему и как)

Where употребляется, чтобы поставить вопрос о месте.

‘Where are you going on holiday?’ ‘To Greece.’

‘Where does Sue live?’ ‘In London.’

When употребляется, чтобы поставить вопрос о времени.

‘When were you born?’ ‘In 1970.’

‘When is she leaving?’ ‘At 2 o’clock.’

Why употребляется, чтобы поставить вопрос о причине и цели.

‘Why are you late?’ ‘Because my car broke down.’

‘Why did you go out?’ ‘To do some shopping.’

How употребляется, чтобы поставить вопрос ‘каким образом?’

‘How did you get here?’ ‘I came by bus.’

‘How do you spell your name?’ ‘D-A-V-I-S.’

How употребляется в приветствиях и при знакомстве, а также, чтобы поставить вопрос о состоянии здоровья.

‘How are you?’ ‘I’m fine, thanks. And you?’

‘How do you do?’ ‘How do you do? I’m pleased to meet you.’

How is your mother now? Is she feeling any better?

How употребляется с прилагательными (например, old, tall) и наречиями (например, often, well), а также с much и many.

‘How old are you?’ ‘I’m 18.’

‘How often do you go to the cinema?’ ‘About once a week.’

How much money have you got with you?

How many brothers and sisters have you got?
EXERCISE 145A

Look at the answers and complete the questions using the question words in the box.

Example:

‘How old are you?’ ‘I’m 20.’

1. ‘___ do you do?’ ‘I’m a student.’
2. ‘___ do you live?’ ‘In London.’
3. ‘___ have you lived there?’ ‘For two years.’
4. ‘___ brothers and sisters have you got?’ ‘Two brothers and two sisters.’
5. ‘___ is your favourite pop singer?’ ‘Michael Jackson.’
6. ‘___ is your birthday?’ ‘November the 3rd.’
7. ‘___ do you play tennis?’ ‘About once a week.’
8. ‘___ does it cost to play tennis in Britain?’ ‘It’s not very expensive.’
9. ‘___ bag is this?’ ‘I think it’s Simon’s.’
10. ‘___ do you usually get to work?’ ‘By car.’
11. ‘___ of those girls is your sister?’ ‘She’s the one in the black skirt.’
12. ‘___ are you smiling?’ ‘Oh, I’ve just thought of something funny.’

Negative questions (ОТРИЦАТЕЛЬНЫЕ ВОПРОСЫ)

Negative questions образуются с помощью стяжения n’t, которое ставится после вспомогательного глагола (например, be, have, can).

Aren’t you watching TV?
Haven’t they finished yet?
Can’t he swim?

Negative questions также образуются с помощью n ’t, которое ставится после смыслового глагола be и have в have got.

Aren’t you Simon Robinson?
Haven’t they got any money?

Если имеется два и более вспомогательных глагола, n’t ставится после первого.

Haven’t you been listening?

В present simple и past simple отсутствует вспомогательный глагол, поэтому употребляется do/does (в present simple) и did (в past simple) перед n ’t.

Don’t you smoke?
Doesn’t she live here any more?
Didn’t they go to the cinema?
Порядок слов отличается, когда употребляется полная форма not вместо n’t. Compare:

Are you not watching the TV?  Aren’t you watching the TV?
Does she not live here any more?  Doesn’t she live here any more?

Форма с not более официальна и не столь распространена.

Negative questions часто употребляются для выражения удивления, разочарования или раздражения.

Don’t you smoke? I thought you did.
Hasn’t she finished the letter yet? She’s been typing it all morning!

Negative questions распространены в восклицаниях.

Isn’t it a terrible day!

Negative questions также употребляются, когда мы полагаем, что знаем что-то и просим подтверждения.

‘Aren’t you Simon Robinson?’ ‘Yes, that’s right.’ ‘I thought you were.’

Обратите внимание на значения yes и no в ответах на отрицательные вопросы.

‘Didn’t they see the film?’ ‘Yes.’ (= Yes, they saw the film.) / ‘No.’ (= No, they didn’t see the film.)

EXERCISE 146A

Make negative questions using the contraction n’t and the words in brackets.

Example:
I posted the letter to you over a week ago! Haven’t you received (you | have | received it yet?)

1 Why aren’t you eating your dinner? (you | do | like it?)
2 ‘Look! ______(that | is | your brother over there?)’ ‘Oh, yes.’
3 ‘I really must go now.’ ‘But it’s only half past nine——(you | can | stay a little longer?)
4 ‘_____ (she | is | a pretty child!)’ ‘Yes, lovely.’
5 _____(I | have | met you somewhere before?) I’m sure I know your face.
6 ‘Sally is still in bed.’ ‘_____ (she | is | going to work today?)
7 _____(you | do | want to come to the concert tonight?) I thought you said you did.

147 Question tags

(Краткий общий вопрос в конце расчленённого вопроса)

1 Study the examples. [Рассмотрите примеры].

It’s cold today, isn’t it?
You haven’t seen my keys, have you?

Question tag представляет собой выражение isn’t it? и have you?, которое ставится в конце утверждения.
2. Question tags образуются с помощью вспомогательного глагола (например, be, have, can) + personal pronoun (например, it, you):

You aren’t listening to me, are you?
You haven’t seen my keys, have you?
He can swim, can’t he?

Question tag имеет тот же вспомогательный глагол, что и в главном предложении.
Если в главном предложении смысловой глагол be, в question tag употребляется be.

It’s cold today, isn’t it?
Если в главном предложении имеется have got, в question tag употребляется have.

You haven’t got a stamp, have you?
Если имеется два и более вспомогательных глагола, в question tag используется первый.

He hasn’t been waiting long, has he?
Do/does используется в present simple question tags, a did в past simple question tags.

You don’t like football, do you?
Simon lives in London, doesn’t he?
You saw the film, didn’t you?

3. Обычно negative question tag употребляется с положительным утверждением, a positive question tag - с отрицательным. Compare:

- +

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>It isn’t cold today, is it?</th>
<th>It’s cold today, isn’t it?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>You don’t like football, do you?</td>
<td>You like football, don’t you?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He can’t swim, can he?</td>
<td>He can swim, can’t he?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Значение question tag зависит от интонации:

a. Если ставится реальный вопрос, используется восходящая интонация (голос подымается вверх).

You haven’t seen my keys, have you? (= Have you seen my keys?)

b. Но если есть уверенность в ответе и вопрос ставится, чтобы получить согласие собеседника, используется нисходящая интонация (голос падает вниз).

It’s cold today, isn’t it? (= It’s cold. Don’t you agree?)

c. Negative statement + positive question tag часто употребляется для того, чтобы попросить кого-то о чем-то, попросить помочь или предоставить информацию.

- +

| You couldn’t lend me some money, could you? | You don’t know where Peter lives, do you? |
5 Обратите внимание:

a Question tag для / am будет aren’t I?
I’m right, aren’t I?

b После повелительного наклонения можно употреблять question tags will/would you? и can/can’t could you?, когда мы хотим, чтобы кто-то что-то сделал.

Switch on the light, will you?
Help me with these bags, could you?

После повелительного наклонения в отрицательной форме употребляется will you?

Don’t forget to post my letter, will you?

c После let’s употребляется shall we? для внесения предложения.

Let’s listen to some music, shall we?

d В question tags после somebody/someone, everybody/everyone и nobody/no one употребляется they.

Somebody told you, didn’t they?
No one phoned for me, did they?

e В question tags после nothing употребляется it.

Nothing is wrong, is it?

f В question tags может употребляться there как подлежащее.

There won’t be any problems, will there?

EXERCISE 147A

Put a question tag at the end of each sentence. Sometimes more than one answer is possible.

Example:

It’s a good restaurant.
It’s a good restaurant, isn’t it?

1 You don’t like this music.
2 Robert isn’t at work today.
3 I’m too late.
4 You haven’t seen the newspaper.
5 Lynne speaks French and German.
6 They didn’t go to the concert.
7 You’d like to have something to eat.
8 We’re leaving tomorrow.
9 You couldn’t do me a favour.
10 You don’t know where Sarah is.
11 Switch on the light for me.
12 Don’t forget to lock the door.
13 Nobody was watching the TV.
14 Everyone will be here soon.
15 Nothing terrible has happened.
16 There’s plenty of time.
17 Pass me that magazine.
18 Let’s have a cup of tea.
148 Reply questions (Ответные вопросы)

1 Study the examples.

‘I’m going to bed now.’ ‘Are you? Oh, good night, then.’
‘He can’t swim.’ ‘Can’t he? I thought he could.’

Мы часто отвечаем с помощью ‘reply questions’ - кратких вопросов, образованных из вспомогательного глагола + personal pronoun, например, Are you? и Can’t he?

Эти reply questions не являются настоящими вопросами; они часто лишь свидетельствуют, что мы слушаем. Они могут выражать интерес, сочувствие, удивление или гнев, в зависимости от интонации.

2 В reply questions употребляются те же вспомогательные глаголы, что и в предложении, на которое мы отвечаем.

‘I’m going to bed now.’ ‘Are you? Oh, good night, then.’
‘We’ve finished.’ ‘Have you?’

Если предложение содержит смысловой глагол be, то он употребляется и в reply question.

‘I’m hungry.’ ‘Are you? I’ll make you something to eat.’

Если в предложении имеется have got, то и в reply question употребляется have.

‘I’ve got a headache.’ ‘Oh, have you? Do you want some aspirin?’

Если в предложении два и более вспомогательных глагола, то в reply question употребляется первый.

‘I’ve been waiting for an hour.’ ‘Have you?’

Do/does употребляется в present simple reply questions, а did в past simple reply questions.

‘I like football.’ ‘Do you?’
‘She lives in Brighton.’ ‘Does she?’
‘We saw the film.’ ‘Did you?’

3 Положительные reply questions употребляются для ответа на положительные утверждения, а отрицательные - на отрицательные. Compare:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>-</th>
<th>+</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

‘He can’t swim.’ ‘Can’t he?’ ‘He can swim.’ ‘Can he?’
‘I don’t like football.’ ‘Don’t you?’ ‘I like football.’ ‘Do you?’

Можно также отвечать на утвердительное предложение, употребляя отрицательный ответный вопрос с падающей интонацией. Этим выражается эмфатическое согласие.

‘It was a fantastic film.’ ‘Yes, wasn’t it? I really enjoyed it.’
EXERCISE 148A

You are sitting on a park bench when a tramp comes up to you and starts a conversation. [Вы сидите в парке на скамейке, когда к вам подходит бродяга и начинает разговор].

React to what the tramp says using reply questions.

**Tramp:** It’s a lovely day.
You: Yes, isn’t it?
**Tramp:** This is my bench, you know.
You: Oh, is it? I’m sorry, I didn’t know.
**Tramp:** It’s all right. You can sit here. You may not believe this, but I was very rich once. I was almost a millionaire.
You: ______? That’s amazing.
**Tramp:** Yes, but I gave all my money away.
You: ______? What, all of it?
**Tramp:** Yes, every penny. I gave it away to my friends, to my relatives. But they didn’t thank me.
You: ______?
**Tramp:** No. Still, I’m much happier now.
You: ______?
**Tramp:** Yes, I like the simple life. I like sleeping in the park under the stars.
You: ______? Don’t you get cold?
**Tramp:** No, I don’t feel the cold. I’m used to it.
You: ______? Really? Even in winter?
**Tramp:** Yes, I’ve been sleeping on this bench for over twenty years.
You: ______? Really? That’s a long time.
**Tramp:** Yes, the only problem is my health. I’ve got a bad heart condition.
You: Oh,______?
**Tramp:** Yes, I haven’t got long to live.
You: ______?
**Tramp:** No, but I’m going to enjoy my last few weeks. I’m going to eat and drink well ... But food and drink are so expensive nowadays.
You: Yes, they are, aren’t they?
**Tramp:** Yes, if I had some money, I’d go and have a good meal.
You: ______?
**Tramp:** Yes ... You couldn’t let me have a few pounds, could you?
149 Indirect questions (Косвенные вопросы)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>QUESTION</th>
<th>INDIRECT QUESTION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Where is the station?</td>
<td>Could you tell me where the station is?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When will they finish the job?</td>
<td>Do you know when they will finish the job?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

В indirect questions порядок слов такой же, как и в утверждении, например, the station is, they will finish.

2 Обратите внимание, что происходит в present simple и past simple indirect questions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>QUESTION</th>
<th>INDIRECT QUESTION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>What time does the shop close?</td>
<td>Can you tell me what time the shop closes?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What did she say?</td>
<td>Can you remember what she said?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

В indirect questions не употребляется вспомогательный глагол do (do, does and did).

3 Если нет вопросительного слова, например, what, who, where, можно употреблять if или whether для введения indirect question.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>QUESTION</th>
<th>INDIRECT QUESTION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Is she at home now?</td>
<td>Do you know if she is at home now?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Can he speak Italian?</td>
<td>I wonder whether he can speak Italian?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

EXERCISE 149A

Make these questions into indirect questions, beginning with the words in brackets.

Example:

Where is the Tourist Information office? (Could you tell me)

*Could you tell me where the Tourist Information office is?*

1 When does the last bus leave? (Can you tell me)
2 Is he over 18? (Do you know)
3 Can she speak French? (Do you know)
4 How does this machine work? (Can you explain)
5 Where are you going on holiday? (Have you decided)
6 What did he tell you? (Do you remember exactly)
7 Will you be here tomorrow? (Do you know)
8 Does she like horse riding? (Have you got any idea)
9 Did you switch off all the lights? (Can you remember)
10 Has everyone gone home? (Do you know)

Note

В косвенных вопросах также происходят вышеупомянутые изменения, например: ‘*Where do you live?’*→*He asked me where I lived.* CM. 78.
**150 Short answers (Краткие ответы)**

1 Мы часто отвечаем на *Yes/No* questions, используя short answers - краткие ответы, состоящие из подлежащего (например, *you, he, she*) + вспомогательный глагол (например, *be, have, can*).

   ‘*Are you going out?’* ‘*Yes, I am.*’ (= *Yes, I am going out*)
   ‘*Has he seen the film?’* ‘*No, he hasn‘t.*’ (= *No, he hasn‘t seen the film*)
   ‘*Can she speak French?’* ‘*Yes, she can.*’ (= *Yes, she can speak French*)

Если в вопросе есть смысловой глагол *be*, то он употребляется в кратком ответе.

   ‘*Are you angry?’* ‘*No, I‘m not.*’

Если в вопросе имеется *have got*, в кратком ответе употребляется *have*.

   ‘*Have you got a car?’* ‘*No, I haven‘t.*’

Если в вопросе имеется два и более вспомогательных глагола, то в кратком ответе употребляется первый.

   ‘*Have you been working?’* ‘*Yes, I have.*’

В кратких ответах *do/does* употребляется в present simple, а *did* - в past simple.

   ‘*Do you know Kate?’* ‘*Yes, I do.*’
   ‘*Does Simon smoke ?’* ‘*No, he doesn‘t.*’
   ‘*Did they see the film ?’* ‘*Yes, they did.*’

2 В ответ на утверждение можно также употреблять краткие ответы.

   ‘*I’m not angry.’* ‘*Yes, you are.*’
   ‘*Sue lives in Western Road.*’ ‘*No, she doesn‘t.*’
   ‘*Simon is very helpful.*’ ‘*Yes, he is.*’

**EXERCISE 150A**

Complete the short answers to these questions, as in the examples.

Examples:

   ‘*Have you ever been to the USA?’* ‘*No, I haven’t.*’

1 ‘*Can you play the guitar?’* ‘*No, ______’
2 ‘*Are you over 21?’* ‘*Yes, ______’
3 ‘*Did Andrew go to school yesterday?’* ‘*Yes, ______’
4 ‘*Do you smoke?’* ‘*No, ______’
5 ‘*Does Sarah like tennis?’* ‘*Yes, ______’
6 ‘*Have you got time for a coffee?’* ‘*No, ______’
7 ‘*Is Ken working today?’* ‘*No, ______’
8 ‘*Were you at home last night?’* ‘*Yes, ______’
9 ‘*Will you be seeing Martin tonight?’* ‘*Yes, ______’
10 ‘*Have they been living here very long?’* ‘*No, ______’
11 ‘*Has Lynne got any brothers or sisters?’* ‘*No, ______’
12 ‘*Does Simon want to go to university?’* ‘*Yes, ______’
EXERCISE 150B
All these statements are untrue. Disagree with them using short answers.

Examples:
‘Rio de Janeiro is the capital of Brazil.’ ‘No, it isn’t.’
‘Marconi didn’t invent the radio.’ ‘Yes, he did.’
1 ‘Penguins can fly.’
2 ‘The earth doesn’t move around the sun.’
3 ‘Shakespeare was born in London.’
4 ‘The population of the world isn’t increasing.’
5 ‘The Second World War ended in 1940.’
6 ‘Spaghetti grows on trees.’

So/neither am I, so/neither do I, so/neither can I, etc
(И я также/И я также не и т.о.)

1 Study these examples.
‘I’m going out later.’ ‘So am I.’ (= I, also, am going out later.)
He can play the guitar, and so can I.’ (= ... I, also, can play the guitar.)
‘I’m not feeling very well.’ ‘Neither am I.’ (= I, also, am not feeling very well.)
She can’t drive, and neither can I.’ (= ... I, also, can’t drive.)

So (= ‘также’) и neither (= ‘также не’) может употребляться перед вспомогательным глаголом (например, be, can) + subject (например, /, he).

В этой конструкции может также употребляться смысловой глагол be и have в have got.
‘I’m thirsty.’ ‘So am I.’
You haven’t got any money and neither have I.

Если имеется два и более вспомогательных глагола, то после so и neither употребляется первый.
‘I’ve been studying.’ ‘So have I.’
Do/does в present simple, a did в past simple употребляются после so и neither.

‘I like tennis.’ ‘Soo do I.’
I don’t want anything to eat, and neither does Sue.
‘7 went to the concert last week.’ ‘So did I.’

2 Вместо neither можно употреблять nor.
7 haven’t got a car.’ ‘Nor/Neither have I.’

3 Not ... either может употребляться вместо neither и nor.
‘I’m not cold.’ ‘Neither am I. Nor am I, /I’m not either.’
I can’t swim, and neither can you. /and nor can you. /and you can’t either.

4 (N)either имеет два варианта произношения: /ˈnəːðər/ или /ˈnɪðər/.
EXERCISE 151A

Agree with these statements using ‘So ... I’ or ‘Neither ... I’.

Examples:

‘I don’t like noisy people.’ ‘Neither do I.’
‘I’m a very tidy person.’ ‘So am I.’
1 ‘I’m not very interested in football.’ 7 ‘I often forget things.’
2 ‘I enjoy travelling.’ 8 ‘I went to bed quite late last night.’
3 ‘I’ve never been to Australia.’ 9 ‘I should go to bed earlier.’
4 ‘I’d like to go there one day.’ 10 ‘I always tell the truth.’
5 ‘I haven’t got a very good memory.’ 11 ‘I’d rather die than tell a lie.’
6 ‘I haven’t been working very hard recently.’ 12 ‘I didn’t tell lies even when I was a child.’

Note

—Относительно either и neither см. также 119.2.

152 / think so, I hope so, I expect so, etc

(Я так полагаю, я надеюсь на это, я рассчитываю на это и т.д.)

1 Study the examples.

‘Is she ill?’ ‘I think so.’ (= Я полагаю, что она больна.)
‘Do you think the weather will be nice tomorrow?’ ‘I hope so.’ (= Я надеюсь, что погода будет прекрасной.)
‘Do you think you’ll come to the party?’ ‘I expect so.’ (= Я рассчитываю, что приду на вечеринку.)

So употребляется после таких глаголов, как think, hope, expect, imagine и suppose, с тем, чтобы избежать повторения того, что было сказано ранее.

So также употребляется таким образом в выражении be afraid.

‘Is she seriously ill?’ ‘I’m afraid so.’

2 Отрицательную форму с глаголами suppose, imagine и expect можно образовать двумя способами:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>subject + verb + not</th>
<th>subject + do not + verb + so</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I suppose not.</td>
<td>I don’t suppose so.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I imagine not.</td>
<td>I don’t imagine so.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I expect not.</td>
<td>I don’t expect so.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Hope и be afraid всегда употребляется с ... not (не do not ... so).

‘Do you think you will be late tonight?’ ‘I hope not.’ (= Я надеюсь, что не опоздаю.)
‘Did he pass the exam?’ ‘I’m afraid not.’ (= Боюсь, он не сдал.)

Обычно think употребляется с do not ... so.

‘Is she ill?’ ‘I don’t think so.’ (= Я не думаю, что она больна.)
EXERCISE 152A

Give short answers using the words in brackets. Sometimes two answers are possible.

Examples:

‘Do you think it will be a good concert?’ ‘Yes, I hope so.’ (Yes | hope)
‘Do you think we'll be late?’ ‘No, I hope not.’ (No | hope)

1 ‘Are you going to sell your car?’ (Yes | think)
2 ‘Will you give him the money?’ (Yes | suppose)
3 ‘Have your parents heard the news?’ (No | think)
4 ‘Will you be able to help us?’ (No | afraid)
5 ‘Is she going to apply for the job?’ (Yes | imagine)
6 ‘Do you think they will come with us?’ (No | expect)
7 ‘Will he have to go into hospital?’ (Yes | afraid)
8 ‘Will you have time to go shopping this afternoon?’ (No | suppose)
9 ‘Do you think everything will be all right?’ (Yes | expect)
10 ‘Does he know about the accident yet?’ (Yes | imagine)
3 Which может употребляться вместо that (говоря о предметах) в defining relative clause.

Did you see the letter which came this morning?
The keys which were on this table have disappeared.

В неофициальном стиле возможно употребление that вместо who (говоря о людях).
/spoke to the woman that owns the hotel.

4 Обратите внимание, что можно опустить who, that и which, когда они являются дополнениями в defining relative clauses, например: *He’s the man (who) we met last night.*

CM. 154.

EXERCISE 153A

Join each pair of sentences using who for people and that for things. Examples:

That’s the woman. She works in the post office. 4 They’re the people. They offered Sue a job.
The man wasn’t English. He spoke to us. 5 The car has now been found. It was stolen.
1 He’s the man. He painted my house. 6 She’s the person. She gives me a lift to work
every day.
2 What is the name of the boy? He telephoned every day.
3 What’s happened to the money? It was on my desk.

7 The lock has now been repaired. It was broken.
8 Most of the people are very nice. They work in Peter’s office.

154 Leaving out who, that and which in defining relative clauses

(Пропуск who, that и which в определяющих относительных придаточных предложениях)

1 Who, that и which может быть подлежащим (subject) или дополнением (object) в defining relative clause. Compare:

Marianne is the girl who invited us to the party.
who is the subject: she invited us to the party
Marianne is the girl who we met last night.
who is the object: we met her last night

2 Who, that или which часто опускаются, когда они являются дополнениями в defining relative clauses.

Marianne is the girl we met last night. (Мы встретили ее вчера вечером.)
Have you seen the book I put on this table? (Я положил ее на этот стол.)
3 Но нельзя опускать who, that или which, когда они являются подлежащими в этих предложениях.

Марианна - это девушка, которая пригласила нас на вечеринку. (Не: Марианна - это девушка, которая пригласила нас) Have you seen the book that was on that table? (Не: Вы видели книгу, которая была на этом столе?)

4 Вместо who можно употреблять whom (по отношению к людям), когда это слово является дополнением глагола в relative clause.

/met a woman whom I know. (I know her)  

Но слово whom - достаточно формальное и не очень распространенное в повседневной речи. Вместо него можно употреблять who или that (или их опустить).

/met a woman (who) I know.

EXERCISE 154A

Complete the sentences using who for people and that for things; if it is possible to leave out who or that, write (who) or (that) - in brackets.

Examples:

I can't find the envelopes (that) I bought this morning.
Have you seen the film that is on TV tonight?
1 John Murray is the man who owns the Grand Hotel.
2 The man whom we spoke to wasn't very nice.
3 This is the sweater that I bought on Saturday.
4 What is the name of the company you work for?
5 A bilingual person is someone who can speak two languages equally well.
6 Who's that boy whom Sally is dancing with?
7 Are these all the letters (that) came in this morning's post?
8 Have you found the money (that) you lost?
9 The people whom used to live in that house have moved.
10 I don't like films (that) are very violent.

155 Defining relative clauses with whose, where, when and why/that  
(Определяющие относительные придаточные предложения с whose, where, when и why/that)

1 Whose (Чей)

Whose употребляется в relative clauses (вместо his, her, their и т.д.) для выражения принадлежности. Compare:

I've got a friend. His brother is an actor. I've got a friend whose brother is an actor.
They're the people. Their house caught fire. They're the people whose house caught fire.

Не смешивайте whose и who's; who's - who is или who has.

I've got a friend who's at university. (= who is at university)
2 **Where, when and why/that** (Где, когда и почему/что)

a **Where** употребляется (для мест), а **when** (для времени) в relative clauses.

*The factory where I work is going to close down.*

*Is there a time when we can meet?*

b Поясне слова **reason** можно употреблять **why** или **that** в relative clauses.

*Is there a reason why/that you want to leave now?*

c **When, why и that** можно опустить.

*Is there a time we can meet?*  

*Is there a reason you want to leave now?*  

**Where** также можно опустить, если употребляется предлог.

*The hotel we stayed at was very small.*

---

**EXERCISE 155A**

Answer the questions using **whose,** as in the example.

Example:  

*She’s the woman whose husband teaches at Annie’s school.*

1 Who’s Mrs Barnes? (Her husband teaches at Annie’s school.)  
2 Who’s Jim Owen? (His flat was broken into.)  
3 Who are Mr and Mrs Peters? (Their children were injured in the accident.)  
4 Who’s that girl? (Her brother works in the post office.)  
5 Who are those people? (Their credit cards were stolen.)  
6 Who are you? (My mother phoned the police.)

**EXERCISE 155B**

Complete the sentences using **where, when or why/that.**

Example:  

That is the church **where** Ken and Kate were married.

1 Did they tell you the reason____ they wanted you to do that?
2 What’s the name of the restaurant____ you had lunch?
3 I can remember a time____ there was no television.
4 Is that the hospital____ you had your operation?
5 I don’t understand the reason____ he was late.
6 Do you remember the time____ your car broke down on the motorway?

---

**156 Defining and non-defining relative clauses**

(Определяющие и не определяющие относительные придаточные предложения)

1 **‘Defining’** relative clauses указывают на существительное: в этих предложениях речь идет о лице, предмете и т.д., которых имеет в виду говорящий. См. 153 и 154.

/ spoke to the woman who owns the hotel. (who owns the hotel tells us which woman)  
*The house which Sue has bought is over 100 years old.* (which Sue has bought tells us which house)
В 'non-defining' relative clauses не говорится, какое лицо, предмет и т.д. имеет в виду говорящий; эти предложения дают больше информации о лице или предмете уже известных.

Ken's mother, who is 69, has just passed her driving test. (who is 69 does not tell us which woman; we already know that it is Ken's mother)
Sue's house, which is in the centre of town, is over 100 years old. (which is in the centre of town does not tell us which house; we already know that it is Sue's house)

Non-defining clauses более распространены в официальном стиле, особенно в письменном. Когда эти предложения записываются, ставится запятая (,) в начале предложения (и часто в конце).

Last weekend I met Sue, who told me she was going on holiday soon.
Frank Morris, who is one of my best friends, has decided to go and live in France.

В non-defining clauses всегда употребляется who по отношению к людям и which по отношению к предметам; в этих предложениях нельзя употреблять that.

She gave me the key, which I put in my pocket. (Not: She gave me the key, that I put in my pocket.)

В non-defining clauses нельзя опускать who или which.

My uncle John, who lives in Manchester, is coming to visit me next week. (Not: My uncle John, lives in Manchester, is coming ...)
She gave me the key, which I put in my pocket. (Not: She gave me the key, I put in my pocket.)

EXERCISE 156A
Add commas (,) where necessary.
Example:
Robert's parents, who are both retired, now live in Spain.

1 The people who live next door helped us to move the furniture.
2 Have you still got the money that I gave you?
3 Sydney, which has a population of more than three million, is Australia's largest city.
4 Peter's sister, who I've known for years, is a very nice person.
5 We saw Sue last night with that man who works in the library.
6 The chair that was broken has now been repaired.

EXERCISE 156B
Complete the sentences using who, that or which, but only where necessary - leave a blank if possible. In one sentence two answers are possible.

Example:
Is that the same song we heard yesterday?

1 Maria, has only been in Britain for a few weeks, speaks excellent English.
2 Who was the girl you were speaking to just now?
3 My sister, wasn't feeling very hungry, didn't want to go to the restaurant.
4 I've lost all the money you gave me.
5 This is the letter came in today's post.
6 Mr and Mrs Woods, live next door to us, have gone on holiday.
7 Brighton, is a tourist centre on the south coast of England, is about 85 kilometres from London.
157 Non-defining relative clauses with *whose, where, when* and *whom*  
(Не определяющие относительные придаточные предложения с *whose, where, when* и *whom*)

Whose, *where* и *when* (CM. 155) могут употребляться в non-defining relative clauses.  
*Tina Harris, whose brother is the actor Paul Harris, is a good friend of mine.*  
*We visited a town called Christchurch, where we had lunch in an Italian restaurant.*  
*We're going on holiday in September, when the weather isn't so hot.*  

*Whom* также может употребляться вместо *who*, когда это слово является дополнением глагола в non-defining clause (см. 154.4).  
*Sarah Ross, who/whom you met in Madrid last summer, will be at the party tonight.*

**EXERCISE 157 A**  
Peter is going to the United States next year. Complete what he says about his visit using *whose, who/whom, where* and *when.*

‘I’m going to the States at the beginning of January when, hopefully, it won’t be too cold. I’m flying to New York, *(1)* my friend Brian has been living for the past two years. I’m really looking forward to meeting his American girlfriend Cyndy, *(2)* I met when they both came over to London last year. Cyndy, *(3)* brother is quite a famous jazz musician, has promised to take me to Greenwich Village, *(4)* there are a lot of jazz clubs. After two weeks in New York, I’ll take the Greyhound bus to Cleveland, Ohio. I’m going to stay there with my Aunt Jackie, *(5)* son - my cousin Abe - I met last summer in England. Then, if I have enough money, I’ll travel south to New Orleans. I hope to get there by the first two weeks of February, *(6)* the Mardi Gras Festival takes place.’

158 Relative clauses with prepositions + *which* and *whom*  
(Относительные придаточные предложения с предлогами + *which* и *whom*)

1. Defining clauses  
Перед *which* и *whom* в defining relative clause может употребляться предлог, например, *in which, with whom.*  
*That's the town in which he was born.*  
*The people with whom I stayed were very kind.*  

Но в повседневной речи более обычным является положение предлога в конце предложения и пропуск местоимения *which, whom* и т.д..  
*That's the town he was born in.*  
*The people I stayed with were very kind.*
Non-defining clauses

a. В официальном стиле можно также употреблять предлог перед which и whom в non-defining relative clause.

*She’s studying chemistry, about which I know very little.*

*Mr and Mrs Morris, with whom we went on holiday, live in Bristol.*

Но в повседневной речи более обычным является положение предлога в конце предложения и употребление who вместо whom.

*She’s studying chemistry, which I know very little about.*

*Mr and Mrs Morris, who we went on holiday with, live in Bristol.*

Обратите внимание, что нельзя опускать местоимение which, who и т.д. в non-defining clause.

b. Обратите внимание на конструкцию some of/many of/much of/none of/all of/ и т.д. + which/whom.

*A number of my friends, some of whom you’ve met before, will be at the party.*

*He gave me a lot of advice, much of which was very useful.*

EXERCISE 158A

Join each pair of sentences without using who, whom or which.

Examples:

The restaurant was in West Street. We went to it.

*The restaurant we went to was in West Street.*

The woman is a good friend of mine. I borrowed the money from her.

*The woman I borrowed the money from is a good friend of mine.*

1. The man is Sue’s cousin. I introduced you to him.
2. The hotel overlooked the sea. We stayed at it.
3. The shop is closed. I bought the shoes from it.
4. The people like him very much. He works with them.

EXERCISE 158B

Join each pair of sentences using (i) who or which, and (ii) a preposition + whom or which, as in the example.

Example:

Mr Jones is a teacher at Annie’s school. I was talking to him a moment ago.

(i) *Mr Jones, who I was talking to a moment ago, is a teacher at Annie’s school.*

(ii) *Mr Jones, to whom I was talking a moment ago, is a teacher at Annie’s school.*

1. Peter’s party is next Saturday evening. We are all invited to it.
2. Mr Mason apologized for the mistake. We complained to him.
3. The film *Family Life* is showing next week. I’ve heard good reports about it.
EXERCISE 158C

A woman is complaining about a man she really dislikes. Complete what the woman says using the words in brackets and of which or of whom.

'He's always giving people lots of advice, much of which (much) is complete nonsense. He also talks about all the famous people he says he knows, ____ (most) I'm sure he's never even met. He boasts about the hundreds of books he says he's read, ____ (many) I'm sure he's never opened in his life. He talks about his 'three lovely children', ____ (all) are, in fact, as horrible as their father. He talks constantly about what a good son he is, and how often he visits his parents, ____ (neither) ever actually see him. And what else? Well, he spends lots of money, ____ (none) is his, and drives two big cars, ____ (both) belong to his wife!'
Time: when, as, while, as soon as, before, after, until

(Время: когда, как, пока, как можно ... , перед, после, до)

1 Когда нужно выразить, что действия происходят одновременно, можно употреблять when, as, while.

When I was watching TV, the telephone rang.
As they were walking down the street, they saw Sue.
I often listen to the radio while I'm having breakfast.

Обратите внимание, что обычно используется when, as или while + форма continuous (например, when I was watching, as they were walking, while I'm having) для более продолжительных действий.

Часто употребляется (just) as для двух непродолжительных действий, которые происходят одновременно, например: The baby started crying (just) as I got into bed!

2 Когда необходимо выразить, что действия происходят одно за другим, можно употреблять when, as soon as, before, after.

When I had finished breakfast, I went out.
I'll phone you as soon as I get home.
The train had left before they arrived at the station.
After he left school, he started working in a bank.

Обратите внимание, что когда речь идет о будущем, обычно употребляется present simple после when, as soon as, before и т.д., например: I'll phone you as soon as I get home. СМ. 22.

3 When может иметь то же значение, что и while/as, before or after.

When/While/As I was watching TV, the telephone rang.
The train had left when/before they arrived at the station.
When/After he left school, he started working in a bank.

4 Until (или till) употребляется в значении ‘до того времени, когда’.

We waited until she arrived.
I knew nothing about it until you told me.

EXERCISE 160A

Choose the correct answer.

Example:
I'm not going out now. I'll wait until/when it stops raining.

1 While/When I had locked all the doors, I went to bed.
2 I fell off the chair while/until I was changing the light bulb.
3 They waited when/untill everybody was there before/until they started the meeting.
4 My grandfather worked hard all his life until/when he retired.
5 I usually get up before/as soon as I wake up.
6 It started to rain until/just as we got to the park.
7 I broke my leg as soon as/when I was skiing.
8 The film had already started when/just as we sat down in the cinema.
Contrast: although, even though, though, in spite of, despite, while, whereas, however (Противопоставление: несмотря на то, хотя, однако, несмотря на, вопреки, несмотря на, пока; в то время как, тогда как, в то время как, однако)

Although и even though можно употреблять для введения противопоставления. После although и even though употребляться предложение с подлежащим и глаголом.

Although she doesn't enjoy her job, she works hard.
She passed the exam, although she hadn't studied for it.
Even though they were late, they didn't hurry.

Even though более эмфатично, чем although.

Though вместо although может употребляться, особенно, в неофициальном стиле.

Though they were late, they didn't hurry.

Though также употребляется в значении 'however' [однако] (see 5 below) в конце предложения.

The room is very small. It's quite comfortable though.

In spite of пли despite может употребляться при противопоставлении. После in spite of/despite может употребляться существительное или -ing форма.

In spite of the bad weather, we went out for a walk.
Despite being late, they didn't hurry.

Говорят также in spite of/despite the fact (that)....

In spite of the fact that the weather was bad, we went out for a walk.
They didn't hurry despite the fact that they were late.

Сравните in spite of/despite и although:

In spite of the rain/Despite the rain, we started to play tennis. Although it was raining, we started to play tennis.

Противопоставления двух понятий можно достичь, употребляя while и whereas.

He is quiet and shy, while/whereas his sister is lively and talkative.

Противопоставление можно также выразить, употребляя наречение however с двумя предложениями.

She said she didn't want to change her job. However, she may change her mind.

EXERCISE 161 A

Rephrase the sentences beginning with the words in brackets.

Example:

She has plenty of money, but she is very mean. (although)

Although she has plenty of money, she is very mean.

1 They have a car, but they rarely use it. (though)

2 He was innocent, but he was sent to prison. (although)

3 He has a number of relatives living nearby, but he never visits them. (even though)

4 She never takes any kind of exercise, but she is quite fit and healthy. (even though)
EXERCISE 161B

Rephrase the sentences using the words in brackets and a noun, as in the examples.

Examples:

They went out for a walk, even though the weather was bad. (despite)
*They went out for a walk despite the bad weather.*

She managed to write, even though her hand was injured. (in spite of)
*She managed to write in spite of her injured hand.*

1 All the trains were on time, even though the snow was heavy. (despite)
2 Our coach didn't arrive late, even though the traffic was terrible. (in spite of)
3 A lot of people buy those houses, even though the prices are high. (despite)

EXERCISE 161C

Rephrase the sentences using the words in brackets and (i) an -ing form, and (ii) the fact (that)....

Example:

He stayed up late, even though he was very tired. (despite)
(i) *He stayed up late despite being very tired.*
(ii) *He stayed up late despite the fact (that) he was very tired.*

1 I didn't buy the car, even though I had the money. (despite)
2 He stayed outside in the cold weather, even though he felt ill. (despite)
3 People continue to smoke, even though they know the dangers. (in spite of)

EXERCISE 161D

Sally and Peter are good friends, but they are very different.

Compare Sally and Peter. Join each idea in A with the most suitable idea in B. Make sentences using while/whereas.

Example:

1 *She likes hard work, while/whereas he's quite lazy.*

A

1 She likes hard work.
2 She likes jazz and pop music.
3 She likes going out a lot.
4 She's very practical.
5 She's very generous.

B

He prefers classical music.
He prefers staying at home.
He can be rather mean.
He's quite lazy.
He's quite idealistic.
162 Reason and result: *because, because of, as, since, so, as a result, therefore, so/such ... (that)*

(Причина и результат: *потому что, так как, из-за, вследствие, как, с тех пор, как результат, следовательно, такой ... что ...*)

1 Reason: *because, because of, as, since*

a

*Because* употребляется перед придаточным предложением с подлежащим и глаголом.

*He ran to the station because he was late.*
*We didn't go out because it was raining.*

*Because* употребляется перед существительным.

*We didn't go out because of the rain.*
*We arrived late because of the traffic.*

b

*As* и *since* употребляются в значении *because* [потому что] перед придаточным предложением; *as* и *since* часто ставятся в начале предложения.

*As it was raining, we didn't go out.*
*Since you haven't got any money, I'll lend you some.*

2 Result: *so, as a result, therefore, so/such ... (that)*

a

*So, as a result* и *therefore* могут употребляться для выражения результата.

*So (с или без *and*)* употребляется перед придаточным предложением.

*He was late (and) so he ran to the station.*

*And as a result* и *and therefore* употребляются перед придаточным предложением.

*It was raining hard and as a result we didn't go out.*
*If I failed my driving test the first time and therefore I took it again.*

*Therefore* может также следовать перед глаголом, например, *... and I therefore took it again.*

*As a result* и *therefore* употребляются также в начале нового предложения.

*It was raining hard. As a result, we didn't go out.*
*If I failed my driving test the first time. Therefore, I took it again.*

Употребление *therefore* характерно для официального стиля.

b

*So/such ... (that) ...* может также употребляться, когда речь идет о результатах чего-то.

*The film was so good (that) I went to see it again.*
*It was such a beautiful afternoon (that) we decided to go out for a walk.*

*So* ставится перед прилагательным и наречием, например, *so good, so well*, в то время как *such* употребляется перед существительным (с прилагательным или без него), например, *such a beautiful afternoon, such an idiot*. См. 139.1.
EXERCISE 162A

Complete the sentences in A using because or because of and an idea from B. Use each idea in B only once.

Example:
1 He phoned the police because he'd lost his wallet.

A  B
1 He phoned the police____  his bad leg
2 I didn't have any lunch____  I thought it might rain
3 Our plane was delayed____  I wasn't hungry
4 He went to Paris____  he'd lost his wallet
5 I took an umbrella____  the fog
6 He couldn't run very fast____  he wanted to learn French

EXERCISE 162B

Choose the correct answers.

Example:
I haven't got much money as/so I can't afford a new car.
1 As/As a result it was such a beautiful day, we decided to have a picnic.
2 It was his birthday because/so we decided to buy him a present.
3 As a result/Since all the seats on the train were taken, we had to stand.
4 The banks were closed and as a result/because we couldn't get any money.
5 I didn't find the book very interesting and so/as I didn't finish it.
6 We couldn't drive across the bridge as a result/because it was closed.
7 She had the best qualifications and she so/therefore got the job.

EXERCISE 162C

Join each pair of sentences using so/such ... (that).

Example:
He's got a very good memory. He never needs to write anything down.
He's got such a good memory (that) he never needs to write anything down.
1 It was a very warm evening. We had dinner outside in the garden.
2 He was very nervous. He couldn't eat anything.
3 Our neighbours' party was very noisy. We couldn't sleep.
4 The restaurant was very crowded. They couldn't find anywhere to sit down.
5 We were all having a good time. We didn't want to stop.

63 Purpose: to, in order to, so as to, for, so that
(Цель: с целью, для того чтобы)

1 Для выражения цели можно употреблять to infinitive - почему кто-то делает что-то.

I went to Paris to learn French.
I'm going out to do some shopping.
Purpose: to, in order to, so as to, for, so that

В более официальном стиле употребляется in order to или so as to.

I went to Paris in order to learn French.
We got up early so as to have plenty of time.

В отрицательных предложениях обычно употребляется in order not to or so as not to (не одно not to).

We got up early so as not to be late. / We got up early in order not to be late. (Not: We got up early not to be late.)

For может употребляться для выражения чьей-то цели, но лишь тогда, когда после него следует существительное (не глагол).

We went to a restaurant for lunch.
I'm going out for a walk.

For + -ing форма употребляется для выражения цели или функции предмета.

A thermometer is used for measuring temperature.
We use this knife for cutting bread.

So (that) также употребляется для выражения цели. Эта конструкция часто употребляется с can, can't, will or won't.

I'll give you a key so (that) you can unlock the door.
We'll leave early so (that) we won't arrive late.

So (that) c could (n't) и would(n't) часто употребляется для выражения прошедшего времени.

/ gave you a key so (that) you could unlock the door.
We left early so (that) we wouldn't arrive late.

EXERCISE 163A

Answer each question in A by making a sentence using to or for and the most suitable idea in B.

Examples:
1 I'm going to the library to return a book.
2 She's gone to the greengrocer's for some potatoes.

A
1 Why are you going to the library?  
2 Why has she gone to the greengrocer's?  
3 Why is he taking the car to the garage?  
4 Why did he phone you?  
5 Why do you get up early every day?  
6 Why have they gone to the pub?

B
1 go jogging
2 a drink
3 invite me to his party
4 some potatoes
5 return a book
6 have it serviced

250
EXERCISE 163B
What are these things used for? Make sentences using the words in the box.
Example:

| cut grass | make holes in paper | show direction |
| take corks out of bottles | measure temperature |

It's used for showing direction.

EXERCISE 163C
Join these ideas using the words in brackets.
Example:

I wrote down the number. I didn't want to forget it. (so as not to)
I wrote down the number so as not to forget it.

1 He's started walking to work. He wants to get more exercise, (so as to)
2 The government are going to increase taxes. They want to raise more money, (in order to)
3 We took a map with us on the journey. We didn't want to get lost, (so as not to)
4 They stopped work at 1 o'clock. They wanted to have lunch. (in order to)

EXERCISE 163D
Join the sentences using so that and the words in brackets.
Example:

She got up early. She didn't want to be late for work. (wouldn't)
She got up early so that she wouldn't be late for work.

1 He switched on the light. He wanted to see what he was doing. (could)
2 I turned down the music. I didn't want to disturb the neighbours. (wouldn't)
3 She repeated everything. She wanted us to remember it. (would)
4 She's saving money. She wants to buy a new car. (can)

164 Purpose: in case (Цель: в случае)

In case употребляется для выражения действий, которые выполняются, чтобы быть готовым или быть в безопасности, поскольку может случиться что-то еще.

Take an umbrella with you in case it rains. (... because perhaps it will rain.)
I'll take some food with me in case I'm hungry on the journey. (... because perhaps I will be hungry on the journey.)
I'll write down the telephone number in case I forget it. (... because perhaps I will forget it.)
После *in case* употребляется present simple для выражения будущего времени, например, ... *in case I forget it.* CM. 22.2

2 Сравните *if* (с. 66) и *in case*:

*We 'll buy another concert ticket if Simon wants to come with us.* (We will wait and see if Simon wants to come before we buy another ticket.)

*We 'll buy another concert ticket in case Simon wants to come with us.* (We will buy another ticket now. Then we will already have a ticket for Simon if he wants to come.)

3 *In case* может употребляться для выражения прошедшего времени.

/ wrote down the phone number in case I forgot it.

*We bought another concert ticket in case Simon wanted to come with us.*

4 После *in case* может употребляться *should,* когда возможность менее очевидна. Compare:

*Take an umbrella with you in case it rains.*

(I think perhaps it will rain.)

*Take an umbrella with you in case it should rain.*

(I am less sure it will rain.)

EXERCISE 164A

Complete the sentences in A using *in case* and an idea from *B.*

Example:

1 *You 'd better hurry up in case you miss your train.*

A

1 You 'd better hurry up____

2 Take a book on the ____________

3 Put on some suncream____

4 Wear a coat when you go __________

5 You should lock the car____

B

you (get) sunburnt.

you (catch) a cold.

you (miss) your train.

someone (try) to steal it.

you (get) bored.

EXERCISE 164B

Complete the sentences using *if* or *in case.*

Example:

I'll write down the address in case I forget it.

1 We 'll walk home____we miss the last bus.

2 Go and see the doctor____you don 't feel well.

3 You should carry some kind of identification with you____you have an accident.

4 I 'll come and see you later today____I have enough time.

5 We 'll close all the windows____it rains while we 're out.

Note

— Выражение *in case of* отличается от *in case.* *In case of* часто встречается в объявлениях и значит ‘в случае’, например: *In case of fire, press the alarm.* (= *If there is a fire ...*)
**Место: в, на (Place: in, at, on)**

1. *In* употребляется, когда мы представляем место как трехмерное пространство.

   Simon is in his room.
   Do you like swimming in the sea?
   In также употребляется, когда место представляется как площадь, пространство.

   We went for a walk in the park.
   He's got a flat in Milan.

2. *At* употребляется, когда место представляется как точка.

   / waited at the bus stop for twenty minutes.
   I'll meet you at the station. (a meeting point)


   What's that on the floor?
   I'll put this picture on the wall.
   On также употребляется, когда место представляется в виде линии.

   Memphis is on the Mississippi River.
   Brighton is on the south coast of England.

4. С городами, деревнями, поселками употребляется *at*, когда место представляется как точка. Например, *a point on a journey*.

   Our train stops at Brighton.
   In употребляется, когда представляется само место, например: *He's got a flat in Milan*.

5. Со зданиями может часто употребляться *at* или *in*.

   We had lunch at/in Luigi's restaurant.
   She works at/in the post office.
   At предпочтительней, когда здание вообще представляется как место, где что-то происходит.

   'Where were you last night?' 7 was at the cinema.'
   My brother is at university.

   Но *in* употребляется, когда представляется само здание. Compare:

   We stayed at the Queens Hotel. \ There are fifty bedrooms in the Queens Hotel.

6. В адресе употребляется *at*, если имеется в виду номер дома; в британском английском языке употребляется *in*, когда дается лишь название улицы.

   / live at 42 East Street. \ I live in East Street.

   On употребляется для обозначения этажности, например: / live in a flat on the first floor/second floor etc.
EXERCISE 165A

Complete the sentences using the prepositions at, in or on. Sometimes more than one answer is possible.

Example:

What have you got in your pocket?

1. There’s some tea _____ the shelf _____ the cupboard.
2. Does your train stop _____ Lyon?
3. My friend works _____ a chemist’s _____ the town centre.
4. Turin is _____ the north of Italy, _____ the River Po.
5. Shall we meet _____ the coach station?
6. ‘Is Ken _____ the living room?’ ‘No, he’s _____ the garden.’
7. They’re staying _____ the Metropole Hotel while they are _____ Brighton.
8. Rio de Janeiro is _____ the south-east coast of Brazil.
9. There’s a chemist’s _____ the corner _____ the end of the street.
10. We had lunch _____ Mario’s cafe _____ Main Road _____ our way home.

166 Place and movement: in, into, out of, on, onto, off, inside, outside

(Место и движение: в, с, из, на, внутри, снаружи)
I usually go to work in my car.
Did you come to school on the bus?

Говорят get in (to) /out of a car, но get on (to) /off a bus, train и т.д.

She got into her car and started the engine.
Two policemen got on the train at Oxford.

Относительно by car/train и т.д. см. 175.

EXERCISE 166A

Complete each sentence using the most suitable preposition in the box. Sometimes more than one answer is possible.

Example:
There was an envelope lying on the floor.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>in</th>
<th>into</th>
<th>out of</th>
<th>on</th>
<th>onto</th>
<th>off</th>
<th>inside</th>
<th>outside</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. Ken fell____ the ladder when he was changing the light bulb.
2. Andrew normally goes to school____ the bus.
3. When I was____ my hotel room, I started to take my clothes____ my suitcase.
4. There's a bus stop right____ our house.
5. Sally came____ the house, got____ her motorbike and rode away.
6. My car broke down this morning so I went to work____ a taxi.
7. The cat jumped____ roof of the car and looked down at the dog.
8. Annie jumped____ the diving board____ the swimming pool.
9. Robert came____ the telephone box and got____ his car.

167 Place and movement: above, below, over, under, underneath, on top of
(Mесто и движение: над, под, на, на поверхности)

1. Above и over могут иметь значение ‘выше, чем’; below и under могут иметь значение ‘ниже, чем’.

2. Over и under употребляются для описания вертикального соотношения.

$A$ is over $B$.
$B$ is under $A$.

The nurse leaned over the sick child.
I pushed the letter under the door.
b Above и below употребляются, когда один предмет не расположен непосредственно над или под другим.

A is above B.
B is below A.

We stayed at a hotel above the lake.
From the top of the hill we could see a house below us in the valley.

c Over употребляется в значении ‘накрывающего’, а under - ‘накрытого чем-то’.

He put his hand over his face.
What are you wearing under your coat?

d Over употребляется в значении ‘вдоль’ (см. также 168.5).

We walked over the fields to the village.

2 Underneath может употребляться вместо under.

What are you wearing underneath your coat?

3 On top означает, что один предмет находится ‘над’ другим и ‘касается’ его.

The magazine is on top of the fridge.

EXERCISE 167A
Choose the correct preposition.

Example:
I found some money on the floor under/below the sofa.

1 The house was on a hill above/over the village.
2 The cat was sitting below/under the kitchen table.
3 On our way to the village we drove above/over a small bridge.
4 There are some old shoes above/on top of the wardrobe.
5 He sat down below/under an apple tree.
6 She was wearing a long dress below/underneath her raincoat.
Other prepositions of place and movement
(Другие предлоги места и движения)

1. In front of, behind

\[\text{in front of} \]
\[\text{behind} \]

*I'll meet you in front of the post office.*
*There is someone hiding behind that tree.*

2. Opposite, between

\[\text{opposite} \]
\[\text{between} \]

*The bank is opposite the cinema.*
*There is a coach service between Sydney and Melbourne.*

3. Near, next to, by, beside

\[\text{near} \]
\[\text{next to} \]

*They live near the sea.*
*The police station is next to the cinema.*

*By и beside - оба обозначают 'около, рядом, возле'.*
*Come and sit by/beside me.*

4. Along, across, through

\[\text{along} \]
\[\text{across} \]
\[\text{through} \]
They walked along the street looking in all the shop windows.
A small bridge goes across the river.
We drove through the city.

5 Across, over

Across и over употребляются в значении ‘через, вдоль’.

The cafe is just across/over the road. A small bridge goes across/over the river.

Употребление over предпочтительней для движения вверх на другую сторону.

He climbed over the wall. (Not: ... across the wall.)

6 Up, down

She went up the stairs. Then she came down again.

7 Past, (a)round

The policeman just walked past the man.

Round употребляется для обозначения положения или движения по кругу или кривой.

They were all sitting round the table.
I live just round the corner.

Round также употребляется в значении ‘повсюду’ или ‘везде’.

We walked round the town centre.

Around может также употребляться вместо round, например: We walked around the town centre.
168 Other prepositions of place and movement

8 From, to, towards

*We flew from Paris to Madrid.*

*Who is that woman walking towards us?*

9 Get to, arrive at/in

Говорят *arrive in/at* (а place), но *get to* (a place).

*She arrived in/at Paris last night.*

Говорят *arrive in* (в страну или город), но *arrive at* (другие места).

*She arrived in France/Paris last night.*

She *arrived at the hotel just after 10 o'clock.*

Когда речь идет о движении, перед словом *home* предлог не употребляется.

/ *went home after school.*

Для обозначения нахождения говорят *at home.*

*I was at home last night.*

---

EXERCISE 168A

Complete the sentences using the most suitable prepositions in the box. Sometimes more than one answer is possible.

through across up down in round between along to opposite in front of next to from at towards behind over past

Example:

What's that you've tied *round* your waist?

1 I was sitting_____the driver in the back seat of the car.
2 A tall man was sitting____me at the cinema and I couldn’t see much of the film.
3 There is a shoe shop_____the chemist's and the library.
4 We walked_____the stairs to the top floor, then we walked_____to the bottom again.
5 What time did you arrive_____work yesterday?
6 Who was the first person to swim_____the Atlantic?
7 There was a woman sitting_____the driver_____the front passenger seat of the car.
8 We're flying_____Paris_____Amsterdam tomorrow. We arrive_____Amsterdam at 6.00.
9 I got_____the cinema late and missed the beginning of the film.
10 There's a post office right_____my office. You can see it from my window.
11 The burglars got into the building by climbing____a window.
12 We were driving_____the road looking for a petrol station for about half an hour.
13 We walked_____the bridge to the other side of the river.
14 The dog jumped_____the wall into someone's garden.
15 When the bus came I put out my hand, but it just went____me without stopping.
16 We couldn’t see the *man’s* face because he was standing with his back____us.
1 At, in и on употребляются следующим образом:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Element</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>at + время дня</strong></td>
<td>at 2 o'clock at 6.30 at noon (≈ 12 часов дня)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>at lunchtime</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>in + часть дня</strong></td>
<td>in the morning in the afternoon in the evening</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>on + день недели</strong></td>
<td>on Monday on Wednesday on Saturday on Christmas day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>on + день недели + часть дня</strong></td>
<td>on Monday morning on Wednesday evening on Saturday night</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>on + число месяца</strong></td>
<td>on 4th July on 1st January</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>at + выходные</strong></td>
<td>at the weekend at weekends</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>at + праздничные дни</strong></td>
<td>at Christmas at Easter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>in + более длительные периоды, например, months, seasons, years и т.д.</strong></td>
<td>in July in the summer in 1983 in the 19th century</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 At, on u in не употребляются перед next, last, this, every, all, each, some, any и one.

We're leaving next Monday.
I'll see you this evening.
They play tennis every weekend.

At, on или in не употребляются перед tomorrow и yesterday.

What are you doing tomorrow evening?

3 At обычно опускается при выяснении времени (At) what time ... ?

**What time** are you **leaving**?

4 In также употребляется для выражения периода времени в будущем.

I'll be finished in half an hour. (= an hour from now) [через час]
We're meeting in two weeks. (= two weeks from now) [через две недели]

Обратите внимание на выражение in ... 's/’ time.

We're meeting in a week's time.

In употребляется также для выражения времени, необходимого для выполнения чего-то.

/ can walk from my house to the town centre in twenty minutes. (= мне потребуется 20 минут для выполнения этого)
EXERCISE 169A

Add at, on or in where necessary.

Example:

Can you meet me at 2 o'clock — next Saturday afternoon?

1 Kate doesn't normally work_____weekends, but she had to work_____last Saturday.
2 We're leaving_____tomorrow morning, but we'll be back_____three weeks' time.
3 Did she send you a card_____your birthday?
4 _____what time does the meeting start_____?
5 I can normally get home from work_____about half an hour_____Friday evenings.
6 They went on holiday to Spain_____Easter and then again_____the summer.
7 The bridge was built_____the 16th century.
8 Do you enjoy driving_____night?
9 I'm taking my driving test_____4.30 July 3rd.
10 He was born_____1900 and died_____1972.
11 I'm going to a conference in Egypt_____a week.

EXERCISE 170A

Complete the sentences using on time or in time.

Example:

I didn't arrive in time to see her before she left.

1 The bus service is terrible; the buses are never_____
2 I hope my car will be repaired_____for the weekend.
3 She's very punctual. She always arrives_____.
4 She didn't arrive_____to say goodbye to him.
5 I don't think I'll be home_____to see the film on TV this evening.
171 At the end and in the end
(В конце чего-то, спустя (через) некоторое время)

1 At the end означает 'в конце чего-то'.
   We're going on holiday at the end of this week.
   At the end of the film I felt very sad.

2 In the end означает 'наконец' или 'спустя (через) некоторое время'.
   We couldn't decide what to do yesterday evening. In the end we decided to stay at home.
   At first, I didn't like him, but in the end we became good friends.

EXERCISE 171 A
Complete the sentences using at the end or in the end.
Example:
We were going to walk home, but in the end we decided to take a taxi.

1 I hated school at first, but _____ I quite enjoyed it.  4 I looked everywhere for my wallet and
2 They're going to Italy _____ of next week. _____ I found it in my jacket.
3 At first, he didn't want to come with us on holiday, but _____ he changed his mind.
5 She's starting work _____ of May.
6 We were all exhausted _____ of the journey.

172 Time: in, during, for, while
(Время: в, во время, в течение, в то время как)

1 In and during
   a During и in могут употребляться для указания периода времени, часто в одном и том же
      значении.
      We were in Rome during/in the summer.
      It snowed during/in the night.
   b Употребление during предпочтительной для выражения чего-то, что продолжается в
      течение всего периода.
      We were in Rome during the whole of the summer. (Not: ... in the whole of the summer.)
   c During, a не in употребляется по отношению к какому-то виду деятельности, например,
      визит или завтрак (а не периоду времени).
      We visited the Colosseum during our visit to Rome. (Not: in our visit to Rome.)
      During lunch I explained my plans. (Not: In lunch...)

2 During, for and while
   a During указывает, когда что-то происходит; for указывает на длительность чего-то.
      Compare:
      It snowed during the morning. | It snowed for four hours.
      We were in Rome during the summer. | We were in Rome for ten days.
**EXERCISE 172A**
Complete the sentences using during, in, for or while. Sometimes more than one answer is possible.

Example:
Someone broke into their flat while they were away on holiday.

1. Some people were talking in the cinema____ the film.
2. We've been waiting____ almost an hour.
3. Something woke me up____ the night.
4. I was on holiday____ two weeks____ the spring.
5. I saw Sue____ my visit to London.
6. They stopped work____ half an hour____ the afternoon.
7. We visited some interesting places____ we were in London.
8. I'll be in France____ the whole of September.

**Note**
- Относительно for, since, ago и before CM. 174.

### 173 Time: by, until, from, to/until, before, after

**By and until**

Until (или till) означает ‘до того (как)’; by означает ‘не позже, чем’. Compare:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Russian</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I'll stay until Sunday lunchtime. ( = до обеда в воскресенье)</td>
<td>Я останусь до обеда в воскресенье.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He'll be out until 10 o'clock. ( = до 10)</td>
<td>Он будет на улице до 10.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I'll have to leave by Sunday lunchtime. ( = не позже, чем до обеда в воскресенье)</td>
<td>Я должен уехать в воскресенье к обеду.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He'll be home by 10 o'clock. ( = не позже 10)</td>
<td>Он будет дома до 10.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**From ... to/until**

The shop opens from 8.30 to 5.30 every day.
I'll be on holiday from Monday until Friday next week.

**Before and after**

I'll be home before 6 o'clock.
After dinner we went for a walk.
EXERCISE 173A

Complete the sentences using fry, until, from or to. Sometimes more than one answer is possible.

Example:

The film starts at 8.10, so we must be at the cinema by 8.00 at the latest.

1 I waited ______ half past eight ______ nine o'clock, but she didn't come.
2 They hope to finish the job ______ Thursday next week.
3 He normally works ______ Monday ______ Friday.
4 How many more weeks are there ______ your holiday?
5 If you want a ticket for the concert, let me know ______ next Wednesday at the latest.
6 We won't start the meeting ______ everyone is here.

174 For, since, ago and before (В течение, с тех пор, ... тому назад и до)

1 For употребляется с периодом времени для выражения длительности чего-то в настоящем, прошедшем и будущем.

We were in Rome for ten days last August.
They usually go on holiday for two weeks every summer.
I'll be in Manchester for the next three days.

2 For and since часто употребляется с present perfect для выражения действий, которые продолжаются в течение какого-то периода. Compare:

I've been watching TV for two hours.
I've known her for three months.
For употребляется, когда указывается на продолжительность периода, например, two hours, six months.

I've been watching TV since 7 o'clock.
I've known her since November.
Since употребляется, когда указывается на начало периода, например, I o'clock, April.

3 Ago - это наречие и означает 'тому назад'.

It's 10 o'clock now. Sue left two hours ago. (= Сью уехала в 8 часов.)

Ago употребляется после выражения времени.

She left a few minutes ago.
Six months ago they moved to Manchester.

Обратите внимание на вопрос How long ago... ?, например: How long ago did she leave?

Ago употребляется с past tense, но не с present perfect. Например, нельзя сказать:

She has left a few minutes ago.

4 Compare ago and for:

I went to New York two weeks ago.
(= две недели тому назад)
I've been in New York for two weeks.
(= Я провел две недели там)
EXERCISE 174A

Complete the sentences using/or, since, ago and before.

Example:
Tina moved away from Newcastle five years ago and she hasn’t been back there since then.

1. My grandparents visited Edinburgh two weeks in 1980. They had been there five years so it wasn’t completely new to them.
2. My brother has been interested in music quite a long time. He was given his first guitar 20 years.
3. John worked in a travel agency six months in 1985. He already had some experience of the tourist industry because he had worked in a Tourist Information office in London two years.
4. Patricia started working as a journalist with a newspaper in Madrid ten years. She’s been working for the same newspaper ever then.

Note
Относительно for и since см. также 11.

175 Means of transport: by, on, in (Виды транспорта: на, в)

1. By + noun употребляется для указания, как мы передвигаемся, путешествуем.

- by car  by bus  by coach  by bicycle  by motorbike
- by train  by Underground/Tube  by tram  by plane
- by boat/ship  by road  by rail  by air  by sea

I always come to school by bus.
They travelled to Paris by rail.

Но говорят on foot (= пешком).
Does he usually go to school on foot?
When my/a/the is used before car/bus/train, etc., it is incorrect to use by. In
this case, the preposition is used: on - with bicycles, motorbikes, and public
transport, for example, buses, trains.

I usually go to work in my car. (Not: ...by my car.)
They went for a ride on a motorbike. (Not: ...by a motorbike.)
Did you go to London on the train? (Not: ...by the train?)

EXERCISE 175A

Complete the sentences using by, on or in.

Example:
I'm not going to Rome on my motorbike. I've decided to go by train instead.

1 Annie usually goes to school by her bicycle, but sometimes she goes by bus.
2 The journey takes 10 minutes by bus and about 25 minutes on foot.
3 Robert didn't come to work by his car yesterday morning. His car had broken down and he had
to come by taxi.
4 Did you travel right across London by the Underground?
5 We've decided to travel to New York by sea rather than go by air.

176 Like, as and as if
(Подобно и как)

1 Like и as

a Like и as могут употребляться для указания на сходство:

Like

My sister is quite like me.
He eats like a pig!
This steak is very tough. It's like eating leather.

As

Your hair looks nice as it is now.
Nobody else can sing as she can.

В этом случае as выступает как союз; он ставится перед придаточным
предложением с подлежащим и глаголом, например, as it is, as she can.

В неофициальном стиле часто употребляется like в качестве союза вместо as.
Nobody can sing like she can.

Некоторые считают, что такое употребление like 'неправильное'.
As употребляется как предлог для выражения чьего-то занятия или указания на функцию предмета.

/ once worked as a postman.
Please don’t use my shoe as a hammer.

Сравните as и like:

He works as a cleaner. (Он на самом деле уборщик.)
She uses the living room as her office. (Эта комната на самом деле ее кабинет.)

He looks like a pop singer. (На самом деле он не поп-певец.)
My children treat our house like a hotel. (На самом деле это не гостиница.)

Like можно употреблять для приведения примеров.

She enjoys some water sports, like sailing and windsurfing.

EXERCISE 176 A
Complete the sentences using like or as. Sometimes either word is possible.

Example:
Sarah looks a lot like her brother.

1 I joined the company as a secretary.
2 Their garden is in a terrible mess. It looks like a jungle.
3 I prefer bright colours, like yellow and red.
4 When you've finished, put everything back as it was before.
5 The building looks more like a church than a bank.
6 Stop behaving like a fool.
7 Nobody else can make me laugh quite like she can.
EXERCISE 176B

Make sentences about the people in the pictures using the words in the boxes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>He/She/It looks</th>
<th>as if</th>
<th>they're in love</th>
<th>they've been running</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>They look</td>
<td></td>
<td>she's just woken up</td>
<td>he's going to fall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>they're having fun</td>
<td>she's just had some good news</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Example:

She looks as if she's just woken up.

EXERCISE 176C

Complete each sentence in A using as if and the most suitable idea from B. Use the verbs in brackets in the past tense.

Example:

1 She's 50 years old, but she looks as if she was/were 30.

A
1 She's 50 years old, but she looks___
2 He's only a receptionist, but he acts___
3 They're quite rich, but they behave___
4 He's only got a cold, but he acts___
5 It's my car, but he treats it___

B
(own) the hotel
(belong) to him
(be) dying
(be) poor
(be) 30

177 With (= having) and in (= wearing)

1 With может употребляться для указания, что кто-то или что-то имеет.

He is a tall man with brown hair. (= у него черные волосы)
London is a large city with a population of over 9 million. (= он имеет население свыше 9 миллионов)

2 In может употребляться для выражения, в чем кто одет.

He often goes to work in his jeans. (= в джинсах)
Who's that woman in the black dress? (= в черном платье)
EXERCISE 177A
Complete the sentences using with or in.
Example:
My suitcase is the brown one with the blue stripe down the side.
1 We're looking for a flat three bedrooms.
2 Who's that man over there the green sweater?
3 The police are looking for a short man black curly hair and brown eyes.
4 She's a lively woman a great sense of humour.
5 A fat man a dark blue suit came out of the bank a black briefcase.

[78 Adjective + preposition (Прилагательное + предлог)]

После многих прилагательных употребляются предлоги. Например, говорят afraid of, interested in и bored with.
Ниже приведены наиболее употребительные выражения adjective + preposition:

- excited about worried about nervous about
  angry about annoyed about furious about

I'm excited about having my birthday party tomorrow.
Are you worried about your exam?
I'm angry about all the mess you've made.

- good at bad at clever at hopeless at

I'm not very good at mathematics.
You're not bad at chess.

- surprised at/by shocked at/by astonished at/by amazed at/by

We were surprised at/by the size of the house.

- famous for well known for responsible for

Brazil is famous for its coffee.
Who is responsible for breaking this window?

- different from/to

He's very different from/to his sister.

- interested in

I'm quite interested in photography.

- afraid of frightened of scared of proud of full of
  ashamed of jealous of envious of suspicious of short of
  aware of conscious of capable of fond of tired of

Are you afraid of spiders?
I'm very proud of you.
Are you jealous of his success?
He's very fond of her.
My homework was full of mistakes. Can you buy some more?
I'm tired of doing the same things every day.
• nice/kind/good/friendly/polite/rude/stupid of someone
  It was very nice of Simon to lend you the money.
• keen on
  She's not very keen on tennis.
• engaged to married to similar to
  Marianne is engaged to Alan.
  Your camera is similar to mine.
• nice/kind/good/friendly/polite/rude to someone
  A shop assistant should be polite to customers.
• pleased with bored with disappointed with happy with
  You look very pleased with yourself.
  I became bored with the book and stopped reading it.
  We were disappointed with the football match.
• angry/annoyed/furious with someone for (doing) something
  Are you angry with me for being late?

EXERCISE 178A
Complete the sentences using the words in the box. Sometimes two answers are possible.

Example:
I'm getting bored with my present job.

1 They're very proud of their children.
2 My sister has just got engaged to her boyfriend.
3 Are you worried about your driving test?
4 You're very good at explaining things.
5 Sydney in Australia is famous for its Opera House.
6 She's quite capable of doing the job.
7 We're getting really excited about our holiday.
8 Are you interested in playing tennis tomorrow?
9 He's not very keen on football.
10 It was very kind of them to give us a lift to the station.
11 We were very disappointed in the film.
12 Are you afraid of flying?
13 I was shocked by the news of the accident.
14 The garden is full of roses.
15 We're a bit short of petrol. We'd better stop at the next petrol station.
16 I'm not very good at drawing.
17 My grandparents are very fond of their old cat.
18 Cricket is quite different from baseball.
19 Your hairstyle is quite similar to mine.
20 She was very angry at me for losing her key.

Note
- После некоторых вышеуприведенных прилагательных возможно употребление и других предлогов, например, frightened by, annoyed at, disappointed in. Более подробные сведения можно найти в любом хорошем словаре.
Noun + preposition
(Существительное + предлог)

После многих существительных употребляются определенные предлоги. Например, говорят (a) reason for, (an) example of, (an) increase in.

Ниже приведены некоторые наиболее употребительные примеры выражений noun + preposition:

• difference between
There are a lot of difference between living in the country and living in a city.

• reason for demand for need for
What was the reason for the accident?
There is a need for more houses in this area.

• increase/decrease in rise/fall in
There has been an increase in the price of petrol.

• difficulty in doing something
Does he have much difficulty in doing his schoolwork?

Но обратите внимание: difficulty with something

Does he have much difficulty with his schoolwork?

• example of cause of picture/photograph of
This building is an example of good modern architecture.
What was the cause of the accident?
Have you got a photograph of your family?

• answer to solution to reply to invitation to reaction to
Have you had an answer to your letter?
Where are the answers to the exercise?
I got an invitation to dinner yesterday.

• attitude to/towards
What's your attitude to/towards this idea?

• relationship with
Our company has a very good relationship with the bank.

Но обратите внимание: relationship between

The relationship between our company and the bank is very good.
EXERCISE 179A

**Complete** the sentences using the words in the box. In one sentence two answers are possible.

Example:

I’ve had an invitation **to** a wedding next month.

towards  of  between  for  in  with  to

1 I have a good relationship ____ my boss.
2 He refused to give me an answer ____ my question.
3 What are the main differences ____ the two countries?
4 We need a solution ____ the world’s population problem.
5 Smoking is one of the causes ____ heart disease.
6 Has there been an increase ____________ unemployment recently?

7 The government want to improve the relationship ____ the police and the general public.
8 He is very shy and has great difficulty ____ making friends.
9 I thought her attitude ____ you was rather unpleasant.
10 There is no need ____ you to shout. I can hear you.
11 Nobody knows the reason ____ his decision.
12 The artist drew a picture ____ my mother.

**Note**

– После некоторых вышеуказанных существительных возможно употребление и других предлогов. Более подробные сведения можно найти в любом хорошем словаре.

---

180 **Preposition + noun (Предлог + существительное)**

Перед многими существительными употребляются определенные предлоги. Например, говорят on television и by mistake.

Ниже приведены наиболее употребительные примеры выражений preposition + noun:

• by mistake  by accident  by chance

* I put salt in my coffee **by mistake**.

• Говорят: (to pay) by cheque/by credit card, but (to pay) in cash or (to pay) cash.

* I'd like to pay **by credit card**.

• (a book/film/painting etc) by someone

* I'm reading a book by James Joyce. (= написанная Джеймсом Джойсом)

• (to go/come) for a drink/a meal/a walk/a swim

* Would you like to go for a drink?

• (to have something) for breakfast/lunch/dinner

* We had spaghetti for lunch.

• We say for example.

* I'd like to go somewhere warm on holiday, for example Greece or Turkey.
181 Verb + preposition

- (to be/fall) in love with someone/something

Jimmy is in love with Angela.

- in someone’s opinion

In my opinion you should phone the police.

- (to be/go/come) on holiday/a journey/a trip/business

I’m going on holiday in April.

Но обратите внимание: (to go/come) for a holiday

I’d like to go to Jamaica for a holiday.

- on television/the radio

What’s on television this evening?

EXERCISE 180A

Complete the sentences using the words in the box.

Example:

In my opinion you’re wrong.

by with in on for

1 We’re going to Italy_____ a short holiday in May.
2 Robert has gone away_____ holiday for two weeks.
3 The book, Gone With the Wind, was written _____ Margaret Mitchell.
4 I didn’t mean to do that; I did it_____ mistake.
5 I could pay you_____ cheque or_____ cash.
8 Lynne and Bruno are very much_____ love _____ each other.
6 Which would you prefer?
7_____ chance, I happened to have his address with me.

Note

– Более подробную информацию о сочетаниях preposition + noun combinations можно найти в любом хорошем словаре.

181 Verb + preposition (Глагол + предлог)

После многих глаголов употребляются определенные предложи. Например, говорят believe in и concentrate on.

Ниже приведены некоторые наиболее употребительные примеры выражений verb + preposition:

- apologize to someone for (doing) something

I apologized to her for being late.
• apply for
Are you going to apply for the job?
• believe in
Do you believe in life after death?
• belong to
Does this book belong to you?
• care about [интересоваться, заботишься]
/ don’t care about money. Money can’t buy happiness.
Но: care for [присматривать]
She’s very good at caring for sick animals.
• take care of [присматривать]
Could you take care of the baby while I go out shopping?
• complain to (someone) about (something)
The workers complained to the manager about the working conditions.
• concentrate on
Concentrate on the road when you’re driving.
• crash into run into drive into bump into
When I was driving home I almost crashed into a bus.
• depend on
’Are you going to the beach tomorrow?’ ’It depends on the weather.’
• die of
A lot of people are dying of AIDS.
• dream about (while asleep)
/ was dreaming about Sue when I suddenly woke up.
Но: dream of [представлять себя]
When I was younger I dreamt of being a famous pop-singer.
Также: dream of [рассматривать]
/ wouldn’t dream of changing my job.
• hear about [знать, слышать]
Have you heard about Jimmy? He broke his leg in a skiing accident.
Но: hear from (= получить известие от)
We haven’t heard from Mike since he wrote to us last May.
Также: hear of (= знать о существовании кого-то/чего-то)
Have you heard of a disco called The Dance Factory?
• laugh at smile at
Who’s that girl smiling at you?
• listen to
Would you like to listen to some music?
• look at [смотреть]
Look at this photograph.
Но: look for [искать]
Can you help me, please? I'm looking for West Street.
Также: look after [присматривать]
Could you look after the baby while I go out shopping?
• rely on
You can't rely on the post. It's always late.
• search for
I've been searching for my keys.
• shout at (eg when you are angry)
Don't shout at me! I can hear you.
• speak to talk to
I spoke to Sue this morning.
• suffer from
He suffers from asthma.
• think about [думать]
You look sad. What are you thinking about?
Но: think of/about [рассматривать]
I'm thinking of/about changing my job.
Также: think of (=иметь мнение о)
‘What do you think of Sue?’ ‘She's very nice.’
Также: think of [вспоминать]
/ can’t think of any reason why the accident happened.
• wait for
How long have you been waiting for the bus?
• write to
I'll write to you soon.
EXERCISE 181A

Complete the sentences using the words in the box.

Example:
I was worried and found it difficult to concentrate on my work.

for from after to of on at about in into

1 When he gets angry he always starts shouting____everyone.
2 This car isn't mine. It belongs____Mike.
3 Selfish people only care_____themselves.
4 He complained_____the children_____the mess they'd made.
5 I won't tell anyone what happened. You can rely_____me.
6 She apologized_____me_____losing her temper.
7 I've written _____the company and applied _____the job.
8 Mrs Woods suffers_____bronchitis.
9 My grandfather died_____old age.
10 We're thinking_____going to the cinema.
11 Have you ever thought_____moving to another country?
12 I remember his face, but I can't think_____his name.
13 ‘We went to the concert.’ ‘What did you think____it?’
14 ‘Do you know a disco called The Zap Club?’ ‘No, I've never heard____it.’
15 Excuse me. We're looking_____the sports centre. Could you tell us how to get there?
16 Thank you for looking_____my mother while she was ill.
17 I don't believe_____horoscopes,
18 She dreams_____being an actress one day.
19 I dreamt_____my grandmother last night,
20 She searched through her bag_____a pen.
21 We're depending_____you to help us.
22 The car went out of control and crashed_____the back of a bus.

Note

– Более подробную информацию о сочетаниях verb + preposition можно найти в любом хорошем словаре.

182 Verb + object + preposition
(Глагол + дополнение + предлог)

После некоторых глаголов употребляются дополнения с предлогами. Например, говорят borrow something from someone.

Ниже приведены наиболее употребительные примеры выражений verb + object + preposition:

• accuse someone of (doing) something

The police accused the man of murder.

• blame someone/something/or something

Don't blame me for what happened. It wasn't my fault.

But: blame something on someone/something

Don't blame what happened on me. It wasn't my fault.
• *borrows something from* someone
/ borrowed some money from my mother.
• *congratulate someone on (doing) something*
  We congratulated them on getting married.
• *explain something to someone*
/ explained the problem to the police.
• *invite someone to something*
  Mike has invited me to the cinema this evening.
• *remind someone about something* [напомнить]
  Simon reminded me about Sarah's birthday, so I bought a card.
  Но: *remind someone of something/someone* (= заставить кого-то запомнить)
  This song reminds me of the first time we met.
• *tell someone about something*
  Did they tell you about their holiday?
• *warn someone about something* [напомнить]
  His boss has warned him about being late for work.

**EXERCISE 182A**

Complete the sentences using the words in the box.

Example:
They blamed the accident on the driver of the lorry.

| from | on | to | about | of | for |

1 Don't blame other people your own mistakes.
2 This town reminds me the place where I was born.
3 Will you remind Peter the party next Saturday?
4 I congratulated Mary getting the new job.
5 I borrowed the umbrella a friend of mine.
6 The woman accused me trying to steal her bag.
7 They've invited us their house for dinner.
8 We've warned him swimming in that part of the river.
EXERCISE 183A

Complete the description of the scene in the picture using the words in the box. Use each word only once.

behind in front of outside inside up down
on onto off into out of along across at
round towards between near past next to opposite

There is a cafe between a supermarket and a post office. A woman is coming 1 the supermarket. Some people are sitting 2 the cafe 3 the post office is a bank. A man is getting 4 a bus 5 the bank. 6 the bus there is a girl getting 7 a motorbike. An old man is going 8 some steps 9 the post office; a young woman is coming 10 the steps. Another woman is walking 11 the road 12 the bank. Some children and a dog are running 13 the street 14 the cafe. A car is waiting 15 some traffic lights 16 the supermarket. Some people are crossing the road 17 the car.

There is a telephone box 18 the corner of the street 19 the supermarket. A young man is walking 20 the corner.
EXERCISE 183B

Complete the sentences using the words in the box. Sometimes more than one answer is possible.

Example:

We're going away on holiday for two weeks in July.

| at in on since for from of to during between about with under |

1. We're meeting ____ the clock tower ____ North Street ____ 8 o'clock this evening.
2. I went shopping ____ town ____ Friday afternoon.
3. We're thinking ____ going ____ the concert ____ Saturday. Are you interested ____ coming?
4. She's been studying ____ the University ____ Manchester ____ the past three years.
5. He had great difficulty ____ finding a job when he was living ____ the north of England.
6. They live ____ 148 Dyke Road. Their flat is ____ the second floor.
7. We took a lot of photographs ____ our visit ____ Rome last summer.
8. ____ my opinion they show too many old films ____ TV.
9. They went away ____ holiday ____ the end of last week.
10. They've been staying ____ the International Hotel ____ Oxford Street ____ they arrived ____ England.
11. He's suffered ____ bad headaches ____ he had the accident.
12. At first I didn't want to go swimming in the river, but ____ the end I changed my mind.
13. My brother worked ____ a tourist guide ____ London ____ three months ____ the summer.
14. I found an old photograph ____ the floor ____ the bed ____ my room.
15. When she was a child, she dreamt ____ being a famous dancer.
16. I'm not very good ____ making decisions.
17. You can depend ____ him to arrive ____ time; he's never late.
18. We've arranged to meet ____ a cafe ____ a drink ____ 9 o'clock this evening.
19. I have a very good relationship ____ my sister.
20. There is no need ____ you to worry ____ me. I'll be all right.
21. You're very different ____ your mother, but quite similar ____ your father.
22. They're looking ____ a house ____ four bedrooms and a garden.
23. The police accused the woman ____ stealing the money.
24. 'Do you know a pop band called Running Heads?' 'No, I've never heard ____ them.'
25. Newcastle is a large, commercial and industrial city ____ a population of about 300,000. It is ____ the north-east of England, ____ the River Tyne.
26. Is there very much difference ____ the two word processors?
27. I've always wanted my parents to be proud ____ me.
28. People are angry ____ the increase ____ food prices.
29. I complained ____ the shop assistant ____ the hole ____ the sweater.
Indirect objects with or without to and for
(Косвенные дополнения с и без to и for)

1 Некоторые глаголы, например give, buy, могут иметь два дополнения: прямое и косвенное. Обычно косвенное относится к лицу и ставится сначала.

verb + indirect object + direct object

I'll give Sally the money.
Richard bought me some flowers.

2 Можно использовать следующую конструкцию:

verb + direct object + to/for + indirect object

I'll give the money to Sally.
Richard bought some flowers for me.

Эта конструкция используется, например, когда особый акцент делается на косвенное дополнение.

I'll give the money to Sally, not Peter.

a Некоторые общеупотребительные глаголы, применяемые в этой конструкции с to:

bring give lend offer owe pass pay post promise read recommend sell send show take teach tell throw write

They're going to offer the job to Sue.
He showed the letter to a friend.

b Некоторые общеупотребительные глаголы, применяемые в этой конструкции c for:

bring build buy change choose cook do fetch find fix get keep make order prepare save

She bought some books for her brother.
I'll cook a meal for you.

3 Когда прямым дополнением является местоимение, например, them, it, то обычно оно ставится первым, например: She gave them to her brother. (Вместо: She gave her brother them.)
**EXERCISE 184A**
Rephrase the sentences without using *to* or *for*.

Example:
Give this message to Martin.
*Give Martin this message.*
I’ll make some coffee for you.
*I’ll make you some coffee.*

1 Have you sent the letter to your brother?
2 I’ll get a present for Sally.
3 Have you told the news to your parents?
4 I bought some stamps for you.
5 She lent her car to Peter.
6 I kept a seat for you.
7 He’s prepared a meal for us.
8 Will you give this message to Mrs Woods?

**EXERCISE 184B**
Put the parts of the sentence into the correct order.

Example:
Sarah | I | my new camera | lent |.
/lent Sarah my new camera./
To your mother | have | the money | given | you | ?
*Have you given the money to your mother?*

1 they | the job | me | didn’t offer |.
2 for her son | she | a book | bought |.
3 the salt | pass | can | me | you | ?
4 you | this package | will | to your parents | take | ?
5 a taxi | ordered | they | us | have |.
6 he | to all | showed | the photographs | his friends |.

---

**85 Phrasal verbs: introduction (Фразовые глаголы: введение)**

1 Phrasal verbs - это глаголы, которые некоторым образом изменяют свое значение за счет добавления *частиц*, например, *down, away, on, in, up, after, off, across*.

*Please sit down.*
*I’ll throw away the rubbish.*
*Could you turn on the TV?*

2 В некоторых случаях значение фразового глагола является сочетанием значений составляющих его частей.

3 В других случаях фразовый глагол имеет значение, отличительное от значения составляющих его частей.

*He’s given up eating meat.* (= He’s stopped eating meat.) [бросил]
*Sue takes after her mother.* (= Sue looks like or is like her mother.) [похожа]
*Looking after a baby is hard work.* (= Taking care of a baby is hard work.) [ухаживать]
**EXERCISE 185A**

Complete the sentences using the correct form of the phrasal verbs below. Use each phrasal verb only once.

Example:

It was lucky that nobody was killed when the bomb went off.

*stup up (= speak louder) fill in (= complete)
*come across (= find by chance) keep on (= continue)
*turn down (= refuse) go up (= increase)
*go off (= explode) hold up (= delay)

1. Could you ____ this application form, please?
2. They just ____ making a noise even though I'd asked them to stop.
3. The price of coffee has ____ again.
4. We can't hear you very well. Could you ____ a bit, please?
5. The coach was ____ by the heavy traffic and didn't arrive in London until 8.00.
6. Unfortunately, your request for a pay rise has been ____
7. He ____ some old photographs when he was cleaning the attic.

---

**186 Types of phrasal verbs**

(Типы фразовых глаголов)

Phrasal verbs образуются путем добавления 'частиц', например: *away, up, down, out, off, after, in, on*, к глаголу.

*I'll throw away the rubbish.*

*He's given up smoking.*

Существует четыре типа фразовых глаголов:

**Type 1**

Эти фразовые глаголы не требуют дополнения.

- verb + particle

*Sit down.*

*Look out!* [Осторожно!]

*We set off on our journey.* [начали]

**Type 2**

Эти фразовые глаголы требуют дополнение. Когда дополнение существительное, оно ставится до или после частицы.

- verb + particle + object

*I'll throw away the rubbish.*

*Take off your shoes.*

- verb + object + particle

*I'll throw the rubbish away.*

*Take your shoes off.*
Выражение местоимением, например *it*, *them*, оно может стоять перед частицей, а не после нее.

*I'll throw it away.* (Not: *I'll throw away it.*)
*Takes them off.* (Not: *Take off them.*)

**Type 3**

Эти фразовые глаголы требуют дополнения, но глагол нельзя отделять от частицы.

verb + particle + object

*Sue takes after her mother.* (Nota: *Sue takes her mother after.*)
*Looking after a baby is hard work.* (Not: *Looking a baby after is hard work.*)

**Type 4**

Эти фразовые глаголы состоят из трех частей: a verb + particle + preposition, например, *look forward to*. Глагол нельзя отделять от других частей.

verb + particle + preposition + object

*I'm looking forward to the weekend.*
*You go now and I'll catch up with you later.*
*You shouldn't go back on your promises.*

**EXERCISE 186A**

Complete the sentences using the correct form of the (Type 1) phrasal verbs in the box. Use each phrasal verb only once.

Example:

The lift has broken down and isn't working at the moment.

break out take off break down grow up get up

1. Our plane ____ from New York at 6 o'clock yesterday evening.
2. My younger sister wants to be a doctor when she ____
3. A ____ in the offices of the ABC cinema last night.
4. Do you like ____ early in the mornings?

**EXERCISE 186B**

Complete the sentences using the (Type 2) phrasal verbs in brackets. Sometimes two answers are possible.

Example:

Could you | the light? (switch on)
*Could you switch on the light?/Could you switch the light on?*

1. Would you like to | this jacket? (try on)
2. I don't enjoy playing football any more. I think I'll | it. (give up)
3. My wife wants me to | my moustache. (shave off)
4. I have to speak to Mr Mason. I'd better | him. (ring up)
5. That music is rather loud. Would you | it? (turn down)
EXERCISE 186C
Replace the words in italics with the correct form of the (Type 3) phrasal verbs in the box.
Example:
We've *examined* the problem very carefully.
We've *gone into* the problem very carefully.

1 Who is going to *take care of* the children while you go to the pub?
2 Although she had very good medical care, it took her a long time to *recover from* her illness.
3 Jane *inherited* a great deal of money when her grandmother died.
4 I *met* an old friend by chance in town yesterday afternoon.

EXERCISE 186D
Replace the words in italics with the correct form of one of the (Type 4) phrasal verbs in the box.

```
get rid of  put up with  come up with
go back on  look back on
```

Example:
You shouldn't *break* a promise.
You shouldn't *go back on* a promise.

1 Have you *thrown away* your old typewriter?
2 We must try *to find* a solution to the problem.
3 When you *remember* the past, *it's* easy to see the mistakes you've made.
4 I don't think I can *tolerate* this awful weather much longer.

EXERCISE 186E
Replace the noun in *italics* with a pronoun.
(Note that sometimes you will have to change the word order.)

Examples:
Could you look after the children?
*Could you look after them?*
I'll *turn off* the TV.
*I'll turn it off.*

1 He's going to give up his job.
2 I’ve thrown away the ticket.
3 He’s looking after his sick mother.
4 Are you looking forward to the party?
5 Can you fill in the form?
6 She takes after her father.
7 He can't do without his car.

187 Pronunciation of endings -(e)s and -ed
(Произношение окончаний -(e)s и -ed)

Compare ‘*voiced*’ [гласные] и ‘*unvoiced*’[согласные] sounds:

**VOICED**

При произношении гласных происходит вибрация голоса.

**UNVOICED**

При произношении согласных вибрация голоса не происходит.
1 Pronunciation of -(e)s ending

Правила произношения окончания -(e)s те же, что и для существительных во множественном числе (например, books, churches), притяжательного падежа 's/s' (например, Ken's, my parents') и третьего лица единственного числа глаголов в present simple (например, he plays, she watches).

Окончание -(e)s имеет три варианта произношения:

a -(e)s произносится, как /iz/ после следующих звуков /tʃ/, /ʃ/, /s/, /z/, /ʒ/.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>/tʃ/</th>
<th>/ʃ/</th>
<th>/s/</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>watches /wɔtʃiz/</td>
<td>washes /wɔʃiz/</td>
<td>kisses /kisiz/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>churches /tʃ3tsʃiz/</td>
<td>wishes /wɪʃiz/</td>
<td>Chris's /krɪʃiz/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b -(e)s произносится, как /s/ после согласных звуков (кроме упомянутых в a).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>/s/</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>stops /stɒps/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foci /fəʊps/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laughs /laʊʃz/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wife's /waɪfs/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Pronunciation of -ed ending

Окончание -ed используется для образования past tense и past participle правильных глаголов (например, played, watched).

Окончание -ed имеет три варианта произношения:

a -ed произносится, как /id/ после звуков /t/ и /d/.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>/t/</th>
<th>/d/</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>waited /ˈwɛtɪd/</td>
<td>ended /ˈendɪd/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>started /stɑːtɪd/</td>
<td>needed /ˈniːdɪd/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b -ed произносится, как /t/ после согласных звуков (кроме /tʃ/).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>/tʃ/</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>stopped /ˈstɒpt/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hoped /həʊpt/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>washed /wɔʃt/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wished /wɪʃt/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b -ed произносится, как /d/ после гласных звуков (кроме /d/).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>/d/</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>played /ˈpleɪd/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>showed /ʃəʊd/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
EXERCISE 187A

Put these words into three groups according to the pronunciation of the -(e)s endings.

| opens | waits | washes | Mick’s cars |
stops | teaches | Sally’s | misses | drives |
dishes | Alice’s | watches | admits | shows |
books | Bert’s | studies | brings | hopes |

EXERCISE 187B

Put these words into three groups according to the pronunciation of the -ed endings.

| passed | failed | painted | loved | finished |
| ended | hoped | opened | planned | invented |
danced | studied | worked | waited |
lived | watched | remembered | admitted |

188 Spelling of endings -(e)s, -ing, -ed, -er, -est, -ly

(Правописание окончаний -(e)s, -ing, -ed, -er, -est, -ly)

Существительные, глаголы, прилагательные могут иметь следующие окончания:

- **Noun+(e)s** (plural)
- **Verb + (e)s** (3rd person singular present simple)
- **Verb + -ing** (present participle or gerund)
- **Verb + -ed** (past tense or past participle)
- **Adjective + -er** (comparative)
- **Adjective + -est** (superlative)
- **Adjective + -ly** (adverb)

При добавлении этих окончаний происходят изменения в написании:

1. **Adding -e before -s**
   - Если слово заканчивается на -ch, -sh, -s, -x или -z, перед -s ставится -e.
   - После существительных *tomato*, *potato*, *echo*, *hero*, *negro* и глаголов *do* и *go* также ставится -e перед -s.

| watch | watches |
dish | dishes |
bus | buses |
mix | mixes |
fizz | fizzes |
tomato | tomatoes |
potato | potatoes |
do | does |
go | goes |
2 Nouns ending in -(e)

Некоторые существительные, оканчивающиеся на -/ или -e, опускают i/-fe и прибавляют -ves во множественном числе, например, half, thief, leaf, loaf, self, shelf, wolf, knife, wife, life.

half   halves
thief  thieves
knife  knives
wife   wives
life   lives

3 Опускание -e

Если слово оканчивается на одно -e, перед -ing, -ed, -er и -est -e обычно опускается.

Исключения: be/being

В глаголах, оканчивающихся на -ee, -e перед -ing не опускается.

В прилагательных, оканчивающихся на -e, -e перед окончанием наречия -ly не опускается.

но в прилагательных, оканчивающихся на -le, -le переходит в -ly при образовании наречий.

Исключения: true/truly, whole/wholly

4 Changing -y to -i

Если слово оканчивается на согласную + -y, перед -s -y переходит в -ie.

Если слово оканчивается на согласную + -y, перед -ed, -er, -est и -ly -y переходит в -i.

перед -ing -y переходит в -i.

после гласных -y не переходит в -i.

Исключения: day/daily, pay/paid, say/said, lay/laid

5 Changing -ie to -y

Если слово оканчивается на -ie, -ing -ie переходит в -y.

tie    lying
lie    lying
Doubling final consonants (Удвоение конечных согласных)

Если односложное слово оканчивается на одну гласную + одну согласную, перед -ing, -ed, -er и -est конечная согласная удваивается.

Но в конце слова -у, -w или -x не удваивается.

Если слово, состоящее из двух и более слогов, оканчивается на одну гласную + одну согласную, конечная согласная удваивается, если конечный слог ударный.

Если конечный слог не ударный, конечная согласная не удваивается.

Исключения: В британском варианте английского языка удваивается в конце слова -l, если конечный слог не ударный.

EXERCISE 188 A
Add the -s/-es ending to these words; put the words into the correct groups: 1, 2, 3 or 4.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>wait</th>
<th>shelf</th>
<th>copy</th>
<th>match</th>
<th>buzz</th>
<th>plate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>worry</td>
<td>miss</td>
<td>run</td>
<td>pay</td>
<td>admit</td>
<td>wife</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>finish</td>
<td>fly</td>
<td>knife</td>
<td>spy</td>
<td>disco</td>
<td>tomato</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

EXERCISE 188 B
Add the -ing endings to these words; put the words into the correct groups: 1, 2, 3 or 4.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>stop</th>
<th>die</th>
<th>dry</th>
<th>some</th>
<th>play</th>
<th>knit</th>
<th>show</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fix</td>
<td>make</td>
<td>tie</td>
<td>offer</td>
<td>visit</td>
<td>travel</td>
<td>write</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plan</td>
<td>marry</td>
<td>shop</td>
<td>behave</td>
<td>stay</td>
<td>admit</td>
<td>leave</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

wait shelf copy match buzz plate worry miss run pay admit wife finish fly knife spy disco tomato

drying coming dying stopping

1 2 3 4
+-s +-es /+-ies /+-+ves
waits catches copies shelves

1 2 3 4
+-ing -d+-ing -f+-+ying x2+-ing
EXERCISE 188C
Add the -ed endings to these words; put the words into the correct groups: 1, 2, 3 or 4.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>apply</th>
<th>rob</th>
<th>wash</th>
<th>arrive</th>
<th>trap</th>
<th>pull</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>move</td>
<td>empty</td>
<td>phone</td>
<td>pray</td>
<td>hope</td>
<td>travel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>show</td>
<td>admit</td>
<td>save</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>happy</th>
<th>big</th>
<th>high</th>
<th>nice</th>
<th>late</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>busy</td>
<td>slow</td>
<td>simple</td>
<td>short</td>
<td>wide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>funny</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

EXERCISE 188D
Add the -er and -est endings to these words; put the words into the correct groups: 1, 2, 3 or 4.

1. +-ed
2. X+-ed
3. X+¥+-ied
4. X 2+-ed

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>+er/-est</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>arrived</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X 2+-ed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>robbed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>+er/-est</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>higher - highest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nicer - nicest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X 2+-er/-est</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>happier - happiest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bigger - biggest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

EXERCISE 188E
Add the -ly endings to these words; put the words into the correct groups: 1, 2 or 3.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>tete</th>
<th>happy</th>
<th>gentle</th>
<th>hopeful</th>
<th>real</th>
<th>horrible</th>
<th>idle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>quick</td>
<td>beautiful</td>
<td>lucky</td>
<td>dry</td>
<td>sudden</td>
<td>definite</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>polite</td>
<td>heavy</td>
<td>probable</td>
<td>temporary</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. +ly
2. Xe+ly
3. X+ily

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>lately</th>
<th>gently</th>
<th>happily</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>X lately</td>
<td>gently</td>
<td>happily</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
189 Contractions (Стяжение)

Стяжение - это такие краткие формы, как I'm (= I am), you 've (= you have), isn't (= is not) и don't (= do not).

К стяжению часто прибегают в разговорном и неофициальном письменном английском языке, например, в письмах к друзьям.

При стяжении на письме ставится апостроф (') там, где буква или буквы опускаются.

I'm (= I am; ' = a) you 've (= you have; ' = ha)
isn't (= is not; ' = o) don't (= do not; ' = o)

Ниже приведены наиболее употребительные стяжения:

I'm /aim/ (= I am)
I've /aiv/ (= I have)
I'll /ail/ (= I will)
I'd /aid/ (= I had or I would)

you 're /ju(r)/ (= you are)
you 've /ju:v/ (= you have)
you 'll /ju:l/ (= you will)
you 'd /ju:d/ (= you had or you would)

he 's /hi:z/ (= he is or he has)
he 'll /hi:l/ (= he will)
he 'd /hi:d/ (= he had or he would)

she 's /ʃi:z/ (= she is or she has)
she 'll /ʃi:l/ (= she will)
she 'd /ʃi:d/ (= she had or she would)

it's /ɪts/ (= it is or it has)
it'll /ɪtl/ (= it will)
it 'd /ɪtd/ (= it had or it would)

we 're /wɛ(r)/ (= we are)
we 've /wɛ:v/ (= we have)
we 'll /wɛ:l/ (= we will)
we 'd /wɛ:d/ (= we had or we would)

Обратите внимание, что:
's может быть is или has
She's a student. (= She is a student.)
She's got two brothers. (= She has got two brothers.)
'dможет быть had или would
I'd seen the film before. (= I had seen the film before.)
I'd like a coffee. (= I would like a coffee.)
am not сокращается как aren't /aːnt/ в вопросах, например, Aren't I right?
Обратите внимание, что иногда возможны два отрицательных стяжения. Нельзя, напри-мер, сказать she isn’t или she’s not, you aren’t или you’re not, he won’t или he’ll not.

Очень часто краткие формы употребляются после личного местоимения, например, I’m, you’ve или в отрицаниях, например, isn’t, don’t. Но иногда краткую форму (особенно ‘s) можно употреблять после существительного.

Maria’s a student. (= Maria is a student.)
My father’s got a new car. (= My father has got a new car.)

Краткая форма также может употребляться после вопросительного слова, например, what, where who и после there, here, that и now.

What’s the time? (= What is the time?)
There’ll be trouble. (= There will be trouble.)
Where’s Peter gone? (= Where has Peter gone?)
That’s right. (= That is right.)

Нельзя употреблять утвердительные краткие формы ‘s, ‘ve и т.д. в конце предложения (потому что глагол в конце предложения ударный).

Do you know who she is ? (Not: Do you know who she’s?)
‘Have you finished?’ ‘Yes, I have.’ (Not: ‘Yes, I’ve.’)

Но отрицания isn’t, haven’t и т.д. могут употребляться в конце предложения.

‘Is she English?’ ‘No, she isn’t.’
You’ve finished, but I haven’t.

Note

− В ‘ненормированном’ английском языке (языке, который не считается ‘правильным’) ain’t /eint/ часто употребляется как сокращенная форма от am not, are not, is not and have not, has not, например, I ain’t hungry. (= / am not hungry.)
- Не смешивайте it’s (= it is или it has) и its (притяжательная форма от it), например: The cat ate its food.
190 Irregular verbs (Неправильные глаголы)

Verbs can be regular or irregular: (Глаголы могут быть правильными и неправильными)

1 Regular verbs

Regular verbs (eg work, play, move) add -ed in the past tense and past participle.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INFINITIVE FORM</th>
<th>PAST TENSE</th>
<th>PAST PARTICIPLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>work</td>
<td>worked</td>
<td>worked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>play</td>
<td>played</td>
<td>played</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>move</td>
<td>moved</td>
<td>moved</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Irregular verbs

Irregular verbs do not add -ed in the past tense and past participle:

a Некоторые неправильные глаголы имеют одинаковую форму в infinitive, past tense и past participle.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INFINITIVE FORM</th>
<th>PAST TENSE</th>
<th>PAST PARTICIPLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bet</td>
<td>bet</td>
<td>bet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>burst</td>
<td>burst</td>
<td>burst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cost</td>
<td>cost</td>
<td>cost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut</td>
<td>cut</td>
<td>cut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hit</td>
<td>hit</td>
<td>hit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hurt</td>
<td>hurt</td>
<td>hurt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>let</td>
<td>let</td>
<td>let</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b Другие неправильные глаголы одинаковы в двух из трех форм.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INFINITIVE FORM</th>
<th>PAST TENSE</th>
<th>PAST PARTICIPLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>beat</td>
<td>beaten</td>
<td>fought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>become</td>
<td>become</td>
<td>found</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bend</td>
<td>bent</td>
<td>got</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bleed</td>
<td>bled</td>
<td>hung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>breed</td>
<td>bred</td>
<td>have</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bring</td>
<td>brought</td>
<td>heard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>build</td>
<td>built</td>
<td>held</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bum</td>
<td>burnt*</td>
<td>kept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buy</td>
<td>bought</td>
<td>lay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>catch</td>
<td>caught</td>
<td>lead</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come</td>
<td>come</td>
<td>lean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>creep-</td>
<td>crept</td>
<td>learn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deal</td>
<td>dealt</td>
<td>leap</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dig</td>
<td>dug</td>
<td>leave</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dream</td>
<td>dreamt*</td>
<td>lend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feed</td>
<td>fed</td>
<td>light</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feel</td>
<td>felt</td>
<td>lose</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

292
### Irregular Verbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Past Tense</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>make</td>
<td>made</td>
<td>made</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mean</td>
<td>meant</td>
<td>meant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meet</td>
<td>met</td>
<td>met</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pay</td>
<td>paid</td>
<td>paid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>run</td>
<td>run</td>
<td>run</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>say</td>
<td>said</td>
<td>said</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sell</td>
<td>sold</td>
<td>sold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>send</td>
<td>sent</td>
<td>sent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shine</td>
<td>shone</td>
<td>shone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shoot</td>
<td>shot</td>
<td>shot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sit</td>
<td>sat</td>
<td>sat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sleep</td>
<td>slept</td>
<td>slept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>smell</td>
<td>smelt*</td>
<td>smelt*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>speed</td>
<td>sped</td>
<td>sped</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spell</td>
<td>spelt*</td>
<td>spelt*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spend</td>
<td>spent</td>
<td>spent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spill</td>
<td>spilt*</td>
<td>spilt*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spit</td>
<td>spat</td>
<td>spat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spoil</td>
<td>spoilt*</td>
<td>spoilt*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Past Tense</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ring</td>
<td>rang</td>
<td>run</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take</td>
<td>took</td>
<td>taken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>speak</td>
<td>spoke</td>
<td>spoken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sleep</td>
<td>slept</td>
<td>slept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dream</td>
<td>dreamed</td>
<td>dreamed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lean</td>
<td>leaned</td>
<td>leaned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leap</td>
<td>leaped</td>
<td>leaped</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>learn</td>
<td>learned</td>
<td>learned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spell</td>
<td>spelled</td>
<td>spelled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spill</td>
<td>spilled</td>
<td>spilled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spoil</td>
<td>spoiled</td>
<td>spoiled</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*These verbs can also be *correct*:

- burned
- dreamed
- leaned
- leaped
- learned
- smelled
- spelt
- spilled
- spoiled

### Другие неправильные глаголы различны в трех формах.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Past Tense</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>be</td>
<td>was/were</td>
<td>been</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>begin</td>
<td>began</td>
<td>begun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bite</td>
<td>bit</td>
<td>bitten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blow</td>
<td>blew</td>
<td>blown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break</td>
<td>broke</td>
<td>broken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>choose</td>
<td>chose</td>
<td>chosen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td>did</td>
<td>done</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>draw</td>
<td>drew</td>
<td>drawn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drink</td>
<td>drank</td>
<td>drunk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drive</td>
<td>drove</td>
<td>driven</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eat</td>
<td>ate</td>
<td>eaten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fall</td>
<td>fell</td>
<td>fallen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fly</td>
<td>flew</td>
<td>flown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forbid</td>
<td>forbade</td>
<td>forbidden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forget</td>
<td>forgot</td>
<td>forgotten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forgive</td>
<td>forgave</td>
<td>forgiven</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>freeze</td>
<td>froze</td>
<td>frozen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>give</td>
<td>gave</td>
<td>given</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go</td>
<td>went</td>
<td>gone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grow</td>
<td>grew</td>
<td>grown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hide</td>
<td>hid</td>
<td>hidden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>know</td>
<td>knew</td>
<td>known</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lie</td>
<td>lay</td>
<td>lain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mistake</td>
<td>mistook</td>
<td>mistaken</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ride</td>
<td>rode</td>
<td>ridden</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*This verb can also be *correct*:

- sewed
Учебно-контрольные тесты

Эти тесты предназначены для проверки понимания и умений использования основных разделов грамматики в учебном пособии *The Heinemann English Grammar.*

Предлагается 88 тестов.

Ответы на тесты на страницах 348-353 издания, содержащего ключи к ответами.

Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Units</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Present simple and present continuous</td>
<td>1-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Past simple and past continuous</td>
<td>4-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Been and gone</td>
<td>6-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Present perfect with just, yet and already</td>
<td>6, 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Present perfect simple and present perfect continuous</td>
<td>6, 9, 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Present perfect with for and since</td>
<td>6, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Present perfect and past simple</td>
<td>6, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Present perfect and present tense</td>
<td>6, 9, 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Present perfect simple and past simple</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Past perfect continuous, past simple and past continuous</td>
<td>4, 5, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Will and going to</td>
<td>16-18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Present continuous and going to</td>
<td>19-20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Present simple and will</td>
<td>21-22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Future continuous and future perfect</td>
<td>23-24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Future in the past: was/were going to</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Continuous forms with always</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>Verbs not used in the continuous</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>Review of the present and the past</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>Review of the future</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>Imperative and let's</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>Be (Unit 31)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>There is, there are</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>Have and have got</td>
<td>33-34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>Ability: can, could, be able to</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>Permission: can, could, may, might, be allowed to</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>Obligation and necessity</td>
<td>38-39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>Review of permission and obligation</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>Needn't have and didn't need to</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>Obligation and advice</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>Possibility: may, might, could</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>Possibility: can</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>Probability: should, ought to</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>Deduction: must, can't</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>Review of possibility, probability and deduction</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>Requests, offers and suggestions</td>
<td>48-50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>Habits: used to, will, would</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>Refusals: won't, wouldn't; promises and threats: will</td>
<td>52-53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
<td>May/might as well</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td>Other uses of should</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>Wish and if only</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
<td>Would rather</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
<td>It's time</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43</td>
<td>The passive</td>
<td>59-60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>The passive with by and with</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>The passive</td>
<td>61, 62, 64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46</td>
<td>Have something done</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47</td>
<td>If sentences, conditionals</td>
<td>66, 68-70, 72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
<td>Unreal past conditionals</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49</td>
<td>Conditional clauses without if</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>Review of conditionals</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51</td>
<td>Reported speech: statements</td>
<td>76-78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52</td>
<td>Reported speech: questions</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53</td>
<td>Using the to infinitive in reported speech</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54</td>
<td>Review of reported speech</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55</td>
<td>-ing form or infinitive</td>
<td>82-98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56</td>
<td>(-ing and ed) adjectives</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57</td>
<td>Participle (-ing) clauses</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58</td>
<td>Singular and plural</td>
<td>101-103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59</td>
<td>Possessive forms</td>
<td>104-106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>Countable and uncountable nouns</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61</td>
<td>Articles</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62</td>
<td>Articles</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63</td>
<td>Articles</td>
<td>108-113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64</td>
<td>Quantity</td>
<td>114-119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65</td>
<td>Pronouns, etc</td>
<td>120-125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66</td>
<td>One (s)</td>
<td>124</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Something, anything, etc (Unit 125)
Form, position and order of adjectives
(Units 126)
Comparatives, superlatives and as ... as
(Units 127-129)
Adjectives and adverbs (Unit 130)
Adverb position (Units 131-136)
Adverbs (Units 133-139)
Comparison: adverbs (Unit 140)
Negatives (Unit 141)
Questions (Units 142-147)
Question tags (Unit 147)
Reply questions (Unit 148)
Indirect questions (Unit 149)
Short answers (Units 150, 152)
So/neither am I etc (Unit 151)
Relative clauses (Units 153-159)
Linking words (Units 160-164)
Prepositions of place and movement
(Units 165-168)
Prepositions of time (Units 169-174)
Other prepositions (Units 175-177)
Word and preposition combinations
(Units 178-182)
Indirect objects with or without to and/or
(Unit 184)
Phrasal verbs (Units 185-186)

1 Present simple and present continuous (Units 1-3)

(i) Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form: the present simple or the present continuous.

1 Britain (have) an election at least once every four years.
2 I (negotiate) a new pay deal with my boss at the moment.
3 It (rain) every time I (leave) my umbrella at home.
4 Please sit down! I (try) to watch this TV programme.
5 American Football (become) very popular in England.
6 Robert never (go) abroad for his holidays. It's too expensive.
7 Many of the world's natural resources (disappear).
8 Rain (fall) very heavily in Bombay during June and July.
9 My parents are in America on holiday. They (stay) near San Francisco.
10 The traffic (move) very slowly on the motorway today. Workmen (repair) the road.

(ii) Choose the correct answer — A or B.

1 skiing in the French Alps every year.
   A We go   B We're going
2 one of Agatha Christie's books at the moment.
   A / read   B I'm reading
3 Some modern cars (run) on unleaded petrol.
   A run   B are running
4 The St Lawrence River (flows) into the North Atlantic.
   A flows   B is flowing
5 'Where's the cat?' 'on the sofa.'
   A It lies   B It's lying
6 Drive heavily this morning.
   A It snows   B It's snowing
7 Be careful! The ladder (fall) down.
   A falls   B is falling
8 The planet Mercury (travels) round the sun every eighty-eight days.
   A travels   B is travelling

2 Past simple and past continuous (Units 4–5)

(i) There are mistakes in some of these sentences. Find the mistakes and correct them.

1 The Titanic travelled to New York when it hit an iceberg and sank in the Atlantic.
2 The jumper was shrinking when I washed it.
3 Christopher Columbus was sailing in the Santa Maria when he discovered America.
4 I was breaking my toe when I tripped over the dog.
5 The mouse was having a heart attack when the cat jumped down from the chair.
6 The footballer ran towards the goal when he fell over.
7 James Dean drove a sports car when he was dying.

(ii) Make sentences. Put the verbs into the correct form: the past simple or the past continuous.

1 while I | write | a letter the phone | ring |.
2 you | read | the newspaper as soon as it arrive | ?
3 she | not | lock | the door when she | leave | the office | .
4 the train | go | through the tunnel when it | suddenly | stop | .
5 Sally | wash | her hair when the doorbell | ring | .
6 John Logic Baird | invent | the television or the telephone | ?
7 they | cry | when they | hear | the bad news | .
8 the cat | lie | on the sofa when the mouse | come | into the room | .

3 Been and gone (Units 6–7)

Choose the correct answer.

1 The children are back at school now. They've been/gone on holiday for the summer.
2 'Have you ever been/gone to Niagara Falls?' 'No, but I've been/gone to the Great lakes.'
3 Bill worked very hard today. He's been/gone to bed early.
4 I’ve got a lot of money. I’ve been/gone to the bank today.
5 ‘His car isn’t in the garage. I think he’s been/gone away for the day.’

4 Present perfect with just, yet and already (Units 6, 8)
Put the words in the correct order.
(Sometimes two answers are possible.)
Example:
started | have | they | to have | just | dinner |.
They have just started to have dinner.
1 just | to rain | has | it | started |.
2 you | that book | have | yet | finished | ?
3 yet | that film | seen | haven’t | 1 |.
4 the bus | just | left | has |.
5 you | already | done | your shopping | have? |
6 has | for several jobs | Bob | applied | already |.

5 Present perfect simple and present perfect continuous (Units 6, 9, 10)
(i) Complete the sentences using the present perfect simple or present perfect continuous of the words in the box.

break grow make
play put up lose

1 My young brother _____ three centimetres this month.
2 The young children _____ a snowman all morning.
31 _____my arm twice in two years.
4 I’m tired. I _____ tennis all afternoon.
5 Have you got any money? I _____ my wallet.
6 They _____ their tent for over an hour now and they still haven’t finished.

(ii) Complete the questions. Use the present perfect simple or present perfect continuous.
Example:
I’ve saved some money.
How much have you saved!
How long have you been saving?

1 Mike is losing his hair.
   How long_____his hair?
   How much hair______?
2 I’m looking for a flat.
   How many flats are at?
   How long______?
3 Annie is doing her homework.
   How long____it?
   How much homework______?
4 They’re playing tennis.
   How long______?
   How many games_____?

6 Present perfect with for and since (Units 6, 11)
Re-write the sentences beginning with the words given. Use for or since.
Example:
Great Britain introduced decimal currency in 1971.
Great Britain has had decimal currency since 1971.
11 last read War and Peace in 1980.
   I haven’t____
2 Sarah started studying Spanish two years ago.
   Sarah has been____
3 Steven Spielberg started directing films in the 1960s.
   Steven Spielberg has been____
4 It started raining on Monday.
   It hasn’t stopped____
5 My mother stopped working ten years ago.
   My mother hasn’t____
6 My sister stopped skiing in 1989.
   My sister hasn’t____
7 Robert de Niro began acting in the 1970s.
   Robert de Niro has been____

7 Present perfect and past simple (Units 6, 12)
(i) There are mistakes in some of these sentences. Find the mistakes and correct them.
1 I live in Brighton. I lived here for ten years.
2 Tolstoy has written War and Peace.
3 I started studying Spanish two years ago.
4 Oh, no! Look! Someone stole my car radio!
5 Who has discovered America?
6 We’ve played tennis yesterday afternoon.
7 When have you passed your driving test?
8 When did Neil Armstrong walk on the moon?
9 I never ate Chinese food in my life.
10 Look at Mike! He grew a beard!

(ii) Choose the correct answer — A or B?

1 I_____to Los Angeles in 1980.
   A have been  B went
2 You_____a lot of interesting things in your life.
   A have done  B did
3 James Dean_____in the film Rebel without a Cause.
   A has starred  B starred
4 Who_____the wheel?
   A has invented  B invented
5 I_____coffee since 1980.
   A haven’t drunk  B didn’t drink
6 How many people_____in the Second World War?
   A have died  B died
7 I work in a bank now. I_____there for a year.
   A have worked  B worked
8 We_____the new Steven Spielberg film last week.
   A have seen  B saw
9_____the news last night?
   A Have you heard  B Did you hear
10 When_____your new car?
    A have you bought  B did you buy

8 Present perfect and present tense
(Units 6, 9, 13)

There are mistakes in some of these sentences. Find the mistakes and correct them.

1 Carlo lives in Rome since three years.
2 Bob is working hard at the moment.
3 How long are you studying English?
4 My parents are married for thirty years.
5 I’m using a computer these days.
6 Sarah knows Simon for a long time.
7 Those men are waiting outside since 2.00.
8 Have you been sitting there for long?
9 My sister lives in Brighton since 1980.
10 The Rolling Stones rock group are playing together for over twenty years.

9 Past perfect simple and past simple
(Unit 14)

(i) Choose the correct answer — A or B.

1 I arrived at the bus station late yesterday. When I got there, my bus_____.
   A left  B had left
2 I arrived at the bus station at 10 o’clock last night. My bus_____at 10.15.
   A left  B had left
3 I was asleep when my friend phoned me last night. I_____in bed for two hours.
   A was  B had been
4 When I arrived home my father wasn’t there. He_____out.
   A went  B had gone
5 I had breakfast when I_____a shower.
   A had  B had had

(ii) Make sentences. Put the verbs into the past simple or past perfect simple.

1 when I visit the town last month | they | build | a new hospital
2 when we | have | dinner | we | go | out for a walk
3 when Sue | look | in the fridge | all the food | go
4 I not know | the way to John’s house because I | not be | there before
5 Mike | get | really exhausted in his first marathon because he | not run | in such a long race before

10 Past perfect continuous, past simple and past continuous (Units 4, 5, 15)

There are mistakes in some of these sentences. Find the mistakes and correct them.

1 We were waiting for an hour when our train finally arrived yesterday.
2 I’d been playing football for over twenty years when I gave it up in 1980.
3 We lived in Paris for ten years when we moved to Madrid last year.
4 After we'd been walking round the town for a few hours, we decided to have lunch.
5 It was late and I was working since early in the morning, so I was very tired.

11 Will and going to (Units 16–18)
Complete the sentences. Use will or going to and the verbs in the box.

Teach lend live bite take look
have buy ' meet rain

1 ‘Would you like to come to the cinema with us?’ ‘All right. I ______ you at 7.00.’
2 Look at those black clouds. It ______
3 ‘I can’t find my umbrella.’ ‘Don’t worry. I ______ you mine.’
4 ‘Have you seen my tennis racket?’ ‘No. I haven’t. Just a minute. I ______ in the cupboard.’
5 ‘I can’t play chess.’ ‘I ______ you if you like.’
6 ‘Why are you putting on your coat?’ ‘I ______ the dog for a walk.’
7 ‘Why are you selling your house?’ ‘We ______ in the country.’
8 Don’t go near that dog! It ______ you!
9 ‘I’m going to buy Sally a Walkman for her birthday.’ ‘She’s already got one.’ ‘Has she? Well, I ______ her a new sweater.’
10 Have you heard the news? Mrs Green’s pregnant again. She ______ another baby.

13 Present simple and will (Units 21–22)
Choose the correct answer — A or B.

1 We’ll go for a picnic tomorrow if the weather ______ nice.
   A will be   B is

2 Simon will get a ticket for the U2 concert, providing he ______ all night.
   A will queue   B queues

3 If you go to Moscow, you ______ Red Square.
   A will see   B see

4 Sue will give me some money when she ______ paid.
   A will get   B gets

5 I’ll phone Mike as soon as I ______ any news.
   A will hear   B hear

6 Unless you work hard, you ______ your exams.
   A will fail   B fail

14 Future continuous and future perfect (Units 23–24)
Ken and Kate are going to Paris tomorrow. Here is their timetable for tomorrow morning:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Activity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7.30–8.30</td>
<td>Drive to the airport</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.30</td>
<td>Check-in at the airport</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.00–11.00</td>
<td>Flight to Paris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.15–11.45</td>
<td>Taxi to the hotel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>Lunch at the hotel</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Complete the sentences about Ken and Kate. Put the verbs into the future continuous or future perfect.

1 At 8.00 they ______ (leave) home and they ______ (drive) to the airport.
2 At 8.30 they ______ (arrive) at the airport and they ______ (check-in).
3 At 10.15 they ______ (fly) to Paris.
4 At 11.30 they ______ (arrive) in Paris and they ______ (drive) to their hotel.
5 At 1.10 they ______ (have) lunch at the hotel.
15 **Future in the past: was/were going to**
(Unit 25)

Make sentences with *was/were going to* ..., but ....

Example:
1. I take the dog for a walk | it | start | to rain
   / was going to take the dog for a walk, but it started to rain.
2. Robert | watch | the film on TV | he | fall asleep
3. Visit | you | I | not have | enough time
4. Sarah | change | some traveller's cheques | the bank | be | closed
5. We | go | to the concert | it | be | cancelled
6. My parents | fly to Scotland | they | decide | to go by train

16 **Continuous forms with always** (Unit 26)

Put the verbs in brackets into the most suitable form: the present simple or the present continuous.

1. You're never satisfied! You (always | complain)!
2. Maria is never late for work. She (always | arrive) on time.
3. Stephanie is very conceited. She (always | look) at herself in the mirror.
4. Joe is very kind. He (always | help) people.
5. I never feel hungry in the mornings. I (always | have) a small breakfast.

17 **Verbs not used in the continuous**
(Unit 27)

Choose the correct answer — A or B.

1. Some people ____ there is life on other planets.
   A are believing   B believe
2. You look worried. What____ about?
   A are you thinking   B do you think
3. ‘Where's Ken?’ ‘I think ____ a bath.’
   A he's having   B he has
4. I think Ken ____ a moustache.
   A is having   B has
5. Which sports ____?
   A are you liking   B do you like
6. You can switch off the radio ____ to it.
   A I'm not listening   B / don't listen
   I ____ the Russian alphabet?
   A Are you understanding   B Do you understand
8. What's wrong? You look like ____ a ghost!
   A you've just been seeing   B you've just seen
   A I wasn't hearing   B / didn't hear
10. How long ____ your best friend?
    A have you been knowing   B have you known

18 **Review of the present and the past**
(Unit 28)

(i) Correct the mistakes in this letter using suitable present or past forms.

---

Dear Mrs Black,

I write to you in reply to your advertisement in last Monday's Evening Argus.

At the moment, I working for Sun Travel, a company in London. I work there for two years. Before I was joining Sun Travel, I have worked for a student travel company in Spain. I work there for a year. Before that, I have worked for Worldwide Travel in Brighton for a year. Now I would like to move back to Brighton and I look for a job with a travel company in the town.

---

(ii) Use these words to make the sentences in a story. Put the verbs into a suitable present or past form.

1. What ____ the most embarrassing thing that ____ happen to you in your life?
21 I have a terrible experience last Saturday.
3 This is what happen.
4 I leave my flat at 2 o'clock and go into town to do some shopping.
5 I go shopping most Saturday afternoons.
6 By 4 o'clock I finish shopping and I go into a cafe for a cup of coffee.
7 While I sit in the cafe, I see a friend called Julie Jones and she join me.
8 At around 4.30 Julie and I pay the bill and leave the cafe.
9 As we leave, I offer to give Julie a lift home in my car.
10 She say she would like a lift so we walk to the car park together.
11 I always put my car in the same car park near the town centre, but when we get to the car park, I have a big surprise.
12 My car is not there!
13 Of course, I immediately think that someone steal it.
14 I phone the police, but luckily I do not.
15 I suddenly realise the truth!
16 I not drive into town that day!
17 I come on the bus instead.
18 Imagine how stupid I feel.
19 My face go so red.
20 Julie just smile and say ‘Don’t worry. We can take the bus home together!’

(iii) Complete the sentences in this story. Put the verbs in brackets into a suitable past form.

One night in January 1938 Samuel Beckett walk home in Paris. He be to the cinema and then to a cafe, where he spend some time with friends. As Beckett and his friends walk along the Avenue d’Orleans, a man stop them and ask them for money. The man drink heavily all evening and he is very drunk. Beckett refuse to give him any money. When he start to walk away the man take out a knife and stab Beckett in the chest. A young woman called Suzanne pass by at the time. She help Beckett. Later she visit him in hospital. Twenty-three years later Beckett and Suzanne get married.

19 Review of the future (Unit 29)
Choose the correct or most suitable answer — A or B.

1 Who do you think the next election?
   A is winning  B will win
2 my flat by next weekend.
   A / paint  B I’ve have painted
3 Don’t go out without a coat on a cold.
   A You ’ll catch  B You’re going to catch
4 I can’t come out with you on Saturday.
   a friend.
   A / meet  B I’m meeting
5 At 2.00 tomorrow in my office.
   A I’ll work  B I’m going to work
6 The concert at 8.00 on Saturday.
   A starts  B is going to start
7 ‘Would you like a drink?’ ‘Oh, yes a Coke. Thank you.’
   A I’ll have  B I’m going to have
8 ‘Where are you going with that ladder?’ ‘the roof.’
   A I’ll repair  B I’m going to repair
9 If Martha, I’ll tell her the news.
   A I see  B I’ll see
10 Look out! That glass off the table.
   A falls  B is going to fall

20 Imperative and let’s (Unit 30)
(i) How can you make your own yoghurt? Complete the instructions with the verbs in the box.

| add  | leave  | boil  | leave | stir |

__I__ some milk for one minute. Then __2__ the milk to cool for five minutes. Next, __3__ a little natural yoghurt to the milk and __4__ Then __5__ the mixture in a warm place for about eight hours.
(ii) Make suggestions. Use Let's or Let's not and the words in the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>tell</th>
<th>stay</th>
<th>hurry</th>
<th>make</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1 We don't want to be late _______.
2 We want to keep this a secret _______.
3 We want to be careful _______.
4 We don't want to go out now _______.

21 Be (Unit 31)

(i) Complete the sentences using the present or past forms of be.

Hello. My name is _______. John Jackson and my sister's name is _______. Anna. We are from Newcastle. That is in the northeast of England. I was 25 years old and Anna was 16. Anna was born in Newcastle, but I wasn't born in Liverpool. What about you? What is your name? You aren't English. Where were you born?

(ii) Complete the sentences using the words in the box.

is (is) isn't are (are) aren't was wasn't were weren't

1 'Is Steven Spielberg a film maker?' 'Yes, he is.'
2 'Is Dallas in Arizona?' 'No, it isn't in Texas.'
3 'Is Madonna English?' 'No, she isn't American.'
4 The Rocky Mountains are in Mexico. They are in the United States and Canada.
5 'Is Pablo Picasso French?' 'No, he isn't. He is Spanish.'
6 'Where were the first Olympic Games?' 'They were in Greece.'
7 'Are Marie and Pierre Curie American?' 'No, they aren't.'

22 There is, there are (Unit 32)

Complete the sentences. Use there, it or they with a suitable form of be.

Example:

There's an old castle on the hill. It's over 500 years old.

1 It's a film on TV tonight called The Deer Hunter.
2 The five senses are sight, hearing, taste, smell and touch.
3 'Is a computer shop in the town centre?' 'Yes, it is in West Street.'
4 'Are any books about Alfred Hitchcock in the library?' 'Yes, they are in the film section.'
5 A closing-down sale at the ABC Carpet Store last month from the 26th to the 31st of July.
6 Another Olympic Games in the year 2020 probably will be held in Greece.

23 Have and have got (Units 33-34)

There are mistakes in some of these sentences. Find the mistakes and correct them.

1 I'm having a rest at the moment.
2 I'm having got a pain in my neck at the moment.
3 Had you got a good journey yesterday?
4 Have you got a new computer?
5 We're having dinner late tonight.
6 We usually have got dinner at 7 o'clock.
7 'Have you got a car?' 'Yes, I've got.'
8 I've got an appointment with the doctor.
9 Did Madonna have got blonde hair in 1991?
10 Do you have got a driving licence?

24 Ability: can, could, be able to (Unit 36)

Choose the correct answer — A, B or C.

1 How many languages ______?  
   A do you speak  
   B can you speak  
   C can you to speak
2 Mike______chess very well.
   A to can’t play  B doesn’t can play
   C can’t play
3 Maria______very fast when she was younger.
   A can run  B could run
   C was able run
4 The traffic was very heavy, but Peter ______to work on time.
   A managed to get  B could get
   C couldn’t get
5 They were whispering so I ______what they were saying very clearly.
   A could hear  B couldn’t to hear
   C couldn’t hear
6 My grandfather was a very good footballer. He______a professional if he had wanted to.
   A could be  B was able to be
   C could have been
7 When Martha asked me for money, I ______her some, so I did.
   A could lend  B was able to lend
   C could have lent
8 Sue would like______to buy a new car.
   A to be able to afford  B to can afford
   C be able to afford
9 Do you think that doctors______cancer in the future?
   A will can cure  B will able to cure
   C will be able to cure
10 I______the company’s offer of a job in Edinburgh, but I didn’t want to live in Scotland.
   A could accept  B could have accepted
   C could to have accepted

25 Permission: can, could, may, might, be allowed to (Unit 37)

There are mistakes in some of these sentences. Find the mistakes and correct them.

1 ‘Can I use your car this evening?’ ‘Yes, of course you could.’
2 The law says that you might not drive a car in Britain without a seat belt.
3 ‘May I ask you for a favour?’ ‘Of course you can.’
4 ‘Could I borrow your dictionary?’ ‘Yes, of course you might.’
5 My brother may borrow my sister’s computer any time he wants to.
6 You can have a look at my newspaper if you like.
7 My sister’s daughter could stay up late and watch the World Cup on TV last night.

26 Obligation and necessity (Units 38–39)

(i) Re-write the sentences using the words in brackets.

Example:
It is against the law to drive without a licence.

(mustn’t)
You mustn’t drive without a licence.

1 It isn’t necessary to be over 16 to get married, (don’t have to)
2 It is important for me to pass the exam. (must)
3 It is necessary to have an appointment to see the manager. (have to)
4 It isn’t necessary for you to apologise, (don’t have to)
5 It is against the law to drive without a seat belt. (mustn’t)

(ii) Complete each sentence using the most suitable word in the box.

must have to have to had to
having to have to

1 I’m sorry, but I can’t see you this evening. My boss has told me I ______work late.
2 You’re always working late! You______work late yesterday, too!
3 I’ve got a terrible toothache. I really______go to the dentist.
4 I’ve got an appointment with the dentist today. I_____be there at 2.00.
5 I hate______go to the dentist.
6 The law says that you_____report a motor accident to the police.
27 Review of permission and obligation (Unit 40)

Choose the most suitable answer — A, B or C.

1 It isn't cold outside. You _____ wear a coat.
   A mustn't  B can  C needn't
2 You_____keep out of that room. It's private.
   A don't have to  B mustn't  C must
3 You_____fall asleep when you drive a car.
   A mustn't  B needn't  C must
4 I'm going to retire soon. Then I won't_____ work any more.
   A must  B have to  C can
5 You_____vote in Britain until you are 18.
   A have to  B can  C aren't allowed to
6 You_____wear a uniform in the army.
   A can  B have to  C mustn't
7 Tomorrow is a holiday. We_____go to work.
   A don't have to  B aren't allowed to
   C have to
8 You_____ride a bicycle on a motorway in Britain.
   A must  B don't have to  C can't

28 Needn't have and didn't need to (Unit 41)

There are mistakes in some of these sentences. Find the mistakes and correct them.

1 We needn't have bought so much wine for the party because nobody drank much.
2 Mike needn't have gone to work yesterday, so he stayed at home.
3 It was nice of you to phone and thank me, but you really didn't need to.
4 Sue needn't have hurried home, so she took her time.
5 Kate needn't have made lunch when she arrived home from work because her husband had already done it.

29 Obligation and advice (Unit 42)

Choose the most suitable answer — A, B or C.

1 Language students_____a little every day.
   A is supposed to study  B should study
   C had better study
2 I think my car has been stolen. I_____the police.
   A had better phone  B should have phoned
   C am supposed to phone
3 I_____tennis tomorrow, but I can't.
   A had better play  B am supposed to play
   C am not supposed to play
4 I_____this bill last month, but I forgot.
   A should pay  B had better pay
   C ought to have paid
5 We have to get up early tomorrow, so we_____to bed too late tonight.
   A had better not go  B ought to go
   C are supposed to go
6 Everyone_____a holiday sometimes.
   A had better take  B ought take
   C should take
7 I've forgotten to send my friend a birthday card. What_____?
   A am I supposed to do  B shall I do
   C shall I to do
8 You_____my new camera or I'll kill you!
   A had better not break  B shouldn't break
   C aren't supposed to break
9 I've got a terrible headache. I think I_____take an aspirin.
   A am supposed to  B should take
   C had better to take
10 You_____with us to the beach yesterday.
    We had a very nice time.
   A had better come  B should come
   C should have come

30 Possibility: may, might, could (Unit 43)

Re-write each sentence making it unsure. Use the words in brackets.

Example:

Sarah lent Simon some money. (might)
Sarah might have lent Simon some money.

1 It will rain tonight. (may)
2 Peter is in the Sports centre. (could)
3 Sally wrote to the bank. (might)
4 Ken didn't see me. (may)
5 I won't be here tomorrow. (might)
6 The robbers had a key to the office. (may)
7 The children aren't asleep. (might)
8 People will be living on the moon in the year 2050. (could)
9 Mike didn't receive my letter. (may)
10 Those people are waving at us. (might)

31 Possibility: can (Unit 44)
Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Use can or may.
Example:
It is sometimes very hot here in the summer.
It can be very hot here in the summer.
1 Perhaps it will be very hot here tomorrow.
It_____
2 Perhaps I am wrong.
I_____
3 It is possible for anyone to be wrong.
Anyone_____
4 Cats sometimes live for 20 years.
Cats_____
5 Perhaps your cat will live for 20 years.
Your cat_____

32 Probability: should, ought to (Unit 45)
Re-write each sentence making it probable. Use the word in brackets.
Example:
Kate is very happy. (should)
Kate should be very happy.
1 Simon is in his room. (should)
2 I'll finish the book soon. (ought to)
3 Maria received the letter yesterday. (should)
4 We won't be late home tonight. (shouldn't)
5 My parents arrived at their hotel a few hours ago. (ought to)

33 Deduction: must, can't (Unit 46)
Complete the sentences. Use must or can't and the correct form of the verb in brackets.
1 You haven't eaten all day. You_____hungry. (be)
2 You_____cold. It's 30 degrees in the shade! (be)
3 There are no lights on in the office. Everyone_____home. (go)
4 Peter_____ill. I've just seen him playing tennis. (be)
5 I_____my bag on the train. I can remember having it with me when I got off the train. (leave)
6 You drove home at night without any lights on? You_____crazy! (be)
7 'I've just finished reading War and Peace in Russian.' That_____a long time! (take)

34 Review of possibility, probability and deduction (Unit 47)
Choose the correct answer — A, B or C.
1 It_____a lovely day tomorrow.
   A can be    B could be    C must be
2 I'm getting fat. I think I_____eating the wrong kind of food.
   A must be    B can't be    C can be
3 I'm not sure, but I_____Sue in town last night.
   A can see    B must have seen    C may have seen
4 Mike_____driving to London tomorrow. He can't drive!
   A might be    B can't be    C must be
5 My letter_____yesterday, but it didn't.
   A must have arrived    B may arrive    C should have arrived
6 I can hear footsteps in the flat upstairs, so there_____someone there.
   A must be    B might be    C can't be
7 We're very busy tomorrow so we_____time to visit you. We aren't sure.
   A could not have    B might not have    C ought to have
8 That girl_____20 years old. She looks about 12!
   A maybe    B must be    C can't be
35 Requests, offers and suggestions  
(Units 48–50)

Write what you could say in these situations using the words in brackets.

Example:
You offer to make someone a cup of coffee.  
(Shall?)
Shall I make you a cup of coffee?

1 You ask to use the phone in a friend’s house.  (Can?)
2 You ask the waiter for the menu in a restaurant.  (Could?)
3 You ask your teacher to explain something to you.  (Could?)
4 You ask a friend to lend you some money.  (Would?)
5 You are carrying a lot of bags. You ask a stranger to open a door for you.  (Would/mind?)
6 You offer to give a friend a lift home in your car.  (I’ll)
7 You offer to show a friend how to use a photocopier.  (Shall?)
8 You suggest to a friend that you have a walk in the park.  (How about?)
9 You invite someone to the cinema this evening.  (you like?)
10 You ask a friend to suggest where you can meet tomorrow.  (shall we?)

36 Habits: used to, will, would  (Unit 51)

There are mistakes in some of these sentences. Find the mistakes and correct them.

1 I used to go swimming a lot nowadays.
2 When I was a child I used to suck my thumb.
3 I don’t use to get up early these days.
4 My uncle would live in San Francisco when he was younger.
5 Mike used to live in Paris for a year.
6 Sarah uses to like Madonna, but she doesn’t any more.
7 When I was younger I would go running two or three times a week.
8 When I was a student I would have a beard.
9 Where did you used to live?
10 Our neighbours will keep playing loud music. It’s really annoying.

37 Refusals: won’t, wouldn’t; promises and threats: will  (Units 52–53)

(i) Complete each sentence using will, won’t or wouldn’t and a word in the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>eat</th>
<th>say</th>
<th>go</th>
<th>call</th>
<th>be</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1 My girlfriend_____to the concert with me, so I went on my own.
2 Thank you for letting me use your new computer. I_____very careful with it.
3 I’ve asked George three times now, but he still_____why he’s angry with me.
4 Leave me alone or I_____the police.
5 Our cat____his food at the moment. I think he must be ill.

(ii) Now say if each sentence is a refusal, a promise or a threat.

38 May/might as well  (Unit 54)

Complete the sentences using may as well... and the words in the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>sell</th>
<th>give up</th>
<th>apply</th>
<th>clean</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1 I don’t think I’ll get the job. But I_____for it. I’ve got nothing to lose.
2 We_____the flat now. We’ve got to clean it some time and we’ve got nothing to do at the moment.
3 You never use your computer. You_____it.
4 I_____playing the piano. I’ll never learn to play very well.

39 Other uses of should  (Unit 55)

(i) Re-write each sentence using the verb in brackets and that ... should ...

Example:
I told my friend to sell his car. (suggest)
I suggested that my friend should sell his car.
1 My doctor told me to see a specialist. (recommend)
2 I told the shop assistant to give me my money back. (insist)
3 My teacher told me to buy a larger dictionary. (suggest)
4 The traffic warden told us to move our car. (insist)

(ii) Put the two ideas together. Make sentences with that... should.

Example:
Mike acted so strangely. I was surprised. / was surprised that Mike should act so strangely.

1 You remembered my birthday. I’m pleased.
2 Sue offered me a job. I was surprised.
3 You lost your wallet. I’m very sorry.
4 John agreed with me. It was interesting.

40 Wish and if only (Unit 56)

Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence.

Example:
The phone is being repaired now.
They are repairing the phone now.

1 I’d love to have more money.
I wish ______

2 I’m very sorry I was rude to Jim’s Wife.
I wish ______

3 Why doesn’t Peter listen to me!
If only ______

4 Annie is sorry she ate so much chocolate.
Annie wishes ______.

5 I’d really like to live in the country.
I wish ______

6 Why can’t we find a cure for cancer!
If only ______

7 Why doesn’t it stop raining!
I wish ______

41 Would rather (Unit 57)

Complete the sentences using would rather and the verbs in the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>do</th>
<th>go</th>
<th>not play</th>
<th>not tell</th>
<th>have</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1 I’m hungry. I ______ lunch now than later.
2 This is a secret. I ______ you ______ anyone what I said.
3 We don’t want to go to Scotland by car. We ______ by train.
4 I ______ tennis now. I’m too hot.
5 ‘Are you going to do the shopping today?’ ‘I ______ you ______ it. I’m very busy.’

42 It’s time (Unit 58)

Complete the sentences using the correct form of the verbs in the box.

[ask buy clean go]

1 It’s very late. It’s time I ______ to bed.
2 My car is rather dirty. I think it’s about time I ______ it.
3 I’ve been earning the same salary for 15 years. It’s time I ______ my boss for a pay rise.
4 You’re always borrowing my tennis racket! Don’t you think it’s about time you ______ your own?

43 The passive (Units 59–60)

(i) Re-write the sentences in the active, beginning with the words given.

Example:
The phone is being repaired now.
They are repairing the phone now.

1 A new motorway has been built.
They ______

2 The information is kept on our computer.
We ______

3 A man was arrested late last night.
The police ______

4 The medicine should be taken after meals.
You ______

5 The hotel will have to be sold.
We ______

6 Mike doesn’t like being criticized.
Mike doesn’t like people ______

7 When I returned to the town, my old school had been pulled down.
When I returned to the town, they ______

8 As I was walking home, I thought I was being followed.
As I was walking home, I thought someone ______.
(ii) Re-write these sentences in the passive, leaving out they or someone.

Example:
They have sold the company.  
The company has been sold.

1. They are interviewing the president on TV at the moment.
2. They deliver the post twice a day.
3. They took the old man to hospital.
4. They were repairing the traffic lights yesterday.
5. Someone has opened this letter.
6. I remember someone telling me the news.
7. They should reduce taxes.
8. Someone must have told Ann about the accident.
9. They had cancelled the 9.15 train, so I took a later train.
10. They are going to change the law soon.

(iii) Choose the correct answers.

The National Security Bank in downtown San Antonio _______1______(robbed/was robbed) last night. A safe ______2______(blew open/was blown open) and around $800,000 ______3______(stole/was stolen). The robbery _______4______(took/was taken) place between midnight and 1:00 am. The police _______5______(are looking/are being looked) for two men who ______6______(saw/were seen) getting into a black car near the bank at about 1 o’clock last night. They _______7______(also want/are also wanted) to hear from Mr. Joe Newman, 52, who _______8______(worked/was worked) as a security guard at the bank. Mr. Newman _______9______(disappeared/was disappeared) just before the robbery and he _______10______(has not been seen/has not been seen) since then.

44 The passive with by and with (Unit 63)

There are mistakes in some of these sentences. Find the mistakes and correct them.

1. This letter was written by a typewriter.
2. The film ET was made by Steven Spielberg.
3. The omelette was made by three eggs.
4. The Mona Lisa (La Gioconda) was painted with Leonardo da Vinci.

45 The passive (Units 61, 62, 64)

Re-write these sentences beginning with the words given.

1. Someone will give you the Information later. 
   You ______
2. Someone sent me a letter.
   A letter ______.
3. Someone knocked me over in the street.
   I ______.
4. The president is expected to visit Moscow.
   It ______.
5. It is said that golf was invented in China.
   Golf ______.
6. The Queen of England is thought to be one of the richest women in the world. It ______.
7. It is claimed that beings from outer space have visited the earth. Beings from outer space ______.
8. People say that sunbathing causes skin cancer. Sunbathing is supposed ______.

46 Have something done (Unit 65)

Re-write the sentences beginning with the words given.

Example:
They serviced Ken’s car yesterday.
Ken had his car serviced yesterday.

1. They’re repairing our roof at the moment.
   We ______.
2. They’re going to fit a stereo in my car.
   I ______.
3. Someone cleans Sue’s flat once a week.
   Sue ______.
4. Has anyone tested your eyes recently?
   Have you ______?
5. Someone stole John’s briefcase last week.
   John ______.

47 If sentences, conditionals (Units 66, 68–70, 72)

(i) Choose the correct answer — A, B or C.

1. I may go to the USA next year _______. I’ll visit a friend in New York.
   A. When I go  
   B. If I go  
   C. If I’ll go

308
1 I'll see you back from my holiday.
   A when I'll come B when I come C if I come

2 too busy tomorrow, I'll visit you.
   A When I'm not B If I'm not C If I won't be

3 more money, I'd buy a new car.
   A When I have B If I have C If I had

4 You went to bed late last night. This morning you woke up late. Then you missed your bus and you were late for work.
   a) I (not | wake up) late this morning if I (not | go) to bed late last night.
   b) If (not | wake up) late, I (not | miss) my bus.
   c) If I (not | miss) my bus, I (not | be) late for work.

49 Conditional clauses without if (Unit 73)

Re-write the sentences without if, using the words in brackets.

Example:

If we don't take a taxi, we'll be late, (unless)
Unless we take a taxi, we'll be late.

1 If you don't go now, I'll be very angry, (or)
   2 If you help me now, I'll help you later. (provided)
   3 If you give me your address, I'll write to you. (and)
   4 If they don't offer me a better job, I'll leave the company. (unless)
   5 I'll stay up and watch the film if it isn't on too late. (as long as)
   6 If you were in my place, what would you do? (supposing)
   7 If I win the lottery, I'll give you half the money. (should)

50 Review of conditionals (Unit 74)

(i) There are mistakes in some of these sentences. Find the mistakes and correct them.

1 Janet will be disappointed if she'll fail the exam.
2 If Peter had been more careful, he wouldn't break the camera.
3 You can use my car tomorrow if I don't need it.
4 If I won't have much time, I usually have a sandwich for lunch.
5 If I were you, I won't lend John any money.
6 If the bus doesn't come soon, I'll walk home.
7 I'd be happier if I don't have to work so hard.
(ii) Make *if* sentences about these situations.

Examples:

Mike never takes any exercise. He's so unfit.

If Mike took some exercise, he *wouldn't* be so unfit.

I didn’t know your address. I didn’t write to you.

If I’d known your address, I *would* have written to you.

We didn’t know the film was on TV. We didn’t record it on our video.

If we knew the film was on TV, we *would* have recorded it on our video.

Janet wasn’t in a hurry. She walked home.

If Janet wasn’t in a hurry, she *would* have walked home.

I haven’t got enough money. I can’t go skiing next week.

If I had enough money, I *would* have gone skiing next week.

We didn’t have an umbrella. We got wet.

If we had an umbrella, we *would* have been dry.

---

51 Reported speech: statements
(Units 76–78)

(i) Peter met an American woman called Kirsty Lane last month. Look at some of the things that Kirsty told Peter. What were her actual words?

Example:

She told Peter that she lived in New York.

*She said that she lived in New York.*

1 She said that she was 25 years old.
2 She said she worked in a bank.
3 She said she had been working there for a year.
4 She told Peter that she didn’t like her job very much.
5 She said she was in Europe on holiday.
6 She said she was having a great holiday.
7 She told Peter that she had been to school.
8 She said she had taken exams at school.
9 She told Peter that she could drive a

52 Reported speech: questions (Unit 78)

(i) Frank Allen had an interview for a job in a garage last week. The manager of the garage, Mr Jones, interviewed him. He asked Frank a lot of questions.

Frank is telling a friend about the interview. Read what Frank says. What were the actual questions that Mr Jones asked?

Example:

(1) *How old are you?*

First, Mr Jones asked me ___1____ how old I was. Then he asked ___2____ where I worked now, and ___3____ how long I had worked there. After that, he asked me ___4____ where I had been to school, and ___5____ what exams I had taken at school. Then he asked ___6____ if I could drive a
car, 7 how long I had been driving, and 8 if I had a car of my own. After that, he asked 9 what my hobbies were, and 10 what I liked doing in my free time. Then, finally, he asked me 11 if I wanted the job. When I said I did, he asked me 12 if I could start next month.

(ii) You went to England last month. When you were there, you met an English couple who asked you a lot of questions. Report the questions beginning They asked me ....

Example:

‘Where are you from?’
They asked me where I was from.

1 ‘Where do you work?’
2 ‘How long have you been working there?’
3 ‘Are you on holiday in England?’
4 ‘When did you arrive here?’
5 ‘Have you been to Britain before?’
6 ‘How long are you going to stay here?’
7 ‘Do you like English food?’
8 ‘Have you got any brothers or sisters?’
9 ‘How long have you been studying English?’
10 ‘Can you speak any other languages?’

54 Review of reported speech (Unit 80)
Frank was driving home last night when a police car stopped him. Read what Frank says happened. What do you think were the actual words that the policeman and Frank said?

First of all, the policeman told me 1 to switch off my engine. Then he asked me 2 where I was going. When I told him 3 I was going home, he asked me 4 where I lived. So I gave him my address. Then he asked me 5 where I had just come from. I said 6 I had been at a friend’s house all evening. Then he asked 7 to see my driving licence. When I gave him my licence, he told me 8 to get out of the car. Then he wanted to know 9 if it was my car. I told him 10 I had bought it last year. After that he went back to his car and spoke on the radio for a short time. Then he told me 11 I could go home.

55 -ing form or infinitive (Units 82-98)

(i) Choose the correct answer — A, B or C.

1 Do you dislike 7 money?
   A borrow  B to borrow  C borrowing

2 My girlfriend persuaded me 8 my hair cut.
   A have  B to have  C having

3 I used 9 running every morning, but I never go now.
   A go  B to go  C going

4 I’ve decided 10 for a new job.
   A look  B to look  C looking

5 You needn’t 11 me back that magazine. I’ve finished with it.
   A give  B to give  C giving

6 You must always remember 12 your car locked.
   A keep  B to keep  C keeping

7 It’s very late. We really must 13 going.
   A be  B to be  C being

8 How about 14 tennis at the weekend?
   A play  B to play  C playing

53 Using the to infinitive in reported speech (Unit 79)

Report the sentences using the words in the box and the to infinitive form.

Example:

‘Can I get you a drink?’ he said to us.
He offered to get us a drink.

promised invited offered advised

1 ‘Would you like to go to the cinema?’ she asked her friend.
2 ‘I could post the letter for you,’ he said to her.
3 ‘You should take more exercise,’ the doctor said to me.
4 ‘I won’t drive too fast,’ I said.
9 You shouldn’t encourage anyone______
   A smoke  B to smoke  C smoking
10 I’m not very good at______speeches.
   A make  B to make  C making
11 Going to the dentist always makes me______
   nervous.
   A feel  B to feel  C feeling
12 I stopped writing______the telephone.
   A answer  B to answer  C answering
13 I don’t particularly enjoy______
   A cook  B to cook  C cooking
14 Janet promised______anyone what I’d said.
   A not tell  B not to tell  C to not tell
15 It’s a lovely morning. Why don’t we______
   for a walk?
   A go  B to go  C going
16 We haven’t decided what______this even-
   ning.
   A do  B to do  C doing
17 We didn’t expect England______the football
   match.
   A win  B to win  C winning
18 The police warned the man______
   A to not move  B not to move  C not move
19______a lot of sugar is supposed to be bad
   for you.
   A Eat  B To eat  C Eating
20 I can’t afford______a new stereo.
   A buy  B to buy  C buying
21 Ken switched on the radio______the news.
   A hear  B to hear  C hearing
22 All the hotels are full and we’ve got no-
   where______
   A stay  B to stay  C staying

(ii) There are mistakes in some of these | sentences. Find the mistakes and correct i

11 How about to play tennis at the weekend?
12 As I walked past the house I saw some men
   build a swimming pool.
13 Have you finished to eat your breakfast?
14 I’m used to work at night now, but I found
   it difficult at first.
15 Do you like to take regular exercise?
16 We’re thinking of to go to a disco tonight.
17 Can you to come to my party on Saturday?
18 I’m looking forward to see you tonight.
19 We hope to have a holiday soon.
20 Do you feel like to listen to some music?
21 Annie’s mother made her to eat her lunch.
22 Do you want that someone helps you for
   move the table?

56 Participle (-ing and ed) adjectives
   (Unit 99)
Re-write the sentences beginning with the
words given.

1 I’m surprised by the news.
   I find______
2 The man’s behaviour was shocking.
   We were all______
3 Kate is interested in travel.
   Kate finds______
4 The tennis match was boring.
   We were______
5 I felt very relaxed in the sauna.
   I found______

57 Participle (-ing) clauses (Unit 100)
Join these ideas. Make sentences using -ing
clauses, as in the examples.

Examples:
I arrived at the interview. I was feeling con-
   / arrived at the interview feeling confident.
I had a shower. I made breakfast.
   Having had a shower, I made breakfast.
1 I dropped my bag. I was running for a bus.
2 We got lost. We were driving through Paris.
3 I locked all the doors. I went to bed.
4 I’d just had a drink. I wasn’t thirsty.
58 Singular and plural (Units 101-103)

There are mistakes in some of these sentences. Find the mistakes and correct them.

1. Do you like my new jacket and trouser?
2. Where is your family from?
3. The news aren't very good.
4. How many persons live in Britain?
5. Where is the scissors?
6. I've bought a new toothbrush.
7. Do you eat a lot of fish?
8. How much is this blue Levi's jean?
9. Are the childrens asleep yet?
10. People are interesting.
11. Your hairs look very nice today. Have you just washed them?
12. Ten kilometre are a long way to walk.
13. One of my brother work in a shoes shop.
14. Physics were my favourite subject at school.
15. I don't like wearing pyjamas in bed.
16. What are the government going to do about the problem of homelessness?
17. There were £30 in my wallet, but now they've gone!
18. Some passer-bys stopped and helped the old man when he fell over.

59 Possessive forms (Units 104-106)

(i) Join the nouns using 's or the ... of ....

Examples:

job | Sally
Sally's job

door | the car
the door of the car

1. news | this week
2. stolen car | the thieves
3. roof | the hotel
4. price | your meal
5. vacation | two weeks
6. end | the film
7. middle | our English lesson
8. name | the girl who came to dinner
9. girlfriend | Jim's brother
10. rising cost | petrol

(ii) Re-write the sentences beginning with the words given.

1. One of my friends is having a party. A friend____
2. The only theatre in the town is closed. The town____
3. Some of our neighbours have offered to help us. Some neighbours____
4. Rainfall in Britain has been light this year. Britain____
5. We've been visiting some of our relatives. We've been visiting some relatives____

60 Countable and uncountable nouns (Unit 107)

Correct the mistakes.

1. The tourist office has informations about hotel accommodations.
2. You look different. Have you had your hairs cut?
3. There are traffics news on the radio every morning.
4. 'Travelling light' means travelling without a lot of luggages.
5. We need a bread, some tomatoes and some spaghettis.
6. Where are the money I gave you? Have you spent them already?
7. We're having a beautiful weather at the moment.
8. Some of our furnitures were damaged when we moved.

61 Articles (Unit 108)

Complete the story. Put in a, an or the.

Last Sunday I decided to have____1____ quiet evening at home. At around 8 o'clock I was in____2____ kitchen cooking____3____ omelette for my dinner____4____ omelette was almost ready when____5____ telephone rang. I went into____6____ hall to answer it. It was____7____ friend of mine,____8____ girl called Lisa. Lisa is____9____ student at____10____ London School of Music and Art. She told me she was taking____11____ im-
portant exam____12____following day. She said she was sure she would fail____13____exam. She sounded very worried. We talked for about____14____quarter of____15____hour. Then I suddenly remembered ____16____omelette on____17____cooker! I put down____18____phone and rushed into ____19____kitchen. It was terrible! ____20____room was full of smoke and ____21____omelette was completely black. It took me more than____22____hour to clean up all____23____mess.

62 Articles (Unit 109)
Choose the correct answer.

1 Noise/The noise is a form of pollution.
2 I’m worried about noise/the noise coming from my car.
3 Don’t go swimming in this river. Water/The water here is polluted.
4 Water/The water turns to ice when it freezes.
5 The man gave money/the money to charity throughout his life.
6 Have you already spent money/the money I gave you yesterday?

63 Articles (Units 108–113)
(i) Put in a, an or the where necessary.

1 Have you ever been in____hospital for____serious operation?
2 Phil Collins can play____drums,____piano and____harmonica.
3____giraffe is____tallest animal in____world.
4 My grandmother often listens to____radio in____bed at night.
5 I won’t be at____home at 6 o’clock this evening. I’ll still be at____work.
6 We’d like to live in____small cottage in____country.
7____good film on at____cinema this evening.
8 Which is your favourite meal,____breakfast,____lunch or____dinner?
9 What is____government going to do for____unemployed of____Great Britain?

10 Don’t you think ____ English are strange people?

(ii) Correct the mistakes.

1 The Canberra is capital of the Australia.
2 The San Diego is in the Southern California.
3 Is Amazon a longest river in the Latin America?
4 The Jamaica is island in Caribbean Sea.
5 The Snowdon is highest mountain in the England and Wales.
6 The Lake Michigan is in United States.
7 The Gobi desert is in the Asia.
8 Uffizi is one of a most famous museums in world.
9 Statue of Liberty was made in the France.
10 The Macy’s is famous department store on the 34th Street in the New York.

64 Quantity (Units 114–119)
(i) Choose the correct answer: A, B, C or D.

1 There are____envelopes on my desk.
A much B some C any D a little
2 There isn’t____money in my pocket.
A no B some C any of D any
3 Have you got____good computer games?
A any B any of C a lot D many of
4 Do you like Madonna? Have you got____her records?
A some B every of C any D all
5 There isn’t____time before our flight leaves.
A much B many C some D no
6 I’ve got____idea where Mike is.
A none B none of C some D no
7 Do you know____people living in England?
A much B many C much of D many of
8 You’ve had____interesting experiences.
A any B a lot C much D a lot of
9 Would you like____more milk?
A little B a little C few D a few
10____my friends want to see the concert.
A No B Any of C None D None of
(ii) **Re-write the sentences beginning with the words given.**

Example:

He isn’t reliable and he isn’t hard-working. 
He is neither **reliable** nor hard-working.

1 She is intelligent and she is charming.  
She is both _____
2 My brother can’t sing and he can’t play the guitar.  
My brother can neither _____
3 My girlfriend didn’t enjoy the party and I didn’t enjoy the party.  
Neither _____
4 Almost nobody likes Monday mornings.  
Few _____
5 I’ve seen all Steven Spielberg’s films. 
**I’ve** seen every _____
6 She said that she only wanted a cup of coffee for breakfast. 
She said that all _____
7 He can only speak a little French. 
He can’t speak _____
8 Almost no houses have video phones.  
Few _____
9 All my sisters are single.  
None _____
10 All my friends have passed their driving test.  
None _____

65 Pronouns, etc (Units 120–125)

(i) **Correct the mistakes.**

1 Look! There’s Sally and his boyfriend! Can you see them?
2 My brother he looks very young, but is older than I.
3 ‘Who’s that outside?’ ‘It’s I.’
4 My girlfriend and me phone us every day.
5 Ours flat was cheaper than their, but their is much smaller than our.
6 Did the old man hurt him when fell out of his bed?
7 I woke up, got dressed myself and made me some breakfast.
8 Is easy to cut you when you’re shaving.
9 When we warned herself not to walk home by her own, she just laughed at us.
10 We were very annoyed with us for forgetting about yours party.

(ii) **Put in a suitable pronoun or adjective eg they, you, me, our etc.**

1 _____ can get married in England at the age of 16.
2 Stephanie is very conceited. She’s always looking at _____ in the mirror.
3 Someone called to see you_____ didn’t tell me _____ name.
4 How far is _____ from Barcelona to Madrid?
5 Living by _____ can be lonely.
6 _____ isn’t expensive to play tennis in England.
7 The police say that _____ want to interview Joe Newman.
8 If you don’t want to come to the theatre with _____, I’ll go on _____ own.

66 One (s) (Unit 124)

Choose the correct answer — A, B or C.

1 I’m looking for a new shirt. I’d like to buy ____ with a button-down collar.
   A a one B one C ones
2 My sister has already got a good job, but she wants ____.
   A a better ones B better one C a better one
3 We’ve got some red wine, but we haven’t got any ____.
   A white B white one C a white one
4 Do you like these chairs more than ____?
   A those one B those ones C those

67 Something, anything, etc (Unit 125)

(i) **Re-write the sentences beginning with the words given.**

Example:

There wasn’t anybody in the restaurant.
There was nobody in the restaurant.

1 I’ve eaten nothing all day.  
I haven’t eaten _____
2 There's nobody living in that house.
There isn't______
31 haven't got anything to do today.
I've got______
4 We haven't been anywhere this week.
We've been______

(ii) There are mistakes in some of these sentences. Find the mistakes and correct them.

1 You look worried. Is something wrong?
2 I've spent all my money. I've got anything left.
3 There isn't nothing good on TV tonight.
4 That house is empty now. There's somebody living there.
5 We've looked anywhere for the letter, but we can't find it everywhere.
6 Tina is very nice. Everybody likes her.
7 We'd like to go somewhere warm on holiday this summer.
8 There wasn't nowhere to sit down in the room, so we had to stand.

68 Form, position and order of adjectives
(Unit 126)

Complete the sentences. Put the words in brackets in the correct order.

Example:
We (antique | a | bought | vase | large).
We bought a large antique vase.

1 My girlfriend (motorbike | has got | a | Japanese | powerful).
2 The garden (beautiful | this summer | looks).
3 Your grandmother (woman | very | a | seems | cheerful).
4 The man (a | leather | was wearing | black | coat | long).
5 We (an | restaurant | French | had lunch at | expensive).
6 The Pyramids of Egypt (old | are | around 5, 000 years).

69 Comparatives, superlatives and as ... as
(Units 127-129)

(i) Correct the mistakes.

1 Today is more sunny as yesterday.
2 My boyfriend isn't as clever than he thinks.
3 Ken is a very more careful driver than Simon.
4 You aren't taller as I.
5 What was the happier day of your life?
6 The more older my grandmother gets, the more forgetful she becomes.
7 Camping isn't as comfortable than staying in a hotel, but it's much healthy.
8 The problem of world pollution is getting more and more bad.

(ii) Re-write the sentences beginning with the words given, as in the examples.

Examples:
A Rolls Royce is more expensive that a Fiat.
A Fiat isn't as expensive as a Rolls Royce.

I've never seen a taller man than Tom.
Tom is the tallest man I've ever seen.

1 Playing golf isn't as cheap as playing football.
Playing football is______
2 None of the animals in the world is faster than a cheetah.
A cheetah is the______
3 There is nothing better than a cold shower to wake you up in the mornings.
A cold shower is the______
4 Tokyo is bigger than Paris.
Paris isn't______
5 There is no footballer in the world more talented than Roberto.
Roberto is the______
6 Listening to records isn't as exciting as hearing live music.
Hearing live music is______

70 Adjectives and adverbs (Unit 130)

Complete the second sentence beginning with the words given, as in the examples.

Examples:
She's a very quick typist.
She types very quickly.
He looked at me suspiciously. He gave me a suspicious look.
1 You're a very slow eater. 
   You eat______
2 He drives rather recklessly. 
   He's a______
3 She's a very hard worker. 
   She works_____ 
4 Harrison Ford acts very well. 
   Harrison Ford is a______ 
5 She gave me an angry stare. 
   She stared at me______

71 Adverb position (Units 131-136)
Put the words into the most usual order.
Example:
The car slowly out of the garage I drove. 
/ drove the car slowly out of the garage.
1 My parents will be next week on holiday. 
2 Confidently into the exam room I walked. 
3 We saw on Saturday morning them in town. 
4 Last week worked hard all the students. 
5 The English like very much tea. 
6 Last week my grandmother into hospital went. 
7 My brother helps never with the housework. 
8 We start always school at 9.00. 
9 My teacher never is late for class. 
10 Robert plays no longer football. 
11 I'll forget never the first time we met. 
12 I every night sleep always 8 hours. 
13 Carla hasn't finished probably yet working. 
14 We for an hour already have been waiting and the bus hasn't still come.

72 Adverbs (Units 133-139)
Choose the correct answer. (Sometimes two answers are possible.)
1 They started building the road two years ago and they haven't finished it. 
   A still  B yet  C already
2 You don't need to vacuum the carpet. 
   I've______done it. 
   A still  B yet  C already
3 I sent the letter two weeks ago and they haven't received it_____ 
   A still  B yet  C already
4 Many rivers are______safe to swim in nowadays. 
   A any more  B any longer  C no longer
5 I used to smoke, but I don't______ 
   A anymore  B any longer  C no longer
6 It was really a_____boring journey. 
   A quite  B fairly  C rather
7 We_____liked the hotel we stayed at. 
   A quite  B fairly  C pretty
8 This summer is_____hotter than last summer. 
   A rather  B quite  C fairly
9 I can't lift this box. It's______ 
   A too much heavy  B much too heavy  
   C heavy enough
10 We can't all fit into my car. It isn't_____ 
   A too much big  B enough big  
   C big enough
11______is supposed to be bad for you. 
   A Too much salt  B Too many salt  
   C Enough salt
12 Annie feels ill. She's eaten______. 
   A too much chocolates  B too many chocolate  
   C too many chocolates
13 Mike is a wonderful dancer. He dances______ 
   A too well  B very well  C well enough
14 Everyone likes Tina. She's______ 
   A such a nice  B so nice woman  
   C so nice
15 It was_____that we had breakfast outside in the garden. 
   A such a warm morning  B such a warm  
   C so warm

73 Comparison: adverbs (Unit 140)
Re-write the sentences beginning with the words given.
Example:
Peter is a better cook than Sally is. 
Peter cooks better than Sally does. 
1 I'm not as good at tennis as you are. 
I don't play tennis______.
2 Your writing is clearer than mine is.
   You write______
3 My brother is a more careless driver than
   lam.
   My brother drives______.
4 Annie is the best swimmer of all the students
   in her school.
   Annie swims the______.

74 Negatives (Unit 141)
Correct the mistakes.
1 I no think politics is interesting.
2 It not is raining at the moment.
3 You no have got any brothers or sisters.
4 My sister works not in London.
5 Liz no would like to live in the country.
6 I did not worked yesterday.
7 Sue no will be here next weekend.
8 They not have not been waiting for us.

75 Questions (Units 142–147)
Ask questions using the words in brackets,
as in the examples.
Examples:
I'm cooking. (What?)
What are you cooking?

Judy likes pop music. (Madonna?)
Does she like Madonna?

I've got a brother. (not/any sisters?)
Haven't you got any sisters?

1 Sarah is going to Paris. (by car?)
2 I go swimming. (How often?)
3 We stayed at a hotel. (Which hotel?)
4 I'm thirsty. (not/hungry?)
5 We can stay until 8.00.
(not/any longer?)
6 I've eaten Chinese food.
   (Indian food?)
7 Sue has been having piano lessons.
   (How long?)
8 Mike wants to stay at home.
   (not/to come out with us?)
9 I asked someone. (Who?)
10 Someone asked me. (Who?)

76 Question tags (Unit 147)
Add question tags to these sentences.
Example:
You haven't got a car, have you?
1 Sally went to the concert,______
2 You aren't angry, _____
3 Our train leaves at 7.30,_____ 
4 Ken will be here tomorrow, ____
5 Let's play tennis,_____ 
6 You don't know my father, _____
7 Close the door,______
8 You'd like a coffee,______

77 Reply questions (Unit 148)
Answer these sentences using 'reply ques-
tions' eg Is he?, Did you? etc.
Example:
I can dance the tango.
Can you?
1 I haven't read that book.
2 My sister lives in New York.
3 We went skiing last winter.
4 I've found a new job.
5 Derek isn't feeling very well.

78 Indirect questions (Unit 149)
There are mistakes in some of these sen-
tences. Find the mistakes and correct them.
1 Can you tell me where is the nearest bank?
2 What time you usually finish work?
3 Do you know whether Derek has got a car?
4 Can you remember where did you put my
   pen?
5 Have you decided what colour are you going
   to paint the flat?
6 Do you know if has the bridge been repaired
   yet?
7 When you started to study English?

79 Short answers (Units 150, 152)
Give short answers to the questions using
the words in brackets.
Examples:

Do you like dancing? *(Yes)*

*Yes. I do.*

Will you be here tomorrow? *(No/think)*

*No, I don't think so.*

1 Did Peter have a holiday last summer? *(No)*

2 Is the car badly damaged? *(Yes/afraid)*

3 Have you been waiting long? *(Yes)*

4 Does Simon work at night? *(No/think)*

5 Will they finish the job today? *(Yes/hope)*

6 Are you going shopping today? *(Yes)*

---

80 *So/neither am I etc (Unit 151)*

Re-write the sentences using *so/neither* ....

Example:

I like tennis and you like tennis. / *like tennis and so do you.*

1 You *aren’t* hungry and Jim isn’t hungry.

2 Peter can drive and Sally can drive.

3 I’m in a hurry and you’re in a hurry.

4 I haven’t seen the film and you haven’t seen the film.

5 You saw what happened and we saw what happened.

---

81 *Relative clauses (Units 153–159)*

(i) There are mistakes in some of these sentences. Find the mistakes and correct them.

1 I’ve lost the key you gave me.

2 Have you seen the book which it was on my desk?

3 They are the couple my parents went on holiday with.

4 The girl which she answered the phone said you weren’t at home.

5 Where’s the newspaper who I bought it this morning?

6 Is that the man sold you the car?

7 She’s the woman whose the briefcase was stolen.

8 Steven Spielberg’s new film, who it cost more than $100 million to make, will be showing in British cinemas soon.

9 Albert Davis, which is only 25 years old, is the new manager of Acme Export Ltd.

10 The people I work with are very funny.

11 John’s father gave me the taxi fare, what was very nice of him.

(ii) Add the words in the box but only where necessary. (Sometimes two answers are possible.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>who</th>
<th>that</th>
<th>which</th>
<th>whose</th>
<th>where</th>
<th>why</th>
<th>when</th>
<th>whom</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1 What was the name of the man who phoned yesterday?

2 Is that the suit that you bought last week?

3 Who were those people whom were waiting outside just now?

4 Have you finished reading the book which I gave you?

5 Kathy Cobuild is the woman whose husband was kidnapped.

6 The building that I work isn’t properly air-conditioned.

7 The office where you work in is very modern.

8 Can you give me one good reason why I should lend you the money?

9 Is there a good time when I can phone you?

10 Mr Ross, who I have known for a long time, has just become the president of a very large international company.

11 My wife, whose mother is Italian, knows Italy very well.

12 The restaurant was full, which is why we had to go somewhere else for dinner.

---

82 *Linking words (Units 160–164)*

Choose the correct answer — A, B or C.

1 I’m not going to stop work now. I’ll keep going *when* I finish.

   A *when*    B *until*    C *while*

2 *while* we’ve finished lunch, we’ll do the washing up.

   A *While*    B *Until*    C *While*

3 *As soon as* I was walking around the supermarket, I saw a friend.

   A *As soon as*    B *As*    C *Until*

4 *As soon as* I put my hat on, it blew off.

   A *As soon as*    B *While*    C *Until*
5 I enjoy watching tennis on TV, ______ I prefer playing it.
A despite  B because  C although
6 ______ having a well-paid job, she never has any money.
A Despite  B Because  C Even though
7 Sarah is very slim ______ she eats so much.
A despite  B in spite of  C despite the fact that
8 I was able to walk slowly ______ the pain in my leg.
A whereas  B in spite of  C despite of
9 My girlfriend likes the town ______ I like the country.
A whereas  B in spite of  C because of
10 We drove very slowly ______ the icy roads.
A because  B because of  C therefore
11 Mike borrowed the money and ______ he was able to go on holiday with his friends.
A because  B because of  C as a result
12 The sea was dangerous ______ we didn’t go in for a swim.
A as  B so  C since
13 We were ______ tired that we fell asleep in front of the TV.
A so  B such  C therefore
14 Robert had ______ an awful holiday that he wanted to come home early.
A so  B such  C however
15 We went to a restaurant ______ celebrate my birthday.
A or  B to  C for to
16 Peter has been to the supermarket ______ some shopping.
A or  B for do  C for doing
17 A telephone answering machine is used ______ recording telephone messages on.
A for to  B for  C so as to
18 These tests are given in the book ______ you can check your progress.
A in case  B if  C so that
19 We hurried ______ be late for our appointment.
A not to  B in case  C so as not to
20 I’ll take my credit card with me ______ I decide to buy something when I’m out.
A so that  B in case  C if

83 Prepositions of place and movement (Units 165-168)

Complete the sentences by putting the words in brackets in the correct places.

1 I got ______ the crowded train and sat down ______ a young man.
   (next to/onto)
2 The boys got ______ the garden by climbing ______ the fence.
   (over/into)
3 I’ve got a poster of Madonna ______ my room, ______ the wall ______ my bed.
   (above/in/on)
4 Maria drove ______ Madrid ______ Barcelona ______ her friend’s car yesterday. She arrived ______ Barcelona at 8 o’clock.
   (to/in/from)
5 My grandparents live ______ 42 London Road, ______ a flat ______ the top floor. A very nice Italian couple live ______ the floor ______ them.
   (in/on/below/at)
6 We’d been driving ______ Harbour Street for a few minutes when the car ______ us stopped suddenly and we crashed ______ it.
   (in front of/into/along)
7 The robbers ran ______ the bank and jumped ______ the motor bike waiting ______. Then they drove ______ the corner.
   (onto/outside/out of/round)
8 When I got back ______ my hotel bedroom, I locked the door ______ me, took ______ my dressing-gown and got ______ bed.
   (behind/off/into)
9 Don’t walk ______ that ladder. Something may fall ______ you.
   (down/under/at)
10 The coach drove ______ the factory, then it went ______ the tunnel and started to climb ______ the hill.
   (past/up/through)
11 Sally got ______ the taxi and sat down ______ the driver ______ the back seat.
   (behind/in/into)
12 London is ______ the River Thames, which flows ______ the city ______ west to east.
   (from/on/through)
13 Mrs Woods got ___ the bus and walked ___ the street ___ the post office.
(towards/off/across)
14 My girlfriend and I often meet ___ the Espresso Cafe ___ East Street. Do you know the Espresso? It's ___ the bank and the school, ___ the Grand Hotel.
(opposite/between/at/in)

84 Prepositions of time (Units 169–174)
Correct the mistakes.

1 My interview is on 2 o'clock in Monday.
2 We've been waiting here from ten minutes.
3 Are you leaving at Saturday morning?
4 I worked in a bank during five years.
5 Ken and Kate are on holiday on August.
6 I always visit my parents in Christmas.
7 Mike usually plays football the weekend.
8 You've known me since ten years.
9 I was born in January 3rd at 1968.
10 Sarah was listening to the radio during she was taking a bath.
11 The doctors operated on the man just on time to save his life.
12 Are you doing anything in the end of next week?
13 I fell asleep in front of the TV in the football match.
14 The builders say they'll have finished the job until next weekend at the latest.
15 I found my new contact lenses strange at first, but I got used to them at the end.

85 Other prepositions (Units 175-177)
Complete the sentences using the words in the box. (Sometimes two answers are possible.)
in as with on like by as if

1 She's a middle-aged woman ___ blue eyes and short blonde hair.
2 We went ___ Athens ___ my car.
3 Would you rather go home ___ taxi or ___ the bus?
4 Who's that man ___ the white hat?
5 Sue's brother is very handsome. He looks ___ Tom Cruise!
6 I've got a summer job in the Espresso Cafe working ___ a waiter.
7 Are you all right? You look ___ you haven't slept all night.
8 I don't want to change my flat. I like it just ___ it is.

86 Word and preposition combinations (Units 178–182)
Choose the correct preposition — A, B or C.

1 I'm feeling rather nervous ___ my interview tomorrow.
A of  B to  C about
2 I used to be quite good ___ dancing.
A in  B at  C on
3 Are you afraid ___ snakes?
A by  B to  C of
4 Pisa in Italy is famous ___ its ‘Leaning Tower’.
A about  B from  C for
5 I'm not really interested ___ stamp collecting.
A in  B on  C by
6 There's no need ___ you to worry.
A to  B for  C of
7 Who's responsible ___ these children?
A of  B for  C in
8 There has been a rise ___ the number of homeless people.
A in  B of  C with
9 I've had some difficulty ___ my new computer.
A with  B of  C in
10 Sally met an old friend in town quite ___ chance yesterday.
A on  B by  C with
11 Ken and Kate will be ___ holiday soon.
A on  B in  C at
12 The film The Birds was made ___ Alfred Hitchcock.
A with  B of  C by
13 My brother is thinking ___ selling his car.
A to  B of  C on
14 I can't concentrate ___ anything at the moment.
A on  B to  C about
15 They apologized ___ losing my letter.
A to  B in  C for
16 When Robert was younger, he dreamt of being a famous footballer one day.
A to B of C in

17 They're taking very good care of your son in hospital.
A about B for C of

18 I congratulated them on getting engaged.
A on B of C in

19 I've warned you about taking my things without asking me.
A for B of C about

20 That smell always reminds me of hospitals.
A on B of C about

87 Indirect objects with or without to and for (Unit 184)

Re-write the sentences without to or for.

Example:
You've lent your camera to Frank.
You've lent Frank your camera.

1 The company has given the job to Kathy Co-build.

2 My sister made a cake for me on my last birthday.

3 The receptionist will order a taxi for us.

4 I've promised these concert tickets to someone.

88 Phrasal verbs (Units 185–186)

Replace the words in italics with one of the phrasal verbs in Units 185 and 186.

1 I refused their offer of a job.
2 We continued working through our lunch break.
3 Robert stopped playing football years ago.
4 People say that I am like my father.
5 What time did you start on your journey?
6 Unemployment has increased by 10% since last year.
7 Our flight was delayed by bad weather.
8 My grandfather never broke a promise.
9 Mr and Mrs James may never recover from the tragic death of their son.
10 The bank's computer has stopped working six times this week already!
Appendix: American English
[Приложение: Американский вариант английского языка]

Грамматические различия между British и American English невелики. Основные различия состоят в следующем:

a) Американцы очень часто употребляют past simple для сообщения 'новостей' в тех случаях, когда британцы употребляют present perfect (см. 6с).

AMERICAN ENGLISH  BRITISH ENGLISH
AMЕРИКАНСКИЙ ВАРИАНТ АНГЛИЙСКОГО  БРИТАНСКИЙ ВАРИАНТ АНГЛИЙСКОГО
ЯЗЫКА  ЯЗЫКА
Did you hear the news?  Have you heard the news?
My sister had a baby!  My sister has had a baby!

Американцы часто употребляют past simple c just, already и yet в тех случаях, когда британцы употребляют present perfect (см. 8).

AMERICAN ENGLISH  BRITISH ENGLISH
He just went out.  He's just gone out.
I already had breakfast.  I've already had breakfast.
Did you write the letter yet?  Have you written the letter yet?

b) Американцы часто употребляют have, c do и does в отрицательных формах и вопросах в тех случаях, когда британцы употребляют have got (см. 33).

AMERICAN ENGLISH  BRITISH ENGLISH
/ have a brother.  I've got a brother.
He doesn't have a job.  He hasn't got a job.
Do you have a pen?  Have you got a pen?

в) Американский вариант английского языка имеет две формы past participle глагола get: gotten и got; Британский вариант английского языка имеет только одну: got (см. 190.2).

AMERICAN ENGLISH  BRITISH ENGLISH
I've gotten/got a ticket.  I've got a ticket.

d) Американцы часто употребляют infinitive без to после глаголов suggest, insist, recommend и т.д. (см. 55.1).

I suggested (that) he see the doctor.
They insisted (that) she take the money.

Эта конструкция также употребляется в британском варианте английского языка, особенно, в более официальном стиле.

e) Существуют различия в употреблении некоторых предлогов. Например:

AMERICAN ENGLISH  BRITISH ENGLISH
on the weekend  at the weekend (CM. 169.1)
Monday through/to Friday  Monday to Friday (CM. 173.2)
different from/to  different from/to (CM. 178)
stay home/stay at home  stay at home (CM. 168.10)
write somebody/write to somebody  write to somebody (CM. 181)

f) В американском варианте английского языка, если слог не ударный -/ на конце слова обычно не удаляется (см. 188.6с).

AMERICAN ENGLISH  BRITISH ENGLISH
'traveled  'travelled

g) Глаголы burn, dream, lean, leap, learn, smell, spell, spill и spoil обычно правильные в американском варианте английского языка, например, burned, dreamed, leaned, leaped, learned и т.д. (см. 190.2b).
Glossary (Глоссарий)

В глоссарии объясняются грамматические термины, употребляемые в пособии.

**active/действительный залог**: see passive /страдательный залог.

**adjective/(имя) прилагательное** - слово, как red, old, beautiful, используемое для описания существительного, например a red car, an old man, или местоимения, например: It's red. He's old.


**affirmative/утверждение** - противоположное к negative/отрицание, например: /know - don't know - отрицание.

**agent/агент** - в страдательном залоге агенс - это лицо или предмет, которым выполняется действие, например: The radio was invented by Marconi.

**apostrophe/апостроф** - знак (’), например, my friend’s car.

**article/артикль**: артикль - это a/an и the. См. также definite article/определенный артикль и indefinite article/неопределенный артикль.

**auxiliary verb/вспомогательный глагол** — глагол be, have и do, который используется для образования глагольных форм, страдательного залога (the passive) и т.д., например: We are working, I have finished, You don’t know. It was stolen. См. также modal auxiliary verb/модальный вспомогательный глагол.

**clause/предложное предложение** - группа слов, обычно с подлежащим и глаголом, например: / went out and it stopped raining. Предложение состоит из одного или более придаточных предложений, например: / went out when it stopped raining. See also main clause/главное предложение.

**comparative/сравнительная степень**, например, older, slower, more intelligent - сравнительная степень от old, slow, intelligent.

**compound/составное существительное** - слово, образованное из двух или более частей, например, toothbrush (tooth + brush), something (some + thing).

**conditional/условное предложение** - предложение c if (или слово с подобным значением), например: If see Martin, I’ll give him your message. If I knew the answer, I’d tell you. Обратите внимание, что conditional/условное предложение также употребляется с конструкциями would (или should c / и we), например: He would come. I would/should like some coffee.

**conjunction/союз** - слово, используемое для соединения двух предложений, например, and, but, when, if.

**consonant/согласная**: see vowel/гласная.

**continuous/длительная форма** - глагольная форма с be + -ing, например: I’m working (present continuous/настоящее длительное время), / was working (past continuous/прошедшее длительное время), I’ve been working (present perfect continuous/настоящее совершенное длительное время). See also simple/простая форма.

**contraction/стяжение** - сокращенная форма, например: I’m (= I am), They’ve (= They have), don’t (= do not).

**countable noun/исчисляемые существительные** - book, egg и girl - примеры исчисляемых существительных. Исчисляемые существительные - это названия отдельных предметов, людей и т.д., которых можно сосчитать; они имеют формы единственного и множественного числа и могут употребляться с артиклем a/an и числительными, например, a book, two books; an egg, six eggs; one girl, three girls. См. также uncountable noun/нечисляемое существительное.

**defining relative clauses/определяющие относительные придаточные предложения** - придаточные предложения, в которых идет речь о том, какое лицо или какой предмет говорящий имеет в виду, например: I spoke to the man who works in the post office. (Who works in the post office — определяет, какой человек.) См. также non-defining relative clauses/не определяющие относительные придаточные предложения.

**definite article/определенный артикль** the.

**demonstrative adjective or pronoun/указательное прилагательное или местоимение** К указательным прилагательным или местоимениям относятся this, that, these, those.

direct speech/прямая речь: см. reported speech/косвенноая речь.

exclamation/восклицание - слово или слова, выражающие неожиданное сильное чувство, например: Stop! How incredible!

exclamation mark/восклицательный знак - знак (!), который ставится в конце восклицания.

derivation/выражение - группа слов, используемых вместе, например, have a bath [принимать ванну].

first person (1st person)/первое лицо: см. person/лицо.

formal/официальный стиль - язык официального стиля используется, когда необходимо показать уважение, например, в деловой переписке или в вежливой беседе с незнакомыми людьми. Informal/неофициальный стиль - язык неофициального стиля используется в дружеской, повседневной речи и письмах к друзьям.

division/смысловой глагол — обычный глагол (например, work, look, run), в отличие от вспомогательных глаголов (be, have, do) или модальных глаголов (can, must, may и т.д.).

generative/притяжательный падеж с Ч.

gerund/герундий - глагол с формой -ing, употребляемый как существительное, например: Walking is good for you.


hyphen/дефис - короткая линия (-), соединяющая слова, например, tin-opener.

imperative/повелительное наклонение — повелительное наклонение имеет точно такую же форму, как и инфинитив без to, например, wait, be, have. Повелительное наклонение употребляется для выражения приказа, предложения и т.д., например: Wait here. Be quiet. Have some more tea.

indefinite article/неопределенный артикль a/an.
indefinite pronoun/неопределенное местоимение, например, something, anyone.

indirect object/косвенное дополнение: см. direct object/прямое дополнение.

indirect question/косвенный вопрос - вопрос, начинающийся с фраз: Do you know ...? или Could you tell me ...?, например: Do you know where Ken is?

infinitive/инфинитив. В выражениях / can drive u You must come, формы drive и come - инфинитивы без to. В выражениях I'd like to drive и you have to come формы to drive и to come - инфинитивы с to.

informal/неофициальный: см. formal/официальный.

-ing form/форма - форма глагола, оканчивающаяся на -ing, например, working, running. См. также gerund/герундий и present participle/причастие настоящего времени.

intonation/интонация - восходящий голос говорящего (восходящая интонация) и нисходящий голос говорящего (нисходящая интонация).

irregular/неправильный: см. regular/правильный.

main clause/главное предложение. В предложении I phoned Maria when I got home главное предложение — I phoned Maria; другое предложение when I got home - придаточное. Главное предложение может выступать самостоятельно как предложение, в отличие от придаточного предложения, которое не может быть самостоятельным.

modal auxiliary verb/модальный вспомогательный глагол (или modal verb/модальный глагол). Модальными вспомогательными глаголами являются can, could, may, might, will, would, shall, should, ought (to), must, need и dare.

modify/определять - изменять значение чего-то.

negative/отрицание: см. affirmative/утверждение.

non-defining relative clause/не определяющие относительные придаточные предложения - придаточные предложения, в которых не идет речь о том, какое лицо или какой предмет говорящий имеет в виду, но которое дает дополнительную информацию об уже определенном лице или предмете, например: Mrs Higgins, who is 48, has just had a baby. (who is 48 не уточняет, какое лицо; мы уже знаем, что это Mrs Higgins.) См. также defining relative clause/определяющие относительные придаточные предложения.
noun/(имя) существительное - слово, которое называет лицо, предмет и т.д., например, student, girl, car, bedroom.

object/дополнение: см. direct object/прямое дополнение и subject/подлежащее.

participle/причастие: см. present participle/причастие настоящего времени и past participle/причастие прошедшего времени.

passive/страдательный залог. В выражении / told Peter глагол told - действительный залог. В выражении Peter was told глагол was told - страдательный залог.

past participle/причастие прошедшего времени — глагольная форма broken, seen, cleaned, которая используется для образования совершенных времен (perfect tenses), например: I've cleaned my room (present perfect - настоящее совершенное), страдательный залог (the passive), например: The room has been cleaned. Причастие прошедшего времени правильных глаголов имеет окончание -ed, например, cleaned, worked. Неправильные глаголы имеют различные формы причастия прошедшего времени, например, break → broken, see → seen (см. 190).

perfect/совершенное время — глагольная форма, образованная с помощью have + past participle, например: / have worked (present perfect simple/настоящее совершенное простое время), I had worked (past perfect simple/прошедшее совершенное простое время).

person - способ представления говорящего (1st person/первое лицо) - лицо, к которому обращаются (2nd person/второе лицо), и люди или предметы, о которых говорят (3rd person/третье лицо), например, 1st person = /, we, 2nd person = you, 3rd person = he, she, it, they.

phrasal verb/фразовый глагол - глагол + частица (наречие или предлог), например, get up, switch on, throw away, или глагол + частица + предлог, например, look forward to, go back on

phrase/фраза, словосочетание — группа слов, которые употребляются вместе, например, a red car (именное словосочетание), would have been (глагольное словосочетание).

plural/множественное число - форма, используемая для более чем одного. Car и he/she - единственное число, cars и they - множественное.

possessive adjective/притяжательное прилагательное My, your, his, her, its, our, their - притяжательные прилагательные.

possessive pronoun - Mine, yours, his, hers, ours, theirs — притяжательные местоимения.

possessive 's/притяжательный падеж с 's (genitive/родительный падеж) - форма существительного с окончанием 's', например: John's, my parents'.

preposition/предлог, например, in, on, of, at, for

present participle/причастие настоящего времени - такая глагольная форма, как working, worrying, playing, которая употребляется для образования длительных времен (continuous tenses), например: / was working (past continuous/прошедшее длительное время) или прилагательных (adjective), например, a worrying problem, или наречий / hurt my leg playing tennis.

progressive/прогрессирующее время: см. continuous pronoun/местоимение - это такие слова, как she, they, them, mine, которые употребляются вместо существительных или именных фraz.

question tag/краткий общий вопрос - выражение типа isn't it? или have you?, которое ставится в конце предложения, например: It's cold, isn't it?

question word/вопросительное слово - К вопросительным словам относятся what, where, who, whose, when, why, which, how.


reflexive pronoun/возвратные местоимения - К возвратным местоимениям относятся myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves.

regular/правильный - правильная форма - это форма, для которой соблюдаются те же правила, что и для большинства других форм; на неправильные формы (irregular form) это положение не распространяется, например, cars, books, rooms — это правильная форма образования множественного числа (окончание -s), a men, children - неправильная форма образования множественного числа.

relative clause/относительное придачное предложение: см. defining relative clause/определяющие относительные придачные предложения, non-defining relative clause/не определяющие относительные придачные предложения и relative pronoun/относительное местоимение.
relative pronoun/ относительное местоимение.
В предложении I spoke to the man who works in the post office слово who - относительное местоимение. Местоимения who, that, which, whose, whom, what могут употребляться как относительные местоимения.

reply question/ответный вопрос - краткие вопросы, которые используются для ответа на утверждения, например: 'I'm leaving now.' 'Are you?'

reported speech/косвенная речь. В предложении He said, I'm cold часть предложения I'm cold - прямая речь. В предложении He said he was cold часть предложения he was cold - косвенная речь.

second person (2nd person)/второе лицо: см. person/лицо.

sentence - предложение группа слов, образуемых утверждение, вопрос, приказ или восклицание. Пределожения могут быть сложноподчиненные и сложносочиненные. На письме предложение начинается с заглавной буквы (например, A, F, Y) и оканчивается точкой (.), вопросительным (?), или восклицательным (!) знаком.

short answer/краткий ответ - ответ, состоящий из подлежащего и вспомогательного глагола, например: Yes, I am. No, she hasn't.

simple/простая форма - глагольная форма, не являющаяся формой длительного времени, например, / work (настоящее простое время), I worked (прошедшее простое), I've worked (настоящее совершенное простое время).

См. также continuous/длительная.

singular/единственное число: см. plural/множественное число.

statement/утверждение - предложение, в котором содержится информация, например: I'm a student. They went to the cinema.

stress/ударение - способ произнесения слова или части слов с большей силой, чем другие. В слове forget ударение падает на второй слог forget.

Subject/подлежащее - существительное или местоимение, стоящее перед глаголом в утверждительном предложении, например: John went to London.

superlative/превосходная степень, например, oldest, slowest, most intelligent - превосходная степень от old, slow, intelligent.

syllable/слог - например, слово remember имеет три слога re-mem-ber.

tag: см. question tag/краткий общий вопрос

tense/время - глагольная форма, которая указывает на время действия или состояния, например, is working (настоящее время), worked (прошедшее время).

third person (3rd person)/третье лицо: см. person/лицо.

to infinitive/to инфинитив (с частицей to): см. infinitive/инфинитив.

uncountable noun/неисчисляемое существительное: см. countable noun/исчисляемое существительное.

verb/глагол - слова work, play, go, be. См. также full verb/смысловой глагол, вспомогательный глагол и modal auxiliary verb/модальный вспомогательный глагол.

voiced sound/звонкие согласные При произношении звонких согласных /d/, /bl/, /n/ чувствуется колебание голоса. При произношении глухих согласных, например /p/, /k/, /t/, колебание голоса не чувствуется.

vowel/гласные: Буквы a, e, i, o, u — гласные. Остальные буквы, например b, c, d, f, g, h, — согласные.

wh- question/вопрос, начинающийся с wh- - это вопрос, который начинается с вопросительного слова, например: What are you doing? Where did she go? When can we start?

yes/no question/вопрос Да/Нет - это вопрос, который требует ответа Yes/Да или No/Нет. Например: Are you working? Did she go out? Can we start now?
В Алфавитном указателе цифры указывают на разделы, а не на страницы.

а/an 108–109, 113
  a or an 108.1, 113
  a/an or the 108, ИЗ
ability 36
able (be able to) 35.2d, 36
above 167.1
accident (by accident) 180
accommodation (uncountable) 107.3
accuse (someone of) 182, 183
ache 27
acknowledged (it is acknowledged that she/she is acknowledged to) 64
across 169.4–5, 183
active and passive 59, 60
adjectives 126–130
adjective + should 55.2
adjective + to infinitive 96.2
adjectives ending in -ing and -ed 99
the + adjective (the young, etc) 110.2, 113
possessive adjectives 121, 123
form of adjectives 126.1
position of adjectives 126.2
order of adjectives 126.3
comparative and superlative adjectives 127, 129
as + adjective + as 128, 129
adverbs and adverbs of manner 130
adjective + preposition 178, 183
admit (+ -ing form) 83
adverbs 130–140
adverbs and adverbs of manner 130
adverbs of manner, place and time 131
adverb position with verbs 132
still, yet, already 133
any more/longer, no longer 134
adverbs of frequency (always, often, etc) 135
adverbs of probability (probably, perhaps, etc) 136
fairly, quite, rather, pretty 137
too, enough 138
so, such 139
comparative and superlative adverbs 140
as + adverb + as 140.2
advice (uncountable) 107.3
advice 42
reporting advice 79
advise
  advise + object + to infinitive 79, 86.3, 98
  advise + -ing form 86.3
afford (+ to infinitive) 84
afraid
  I'm afraid so/not, etc 152
  afraid 0/178
after
  after (conjunction) 22, 160.2
  after (preposition) 173.3
ago 174.3–5
  ago and for 174.4
  ago and before 174.5
agree (+ to infinitive) 84
all (of) 114, 118
all and every 118.1
all, everybody, everything 118.2
all and whole 118.3
all day, every day etc 118.4
alleged (it is alleged that he is alleged to) 64
allowed (be allowed to) 35.2d, 37, 40
already 8, 133.3
although 161.1
always 135
always with the continuous forms 26
am (am, are, is) 31
amazed (at/by) 178
American English (and British English) Appendix
am: see a
and (in conditional sentences) 73.3a
angry (about/with/for) 178, 183
annoyed (about/with/for) 178
answer (to) 179
any (of) 114, 115
any and some 115
anybody, anyone, anything, anywhere 125
any more, any longer 134.1
apologize (to someone for) 181
appear (+ to infinitive) 84
apply (for) 181
are (are, am, is) 31
around 168.7
arrange (+ to infinitive) 84, 98
arrangements 19, 20, 29
arrive (at/in) 168.9, 183
articles (a/an and the) 108–113
as
  as soon as 22, 160.2
as/so long as 22, 73.2
as + adjective + as 128, 129
as + adverb + as 140.2e
as (time) 160
as (reason) 162.1
as a result 162.2
as and like 176.1
as if 176.2
ashamed (of) 178
ask
  ask + to infinitive 84
  ask + object + to infinitive 79, 80, 86.2
astonished (at/by) 178
at
  at (place) 165, 183
  at (time) 169, 183
  at the end and in the end 171
atletics (singular) 102.8
attempt (+ to infinitive) 84
attitude (towards) 179
avoid (+ -ing form) 83, 98
aware (of) 178
bad (at) 178
be 31
  be no continuous form 27
  be able to 35.2d, 36
  be allowed to 35.2d, 37, 40
  be supposed to (obligation) 42.3
  be supposed to (= 'be said to') 64.2
  be used to 89
bear (can't bear + -ing form or to infinitive) 87
because of 162.1
bed (and the bed) 111.1, 113
been (and gone) 7
before
  before (conjunction) 6.2b, 22, 160
  before (preposition) 173.3
  before, ago, since 174
begin (+ -ing form or to infinitive) 87, 98
behind 168.1, 183
believe
  believe no continuous form 27
  believe in 181
believed (it is believed that he is believed to, etc) 64
belong
  belong no continuous form 27
  belong to 181
below 167.1
beside 168.3
better (had better) 42.2
between 168.2, 183
billiards (singular) 102.8
blame (for/ on) 182
bored (with) 178
borrow (from) 182
impossible (+ to infinitive) 96.2a

in
in (place) 165, 166, 183
in (time) 169, 172, 183
in the end and at the end 171, 183
in time and on time 170, 183
in my car, by car, etc 175
in (= wearing) 177.2
be/fall in love with 180
in someone's opinion 180
in front of 168.1, 183
incase 164
in case and if 164.2
in order to 95, 163.1
in spite of 161.2-3
include (no continuous form) 27
increase (in) 179, 183
indirect objects (with or without to and for) 184
indirect questions (Do you know where he is? etc) 149
indirect speech (reported speech) 75-80
infinitive
passive infinitive (be told, etc) 60.1
passive perfect infinitive (have been told, etc) 60.2
infinitive in reported speech 79, 80
verb + to infinitive 84, 98
verb + question word + to infinitive 85, 98
verb + object + to infinitive 86, 98
verb + to infinitive or -ing form 87-90, 98
used to + infinitive 89, 51
infinitive without to 91, 98
to infinitive as subject 94
to infinitive in reported speech 79, 80
to infinitive of purpose 95, 98
noun/pronoun + to infinitive 96.1, 98
adjective + to infinitive 96.2, 98
information (uncountable) 107.3
*ing form
passive -ing form (being told, etc) 60.1
participle or gerund 81
verb + -ing form 83, 87-90, 98
verb + -ing form or to infinitive 87-90, 98
verb + -ing form or object + to infinitive 86.3, 98
be used to + -ing form 89
preposition + -ing form 92, 98
person + -ing form 93
-ing as subject 94, 98
adjectives ending in -ing and -ed 99
-ing (participle) clauses 100
inside 166.3, 183
interested
interested, interesting, etc 99
interested in 178, 183
intentions 16.2b, 17.2b, 18.2, 25, 29
interrogatives: see questions into 166.1, 183
invitation (to) 179
invitations 49
reporting invitations 79
invite
invite (to) 182
invite (+object+ to infinitive) 79, 86.1
involve (+ -ing form) 83
iron (countable or uncountable) 107.2
irregular plurals 101.2
is (is, am, are) 31
it 120, 123
it preparatory subject (it is useful to know, etc) 94.2
it is/they are and there is/are 32.3
it's time 58
its 121, 123
itself 122, 123
jealous (of) 178
just (with the present perfect) 8
keen (on) 178
keep (on + -ing form) 83
kind
kind of/someone + to infinitive 96.2b
kind of/to 178
know (no continuous form) 27
known (it is known that he/she/it is known to) 64
laugh (laugh at, smile at) 181
learn (+to infinitive) 84
let
let's 30, 50.2a
let + object + infinitive 91.3
like
like no continuous form 27
like + -ing form or to infinitive 87, 98
like and would like 87, 98
like (and as) 176.1
likes and dislikes 87.2, 98
linking words 160-164
listen (to) 181
listen to and hear 27.4
little
(a) little (of) 114
(a) little and (a) few 116.1, 116.3
look
look, watch and see 27.4
look at/for/after 81, 183
lot
a lot (of) 114
a lot (of), much, many 116.1-2
lots (of) 116.1-2
love
love no continuous form 27
love + -ing form or to infinitive 87
be/fall in love with 180
luggage (uncountable) 107.3
make (+object+ infinitive) 91.3, 98
manage (+ to infinitive) 84
managed to 36.2b
many
many (of) 114, 116
many, much, a lot (of) 116.1-2
married (to) 178
mathematics (singular) 102.8
may 35
may (permission) 37
may (possibility) 43, 47
may (requests) 48
may/might as well 54
maybe 136.3
me 120
meals 111.3
mean
mean no continuous form 27
mean + to infinitive 84
mean (of/someone + to infinitive) 96.2b
mean (+ object + to infinitive) 86.2
might 35
might (permission) 37
might (possibility) 43, 47
might in if sentences 69.3b, 71.3
might/may as well 54
mind (+ -ing form) 83, 98
mine 121, 123
miss (+-ing form) 83
modal verbs (can, may, must, etc) 35
modal verbs in the passive 60
modal verbs in if sentences 68.3a, 69.3b, 71.3
money (uncountable) 107.3
monthly 135.4
more 114
most 114
much (of) 114, 116
much, many, a lot (of) 116.1-2
must 35
must (obligation and necessity) 38-40
must and have to 38.1
mustn't, don't have to, needn't, etc 39, 40
must (deduction) 46, 47
my 121, 123
myself 122, 123
near 168.3, 183
necessary (for + object + to infinitive) 96.2c

331
necessity 38–41, 90, 98

need 35
need, no continuous form 27
needn’t, mustn’t, etc 39, 40
needn’t have and didn’t need to 41
need + -ing form and to infinitive 90, 98
needed for 179
negative questions 146
negative statements 141
neither (of) 114, 119
neither and either 19.2
neither ... nor ... 119.3
neither am I, neither do I, etc 151
nervous (about) 178
never 135
never with the present perfect 6.2b, 12.2
never with any 115.3
news 102.8, 107.3
next to 168.3, 183
nice
nice of someone + to infinitive 96.2b
nice o/to 178
no 114, 117
no and none 117
no and no 117
no and any 117.1
no longer 134.2
nobody (nobody, no-one, nothing, nowhere) 125
non-defining relative clauses 156–159
none (of) 114, 117
none and no 117
nor
nor am I, nor do I, etc 151.2–3
normal (for + object + to infinitive) 96.2c
normally 136
not
not a/an and no 117.1
not as/so + adjective + as 128.2, 129
no/as/so + adverb + as 140.2e
nor in negative statements 141
nor in negative questions 146
not... either 151.3

nouns
noun/pronoun + to infinitive 96.1, 98
singular and plural 101–102
compound nouns (toothbrush, shoe shop, etc) 103

countable and uncountable nouns 107
a/an and the with nouns 108–113
noun + preposition 179, 183
preposition + noun 180, 183
number (a number of): plural 102.4

object questions (and subject questions) 144
obligation 38–42

obviously 136
occasionally 135

of
... of ... or possessive’s 105
double possessive (a friend of Simon’s, etc) 106
o/in phrases of quantity (a litre of wine, etc) 107.4
some of, none of, both of, etc 114
of my own, of your own, of his own, etc 121
off 166.2, 183
offer (+ to infinitive) 79, 84
offers 30.1, 49
reporting offers 79
often 135

on
on my own, on your own, on his own, etc 121, 123
on (place) 165–166, 183
on (time) 169, 183
on time and in time 170, 183
on top of 167.3
on the bus, by bus, etc 175
on holiday/business, etc 180, 183
on TV/the radio 180
one
one of my/his/her etc 102.5
one another 122.7
one (s) 124
onto 166.2, 183

opinion (in someone’s opinion) 180, 183
opposite 168.2, 183
or (else) (in conditional sentences) 73.3b
order (+ object + to infinitive) 86.1
orders 30.1
reporting orders 79, 80
ought to 35
ought to (obligation and advice) 42.1
ought to (probability) 45, 47
our 121, 123
ours 121, 123
ourselves 122, 123
ourselves/themselves and each other 122.7

out of 166.1, 183
outside 166.3, 183
over
over, above, etc 167
over and across 168.5
owe (no continuous form) 27

own
own no continuous form 27
my own, your own, etc 121.4, 123

paper (countable or uncountable) 107.3
participle adjectives (interesting, interested, etc) 99
participle or gerund 81

participle (-ing) clauses 100

passive 59–64
passive of present and past tenses 59
passive infinitive and -ing forms 60
gb instead of be in the passive 61
verbs with two objects in the passive 62
passive with by and with 63
it is said that he/she is said to, etc 64
past 168.7, 183
past simple 4, 28
past simple and past continuous 5.2, 28
past simple and present perfect 12, 28
past simple and past perfect 14.2c, 28
past simple of be was, were 31
past simple passive 59
past simple in if clauses 69–70, 74
past continuous (passive progressive) 5, 28
past continuous and past simple 5.2, 28
past continuous passive 59
past perfect 14–15, 28
past perfect simple 14, 28
past perfect continuous (past perfect progressive) 15, 28
past perfect simple passive 59
past perfect in if clauses 71, 74

people (plural) 101.2f, 102.3

perhaps 136.3

permission 37, 40
permit (+ -ing form or object + to infinitive) 86.3
person + -ing form (do you mind me/my going, etc) 93

personal pronouns 120, 123
persuade (+ object + to infinitive) 86.1
photograph (+ object + to infinitive) 86.1

personal pronouns 120, 123
persuade (+ object + to infinitive) 86.1
photograph (+ object + to infinitive) 86.1

phrase verbs (get up, take after, etc) 185–186

physics (singular) 102.8
picture (a picture of someone) 179

phrase verbs (get up, take after, etc) 185–186

physics (singular) 102.8
picture (a picture of someone) 179

plurals 17–21, 23, 25, 29

pleased
pleased + to infinitive 96.2a
pleased with 178
plenty (of) 116.1–2
plural and singular 101–102
plural of compound nouns (toothbrushes, etc) 103.2

police (plural) 102.3

polite
polite of someone + to infinitive 96.2b

polite o/to 178
politics (singular) 102.8

possessions 33, 104–106, 121, 123
possessive 3 (genitive) 104–106
possibility 43–44, 47
postpone (+ -ing form) 83
potato (countable or uncountable) 107.2
practise (+ -ing form) 83
prediction 16.2a, 17.2a, 18.1, 29
prefer
prefer no continuous form 27
prefer + -ing form or to infinitive 87, 98
preferences 57, 87, 98
prepare (+ to infinitive) 84
prepositions 165–184
preposition + -ing form 92–98
at, in, on (place) 165, 183
in (to) out of, on (to), off, in (side), outside 166, 183
above, below, over, under (math), on top of 167, 183
in front of, behind, opposite, between, near, next to, by, beside, along, across, through, over, up, down, past, (around from, to, towards, get to, arrive at/in) 168, 183
at, in, on (time) 169, 183
on time and in time 170, 183
at the end and in the end 171, 183
in, during, for, while 172, 183
by, until, from, to, before, after 173, 183
for, since, ago, before 174, 183
by car/bus etc 175
like, as and as if 176
with (= having) 177.1, 183
in (= wearing) 177.2
adjective + preposition 178, 183
noun + preposition 179, 183
preposition + noun 180, 183
verb + preposition 181, 183
verb + object + preposition 182, 183
indirect objects with or without to and for (give the money to him/give him the money, etc.) 184
present continuous (present progressive) 1, 28
present continuous and present simple 3, 28
present tense and present perfect 13, 28
present continuous for the future 19, 29
present continuous for the future and going to 20, 29
present continuous passive 59
present continuous in if clauses 68.3d
present participle or gerund (-ing) 81
present participle (-ing) clauses (the boy sitting in the comer, etc) 100
present perfect 6–13, 28
present perfect simple 6–8, 28
present perfect with just, yet and already 8
present perfect continuous (present perfect progressive) 9, 28
present perfect simple and present perfect continuous 10, 28
present perfect with for and since 11
present perfect and past simple 12, 28
present perfect and present tense 13, 28
present perfect passive 59
present perfect in if clauses 68.3d
present simple 2, 28
present simple and present continuous 3, 28
present tense and present perfect 13, 28
present simple for the future 21, 29
present simple for the future after when, if, etc 22, 29
present simple of be: am, is, are, is 31
present simple and used to habits 51.1
present simple passive 59
present simple in if clauses 68, 70, 72, 74
pretend (+ to infinitive) 84
pretty 137
prison (and the prison) 111.1
probability 45, 47, 136
probably 136
promise (+ to infinitive) 10, 79, 84
promises 53
reporting promises 79, 80
pronouns 120–125
pronunciation of endings -(e)s and -ed 179
pronoun + -ing infinitive 138
proper (of) 178, 183
provided/providing (that) 22, 73.2
purpose 95, 98, 163–164
put off (+ -ing form) 83
quantity 114–119
questions 142–149
reported questions 78
yes/no questions 142
wh-questions 143
subject and object questions 144
question words 145
negative questions 146
question tags 147
reply questions 148
indirect (embedded) questions 149
question tags 147
question words (what, when, why etc) 145
quite 137
rabies (singular) 102.8
rare (for + object + to infinitive) 96.2c
rarely 135
rather 137
rather (would rather) 57
reaction (to) 179
realize (no continuous form) 27
reason (for) 179
reason 162.1
reason (why/that) 155.2
recently (with the present, perfect) 12.2
recognize (no continuous form) 27
recommend (+ -ing form or object + to infinitive) 86.3, 98
reflexive pronouns 122, 123
refuse (+to infinitive) 84
refusals 52
regret (+ -ing form or to infinitive) 88.5, 98
regrets 56.1, 56.3
regular plurals 101.1
relationship (between/with) 179, 183
relative clauses 153–159
defining relative clauses with who, that and which 153
leaving out who, that and which in defining relative clauses 154
defining relative clauses with whose, where, when and why/that 155
defining and non-defining relative clauses 156
non-defining relative clauses with whose, whom, where and when 157
relative clauses with propositions + which and whom 158
which referring to a whole clause 159
rely (on) 181
remember
remember no continuous form 27
remember + -ing form or to infinitive 88.1, 98
remind
remind + object + to infinitive 86.1
remind about/of 182
reply (to) 179
reply questions 148
reported (it is reported that she/she is reported to) 64
reported speech 75–80
reported statements 77
reported questions 78
to infinitive in reported speech 79, 80
requests 30.1, 48
reporting requests 79, 80
responsible (for) 178
result 162.2
rise (in) 179
risk (+ -ing form) 83
round (and around) 168.7, 183
verbs (see also verbs 1-29)
verbs not used in the continuous forms 27, 29
verb + preposition 181, 183
verb + object + preposition 182, 183
irregular verbs 190
very (and too) 138.7
wait (for) 181
want want no continuous form 27
want + to infinitive 84
want + object + to infinitive 86.2
warn warn + object + to infinitive 79, 80, 86.1
warn someone about something 182
warnings 30.1
reporting warnings 79, 80
was, were 31
were/was going to 25
watch (watch, loot and see) 21A
we 120, 123
weekly 135.4
weigh (no continuous form) 27
well-known (for) 178
were, was 31
were instead of was after l/he/she/it 69.3a
were/was going to 25
what (in questions) 145.1a
what/how about? (suggestions) 50.2c
when 22, 160
when and if 66
when in questions 145.2b
when in relative clauses 155.2, 157
where
where in questions 145.3a
where in relative clauses 155.2, 157
whereas 161.4
whether
whether in reported questions 78.3
whether in indirect (embedded)
questions 149.3
which
which in questions 145.1c
which in relative clauses 153.3-4, 154, 158, 159
while
white (time) 22, 160
while (contrast) 161.4
while, for, during 172.2
who
who in questions 145-1b-c
who in relative clauses 153-154, 156, 158.2
whole (and all) 118.3-4
whom (in relative clauses) 157-158
whose
whose in questions 145.2
whose in relative clauses 155.1, 157
why
why in questions 145.3c
why in relative clauses 155.2
why don’t we? (suggestions) 50.2b
will 35
will (future) 16, 29
will and going to 18, 29
will and the present simple for the future 22, 29
will be + -ing (future continuous) 23, 29
will have + past participle (future perfect) 24, 29
will (requests) 48.3b
will (offers) 49.1
will (habits) 51.2
will (promises and threats) 53
will in the passive 60.1
will in when sentences 66
will in if sentences 66, 68, 70, 74
willingness 49.1
wish (and ifonly) 56
wish no continuous form 27
wish wish + past 56.1
wish + would 56.2
wish + past perfect 56.3
wish + to infinitive 84
with
with + instrument/material in the passive 63.2-3
with (shaving) 177.1, 183
without (with any) 115.3
won’t (refusals) 52
won’t (uncountable) 107.3, 113
work (without an article) 111.1b
worried (about) 178
would 35
would (requests) 48.3b
would (habits) 51.2-3
would and used to 51.3
would in if sentences 69, 70, 71, 74
wouldn’t (refusals) 52
would you mind? (requests) 48.3c
would like
would like (requests) 48.3d
would you like/prefer/rather? (offers) 49.4
would like to in the passive 60.1
would like and like 87.2
would like/love/hate/prefer + to infinitive 87
would rather 57
write (to) 181
wrong (of someone + to infinitive) 96.2b
yearly 135.4
yes/no questions 142
yet 8.133.2
you 120, 123
your 121, 123
yours 121, 123
yourself 122, 123
yourselves 122, 123
Key to exercises

For Information about using contractions eg I'm, she's, they've, see 189.

1A (Possible answers)
1 He's reading a newspaper.
2 She's taking a photograph.
3 They're watching TV.
4 They're playing cards.
5 He's doing the washing up.

1B
1 Is Sally having, 's (is) washing
2 aren't watching
3 Are you enjoying, 'm (am) having
4 Is Maria doing, 's (is) studying
5 're (are) staying
6 are rising, is getting

2A
1 make
2 don't live, live
3 covers
4 gives
5 went
6 don't write, write

2B
1 Do you listen
2 Does he live
3 does she finish
4 do you go
5 went
6 Does it snow

3A
1 It snows
2 I'm going
3 I go
4 He's cooking

4A
1 grew up
2 studied
3 started
4 appeared

5B
1 Did you play
2 Did he win
3 did you do
4 Did you stay
5 went
6 did you cost

4C
1 He didn't invent the telephone.
2 He didn't build the Statue of Liberty.
3 He killed John F Kennedy
4 She didn't write children's stories.
5 He died in 1990
6 She died in 1962
7 have you known
8 did you first meet
9 have you been
10 have you done
11 have you ever
12 have you known
13 have you heard
14 have you seen
15 have you worked
16 been
17 have you known
18 have you lost
19 have you seen
20 been
21 have you known

5A
1 I dropped my bag when I was running for a bus.
2 I cut myself when I was shaving.
3 My car broke down when I was driving to work.
4 I saw a shark when I was swimming in the sea.
5 My clothes got dirty when I was cleaning the attic.
6 I broke a tooth when I was eating a sandwich.

SB
1 were going, stopped
2 were having, called
3 rang, got up, answered
4 opened, was standing
5 arrived, did you do, reported

5C
1
(i) 1 was getting
(ii) 1 was beginning

3 rushed
3 opened
4 asked
5 asked

3A
1 's (has) never slept
2 've (have) ever stayed
3 have you been
4 haven't been
5 has been
6 has changed
7 've (have) never seen
8 've (have) heard
9 have you ever eaten
10 haven't tried

6B
1 's (has) never slept
2 've (have) ever stayed
3 have you been
4 haven't been
5 has been
6 has changed
7 've (have) never seen
8 've (have) heard
9 have you ever eaten
10 haven't tried

6C
1 They've done the washing up.
2 Sally hasn't cleaned the cooker yet.
3 Simon hasn't emptied the rubbish bin yet.
4 They've cleaned the windows.
5 Sally has defrosted the fridge.
6 Simon hasn't cleaned the floor yet.

7A
1 been
2 been
3 been
4 been

8A
1 Have you done your homework yet?
2 I haven't worn my new coat yet.
3 'Is Sally here? 'No, she's just gone out.'
4 Have you just spoken to your parents?
5 It's quite early. Has Jack already gone to bed?
6 I've already cleaned the windows.

9A
1 've (have) been working
2 's (has) been studying

10A
1 They've been repairing
2 I've broken
3 has saved
4 Have you lost
5 I've always worked
6 has been eating

11A
1 for
2 since
3 for
4 since
5 for

12A
1 I've worked
2 I worked
3 I've had
4 I've had
5 I've had
6 I've had

13A
1 I've been cleaning
2 He's sitting
3 have you been
4 have you known
5 I've been learning
6 They live, They've been

14A
1 When he arrived at the station, his train had already left.
2 When he arrived at the theatre, the play had already started.
3 When he arrived at the post office, it had already closed.
4 When he arrived at the furniture shop, they had sold the table he wanted.
5 When he arrived at his friend's house, his friend had gone out.
6 When he arrived at the football stadium, the game had nearly finished.

14B
1 rang
2 had disappeared
3 hard
4 had disappeared
5 had started
6 had happened

14C
1 had done
2 didn't laugh
3 I didn't laugh
4 discovered, had taken
5 discovered, had taken
6 discovered, had taken
15A
1 had been studying
2 hadn't been waiting
3 'd (had) just been talking
4 had he been living.

15B
1 I felt very cold because I had been standing outside forever two hours.
2 I had been playing tennis so I was feeling hot and sticky.
3 The children's hair was wet because they had been swimming in the sea.
4 I hadn't been feeling well for weeks before I finally went to see the doctor.
5 They had been travelling all day so they were very tired.
6 They had been driving for about half an hour when they realized they were lost.

16A
1 I hope I'll have a job in 10 years' time.
2 Perhaps I'll have a good job.
3 I probably won't be very rich.
4 I won't look the same as I do now.
5 I think I'll be married.
6 I'll probably have children.

16B
1 I'll lend 3 I'll put on
2 I'll answer 4 I won't have
3 Will you be 5 I won't go, I'll wait

16C
1 'I'll finish 6 won't finish
2 won't be 7 will you be
3 Will you be 8 I'll be
4 'll be 9 'll meet
5 the meeting will end 10 I'll see

17A (Possible answers)
1 He's going to do the washing up.
2 They're going to get on the bus.
3 She's going to watch TV.
4 It's going to land.
5 They're going to clean the car.
6 He's going to fall off the bicycle.

17B
1 are you going to wear, Are you going to wear
2 are you going to do, 'm (am) going to decorate
3 isn't going to leave, 's (is) going to stay
4 'm (am) going to buy, are you going to pay, 'm (am) going to ask

18A
1 'm (am) going to live
2 I'll (will) come
3 'm (am) going to faint
4 I'll (will) get
5 're (are) going to crash
6 I'll (I will) pay

19A
1 'm (am) working
2 'm (am) not doing
3 'm (am) meeting
4 'm (am) seeing

20A
1 It's going to snow later tonight.
2 She's going to meet them tomorrow morning.
3 She's meeting them tomorrow morning.

3 What are you going to do this afternoon? / What are you doing this afternoon?
4 Be careful! You're going to break that glass.
5 He isn't going to come next Saturday/He isn't coming on Saturday.
6 Look out! You're going to hurt yourself with that knife.
7 Are they going to drive to Scotland next weekend? Are they driving to Scotland next weekend?

21A
1 starts, finishes 3 begins, doesn't end
2 doesn't take off 4 does the next train leave

22A
1 see, Mi (will) give 2 Mi (will) buy, have
3 's (is), Mi (will) go 4 Mi (will) look after, 're (are)
5 won't do, hears 6 won't open, push
7 Mi (will) play, doesn't rain 8 Mi (will) tend, pay

23A
1 At 11.00 tomorrow she'll be visiting the ABC travel company.
2 At 13.30 tomorrow she'll be having lunch with Mary and Ron King.
3 At 15.30 tomorrow she'll be visiting Derek Hall.
4 At 16.30 tomorrow she'll be taking a taxi to the airport.
5 At 17.30 tomorrow she'll be flying back to London.

23B
1 I'll be going past the post office. Shall I post your letter?
2 Will you be speaking to Robert? Can you give him a message?
3 I won't be using my car tonight. Would you like to borrow it?
4 We'll be getting some concert tickets. Shall we get one for you?
5 When will you be visiting Sue again? Can you give her something?
6 Will you be driving into town today? Could I have a lift?

24A
1 will have become
2 will have taken over
3 will have run out
4 Will scientists have found
5 will, have changed
6 Will we have found

25A
1 I was going to take a taxi home last night, but I didn't have enough money, so I had to walk.
2 We were going to write to them when we were on holiday, but we changed our minds and phoned them instead.
3 She was going to drive to Scotland last weekend, but her car broke down, so she went by train.
4 We were going to play tennis yesterday afternoon, but it rained all afternoon, so we stayed at home.
5 She was going to watch the film on TV last night, but she had seen it before, so she went to bed early.
6 I was going to change my job last year, but my boss offered me more money, so I decided to stay.
### Key to exercises

#### 31A

| 31A |  
| --- | --- |
| (i) |  
| 'm (am) | 4 's (is)  
| are | 5 's (is)  
| *'m (am)* | 6 's (is)  
| (ii) |  
| Am | 4 's (is)  
| are | 5 's (is)  
| *'m (am)* | 6 's (is)  
| (Hi) |  
| are | 5 's (is)  
| 're (are) | 6 's (is)  
| Are | 7 'are'  
| are | 8 'are'  

#### 31B

| 31B |  
| --- | --- |
| was | 6 were  
| were | 7 were  
| was | 8 'were'  
| Were | 9 'were'  
| were | 10 was  

#### 31C

| 31C |  
| --- | --- |
| There's |  
| There are |  
| There were |  
| were |  
| There's been |  

#### 32A

| 32A |  
| --- | --- |
| 1 There's |  
| 2 were |  
| 3 there'll be |  
| 4 Is |  
| 5 There were |  
| 6 There's been |  

#### 32B

| 32B |  
| --- | --- |
| 1 There's |  
| 2 There are |  
| 3 Is |  
| 4 There's |  
| 5 There's |  

#### 33A

| 33A |  
| --- | --- |
| Have we got |  
| have got |  
| Have got |  
| Has your sister |  
| didn't have |  

#### 34A

| 34A |  
| --- | --- |
| haven't had |  
| have a |  
| had a |  
| a |  
| a |  

#### 35A

| 35A |  
| --- | --- |
| could |  
| can |  
| could |  
| could |  

#### 36B

| 36B |  
| --- | --- |
| could've been able to |  
| could've been able to |  
| been able to |  

#### 36C

| 36C |  
| --- | --- |
| Robert could |  
| He could |  
| He could |  
| He could |  

#### 37A

| 37A |  
| --- | --- |
| May I |  
| Can I |  
| Can I |  
| Do you think |  
| May I |  

#### 37B

| 37B |  
| --- | --- |
| You can't feed |  
| You can't smoke |  
| You can park |  
| You can't walk |  
| You can't turn left |  

#### 37C

| 37C |  
| --- | --- |
| was allowed to |  
| could've been allowed to |  
| could've been allowed to |  

#### 38A

| 38A |  
| --- | --- |
| must stay |  
| must drink |  
| must take |  
| must continue |  

#### 38B

| 38B |  
| --- | --- |
| must/have to |  
| must/have to |  
| must/have to |  

#### 39A

| 39A |  
| --- | --- |
| mustn't |  
| don't have to |  
| mustn't |  

#### 40A

| 40A |  
| --- | --- |
| must |  
| can't/mustn't |  
| can |  

#### 40B

| 40B |  
| --- | --- |
| You have to |  
| You aren't allowed to |  
| You aren't allowed to |  
| You aren't allowed to |  

#### 41A

| 41A |  
| --- | --- |
| didn't need to get up |  
| didn't need to wear |  
| needn't have had |  

#### 42A

| 42A |  
| --- | --- |
| You should/ought to |  
| You should/ought to |  
| You should/ought to |  
| You should/ought to |  
| I think you should/ought to |  

#### 43A

| 43A |  
| --- | --- |
| You |  
| She |  
| She |  
| She |  
| She |  

#### 44A

| 44A |  
| --- | --- |
| can live |  
| could cross |  
| could grow |  
| can reach |  
| can survive |  

#### 45A

| 45A |  
| --- | --- |
| should receive |  
| should have |  
| should sell |  
| should have |  
| should have |  

#### 46A

| 46A |  
| --- | --- |
| They can't be |  
| They are speaking |  
| He must be |  
| The heating |  
| They must be |  

#### 46C

| 46C |  
| --- | --- |
| Palmer can't |  
| He can't have |  

---

338
3 He can’t/couldn’t have gone for a drive in his car yesterday afternoon. His car was outside his flat all yesterday afternoon.
4 He can’t/couldn’t have stayed at home last night. Someone phoned his flat at 9.00 last night and there was no reply.
5 He must have been inside the Central Art Gallery. His fingerprints were found in the gallery.

47A
YES definitely must probably should; ought to possibly may; might; could
NO definitely not can’t

47B
1 She might phone later.
2 I should be at home by 6 o’clock.
3 They could have gone home.
4 He can’t be telling the truth.
5 You must have heard the news.
6 I may not go out this evening.
7 She can’t have seen us.
8 The bus must have left.
9 He might not have applied for the job.
10 She ought to be here soon.

48A
1 Could you tell me where the hospital is, please?
2 May I have the menu, please?
3 Could I carry some bags for you?
4 ‘d (would) often spend
5 ‘d (would) never throw
6 ‘d (would) never pick the flowers
7 ‘d (would) rather stay
8 ‘d (would) rather listen
9 ‘d (would) rather not play
10 I’d rather you didn’t open

50A
1 How about 4 Why don’t we 6 Let’s
2 Let’s 4 Why don’t we 6 Let’s

51A
1 used to be, isn’t it’s not
2 never goes, used to go
3 used to be, is
4 used to have, doesn’t have
5 is, used to be
6 Did you use to like, find

51B
1 ‘ll (will) always lend
2 ‘d (would) never throw
3 ‘ll (will) carry on
4 ‘d (would) often spend
5 ‘ll go

51C
1 used to would 4 used to Would
2 used to 5 used to
3 used to would 6 used to

52A
1 the window wouldn’t open
2 she won’t marry
3 it wouldn’t work
4 she won’t listen
5 he won’t help
6 my parents wouldn’t let

53A
1 ‘ll (will) pay, a promise
2 ‘ll (will) leave, a threat
3 won’t tell, a promise
4 won’t do, a promise
5 ‘ll (will) throw, a threat
6 won’t speak, a threat

54A
1 We may as well walk to the station.
2 You might as well cancel the hotel bookings.
3 We might as well stay at home today.
4 I might as well clear the table.
5 I might as well apply for the job.

55A
1 She suggested (that) I should apply for the job.
2 The doctor recommended (that) he should stay in bed for a few days.
3 He insisted (that) I should help him.
4 They suggested (that) we should go to the cinema.
5 I agreed (that) I should pay for the damage.
6 My friend recommended (that) we should try the new Greek restaurant.

55B
1 should give up 3 should come
2 should pass 4 should feel

56A
1 I didn’t get embarrassed so quickly
2 I weren’t/wasn’t so serious
3 I didn’t find it so difficult to make friends
4 I were/was good-looking
5 my ears weren’t so big

56B
1 I would do their homework on time
2 I would clean the bath after they’ve used it
3 I wouldn’t pick the flowers
4 I would take their litter home
5 I would keep together on a tour

56C
1 She wishes she hadn’t stayed in the sun so long.
2 He wishes he’d (he had) eaten less.
3 He wishes he’d (he had) driven more carefully.
4 She wishes she hadn’t tried to lift a heavy table on her own.

57A
1 ’d (would) rather stay
2 would you rather go
3 ’d (would) rather listen
4 would you rather do
5 ’d (would) rather not play

57B
1 I’d rather you didn’t open
2 I’d rather you phoned
3 I’d rather you didn’t turn on
4 I’d rather you came

58A (Possible answers)
1 it’s time you paid it?
2 It’s time I started studying for the exam.
3 it’s time you phoned Mike?
4 It’s time I took my car to the garage.

59A
1 The road is being repaired.
2 The fence is being painted.

59B
1 The windows have been repaired.
2 The carpet has been cleaned.
3 The walls have been painted/repainted.
4 The lights have been repaired.
5 Some posters have been put up.
6 The old fireplace has been taken out.

59C
(i) 1 i might as well apply for the job.
2 I’d rather you phoned
3 I’d rather you didn’t open
4 I’d rather you came
5 I’d rather you didn’t answer the phone
6 I’d rather you came
7 I’d rather you phoned
8 I’d rather you came
9 I’d rather you phoned
10 I’d rather you came

59D
1 The room will be cleaned.
2 The tree had to be cut down.
3 Sally should be told what happened.
4 A new hospital is going to be built.
5 The problem can be solved.
6 The job has to be finished.
7 The man may be sent to prison.
8 Something must be done now.

60A
1 I have been delayed
2 I have been thrown away
3 I have been sold
4 I have been killed
5 I have been stolen
6 I have been delayed
7 I have been thrown away
8 I have been sold
9 I have been killed
10 I have been stolen

60B
1 have been delayed
2 have been thrown away
3 have been sold
4 have been killed
5 have been stolen

60C
1 I don’t like being stared at.
2 I can’t stand being told what to do.
3 I don’t like being interrupted.
4 I dislike being joked about.
5 I enjoy being praised.
6 I enjoy being praised.

61A
1 got stuck 4 didn’t get caught
2 got bitten 5 got arrested
3 got hit 6 got sentenced

62A
1 Sally was shown the photographs.
2 Normally, I am paid my salary every month.
3 I think that we have been sent the wrong tickets.
4 I hope that Sally will be given the message.
5 I wasn’t asked for my address.
6 I thought that you had been told about the meeting.
Key to exercises

63A
1 was discovered by
2 was directed by
3 was composed and sung by
4 was invented by
5 was painted by
68B
2 have finished
3 may go
4 invented by
5 was painted by
66A
1 had his nose broken
2 had the roof of their house damaged
3 had the radio stolen
4 had his flat burgled
5 had four new tyres fitted
6 had my suit dry-cleaned

64A
1 It is said that the monument is over 2000 years old.
2 The monument is said to have been over 2000 years old.
3 It is expected that the president will resign.
4 The president is expected to resign.
5 It is thought that the fire started at about 8 o'clock.
6 The fire is thought to have started at about 8 o'clock.
7 It was reported that seven people had been injured in the fire.
8 Seven people were reported to have been injured in the fire.

64B
1 The new film is supposed to be very violent.
2 Those cars are supposed to be rather unreliable.
3 He is supposed to have moved to New York last year.
4 The new restaurant is supposed to be very expensive.
5 The concert is supposed to have been very good.

65A
1 They're having their flat decorated.
2 He's having a suit made.
3 She's having her hair done.
4 He's having a tooth taken out.
5 She's having her windows cleaned.
6 They're having a photograph taken.

65B
1 have these shoes repaired
2 having an extension built
3 have my glasses mended
4 have your hair done
5 had four new tyres fitted
6 had my suit dry-cleaned

66A
1 if
2 when
3 that
4 which
5 why
6 as

68A
1 ran out, 'I (will) need
2 will increase, use
3 increases, will die
4 will change, die
5 try, 'I (will) be
6 don't control, 'I (will) be

66A
1 had his flat burgled
2 have these shoes repaired
3 burn, will burn
4 said, would say
5 said, will say
6 said, would say

70A
1 I'd give up work if I were a millionaire.
2 We'll go for a picnic if it's a nice day tomorrow.
3 If I take more exercise, I wouldn't be so unfit.
4 I'll watch TV tonight if I don't go out.
5 I'd be better-looking if I didn't have such a big nose.
6 If people weren't so greedy, the world would be a better place.
7 If I can get a ticket, I'll go to the concert next week.

71A
1 hadn't been
2 would have enjoyed
3 had had
4 wouldn't have had

71B
1 If she hadn't been ill, she would have gone to work.
2 If it hadn't rained all morning, we would have gone out.
3 If she'd had enough money, she could have bought the shoes.
4 If I'd been hungry, I would have had breakfast.
5 If he hadn't been tired, he wouldn't have made a mistake.
6 If we'd had a map, we wouldn't have got lost.

74A
1 'd (would) wear
2 wouldn't have had
3 had
4 wait
5 'd (had) known
6 would like
7 'll speak
8 would

76A
1 tell
2 telling
3 had
4 said
5 say

77A
1 I told her (that) I couldn't swim very well.
2 The secretary told me (that) Mr Mason had gone out.
3 Andrew said (that) he didn't want to go swimming.
4 We said (that) we were leaving on Friday.
5 They said (that) they had had lunch in Luigi's restaurant.
6 Sarah told Simon (that) she would phone him later.

78A
1 I asked the mechanic if it would take long to repair the car.
2 I asked the policeman if I could park my car in West Street.
3 I asked the cinema attendant what time the film finished.
4 I asked the hotel receptionist if he/she/they had a double room.
5 I asked the doctor how many times a day I should take the medicine.
6 I asked the waiter what the soup of the day was.

79A
1 If I see him, I'll make sure that he gets on the plane.
2 If we had got up earlier, we would have arrived on time.
3 If she'd been there, she would have seen the elephant.
4 If you get your tickets now, you'll be able to buy the best seats.
5 If I'd known that you were coming, I'd have invited you.
6 If she hadn't been so ill, she would have been able to go to the party.
7 If he hadn't been so tired, he wouldn't have made a mistake.

80A
1 knew, would tell
2 would move, would call
3 would, do, knew
4 knew, wouldn't try
5 would ran, saw

81A
1 I hadn't been
2 would have enjoyed
3 had had
4 wouldn't have had

81B
1 If I get a headache, I usually take some aspirin.
2 I feel terrible if I don't get 8 hours' sleep a night.
3 If I drink too much coffee, it makes me feel nervous.
4 If flowers don't get any water, they die.
5 You put on weight if you don't get enough exercise.

83A
1 Unless you wear your coat, you'll be cold.
2 I'll phone you unless you phone me first.
3 He won't receive the letter tomorrow unless you post it before 1 o'clock today.
4 I won't go to school tomorrow unless I feel better.
5 I can't write to you unless you give me your address.
6 Your cough won't get better unless you stop smoking.

83B
1 Provided 3 unless 5 as long as
2 providing 4 Unless

83C
1 Stop making that noise or I'll hit you.
2 Take this umbrella and you won't get wet.
3 Drive more carefully or else you'll have an accident.
4 Help me and I'll help you.

83D
1 should 1 need
2 should he fail
3 should she miss

83E
1 Suppose/Supposing I moved to Scotland, would you come and visit me?
6 He invited her to come to his party.
7 I promised not to tell anyone.
8 She warned them not to leave the door unlocked.

80A
1 I told them (that) I couldn't type.
2 They asked me if I was English.
3 I asked her where she was going.
4 They said (that) they were going into town.
5 He told me (that) he didn't have any money.
6 He asked her if she could speak more slowly.
7 He asked her to speak more slowly.
8 He warned me not to touch the wire.
9 He told her (that) he had been on holiday in
   July.
10 He told her (that) he was on holiday in July.

83A
1 reading 6 doing
2 swimming 7 going
3 having 8 not making
4 playing 9 borrowing
5 robbing 10 being

84A
1 to be 5 to pay 9 to be
2 to test-drive 6 to accept 10 to accept
3 to buy 7 to get 11 to sell
4 not to like 8 to try 12 to give

85A
1 what to wear 4 how to make
2 how to play 5 what to do
3 whether to stay

86A
1... I expected him to pass easily.
2... but her parents told her to go to bed at 9
   o'clock.
3... He invited her to go to a party on Saturday.
4... but a friend of mine persuaded me to change
   my mind.
5... I don't want her to know.
6... which forced the pilot to land.
7... my mother warned me not to talk to strangers.
8 If you hadn't reminded me to lock the door...

86B
1 Andrew to close the door
2 her to help me
3 us to go to a party
4 Sally not to be late home
5 the woman to get out of her car
6 me not to be late for work again.

86C
1 talking 3 to see 5 to do
2 to have 4 driving 6 telling

87A
1 to listen 2 cooking/to cook
3 windsurfing, sailing
4 to walk, go
5 going/to go
6 to visit
7 having/to have
8 playing/to play
9 to take (see 87.2a)
10 to play (see 87.4a)

88A
1 saying
2 visiting
3 to come
4 drinking, holding
5 making
6 telling
7 making
8 telling
9 making
10 telling

89A
1 to working
2 to live
3 to eating
4 to working
5 to staying
6 to work, to getting
7 to eating
8 to working
9 to eating
10 to living

90A
1 renewing/to be
2 to practise
3 adjusting/to be
4 being
5 to buy
6 to ask
7 to be
8 to ask
9 to be
10 to be

91A
1 wear
2 lend
3 cry
4 eat
5 tell, promise
6 type, use
7 hurry
8 type, use

91B
1 let me go
2 makes me feel
3 crying
4 make him understand
5 let him have
6 to unlock
7 to write
8 to wear

92A
1 to seeing
2 in learning
3 After having
4 to eating
5 for being
6 of hearing
7 forgiving
8 at painting, drawing

93A
1 (i) you borrowing
   (ii) your borrowing
2(i) me switching on
   (ii) my switching on
3(i) us staying
   (ii) our staying
4(i) them getting
   (ii) their getting
5(i) her going
   (ii) her going
6(i) Sue forgetting
   (ii) Sue's forgetting

94A
1 Babysitting is a big responsibility, especially
   with very young children.
2 Swimming is a very good way of keeping fit.
3 Watching late night horror films can give you
   nightmares.
4 Living on your own is quite difficult if you are
   used to being with a lot of people.
5 Reading English is much easier than speaking
   it.
6 Smoking can cause lung cancer.

94B
1 It is very strange to see yourself on video.
2 It isn't necessary to have your car serviced
   every month.
3 It can be dangerous to leave medicine lying
   around.
4 It doesn't have to be expensive to eat well.
5 It is difficult for old people to live on a pension.

95A
1 I went to the chemist's to buy some medicine.
2 I went to the post office to post some letters.
3 I went to the cinema to see a film.
4 I went to the hairdresser's to have a haircut.
5 I went to the car rental agency to hire a car.
6 I went to the park to play tennis.

95B
1 (i) He drank lots of black coffee in order to keep
   awake.
   (ii) He drank lots of black coffee so as to keep
   awake.
2 (i) I often write things down in order not to
   forget them.
   (ii) I often write things down so as not to
   forget them.
3 (i) She took an umbrella in order not to get wet.
   (ii) She took an umbrella so as not to get wet.
4 (i) We'll use the computer in order to save time.
   (ii) We'll use the computer so as to save time.
5 (i) I want to pass the exams in order to get a
   better job.
   (ii) I want to pass the exams so as to get a better
   job.
6 (i) We turned down the music in order not to
   disturb the neighbours.
   (ii) We turned down the music so as not to
   disturb the neighbours.

96A
1 to unlock 3 to write 5 to wear
2 to tell 4 to say 6 to catch

96B
1 easy to use
2 safe to go
3 impossible to finish
4 to turn off
5 to be
6 to be

96C
1 It was nice of her to send me a birthday card.
2 It was wrong of him to open your letter.
3 It was clever of you to find the answer.
4 It was careless of me to leave my wallet at
   home.
5 It was silly of him to throw the ticket away.
6 It was good of you to do my shopping for me.

96D
1 It's unnecessary for you to pay me back the
   money.
2 It's essential for us to leave immediately.
3 It's important for everyone to try to keep calm.
4 It's unusual for him to complain.

97A
1 arguing 3 break 5 post
2 building 4 climb 6 repairing
Key to exercises

98A
1 working to work
2 to come
3 move to move
4 to see, get
5 making, to sleep
6 to drink
7 try, driving
8 to think, making
9 to leave, to catch
10 to be
11 to work
12 skiing, ice-skating
13 walking
14 to be
15 to explain
16 not to walk
17 meeting
18 to make, show, to use
19 not doing
20 seeing
21 forget, to phone
22 empty
23 not doing
24 going
25 to have

99A
1 interested 4 worried 7 frightened
2 shocked 5 surprising
3 amusing 6 boring

99B
1 embarrassing 4 relaxing 7 frightened
2 depressing 5 interesting
3 interested 6 annoyed

100A
1 Doris is the girl reading the book. The girl reading the book is Doris.
2 Jim is the boy combing his hair. The boy combing his hair is Jim.
3 Martha is the girl writing something. The girl writing something is Martha.
4 Diana is the girl listening to the Walkman. The girl listening to the Walkman is Diana.
5 Arthur is the boy eating the ice-cream. The boy eating the ice-cream is Arthur.

100B
1 He fell off a ladder changing a light bulb.
2 He burnt himself cooking his dinner.
3 He ran out of petrol driving to work.
4 He lost his keys getting out of his car.
5 He broke a cup doing the washing-up.

100C
1 The woman was driving along listening to her car radio.
2 He arrived at the examination hall feeling very nervous.
3 He came into the room carrying a suitcase.
4 They were walking down the street holding hands.

100D
1 Having typed the letters, he put them all in envelopes.

2 Having done all the housework, I went out for a walk.
3 Having got out of bed, he had a shower.
4 Having locked all the doors, she went to bed.

100E
1 Being a little deaf, she wears a hearing-aid.
2 Not liking classical music, I didn’t go to the concert.
3 Being rich, she can afford expensive holidays.
4 Having finished the book, I decided to take it back to the library.

5 Having gone to bed so late the night before, they felt quite tired the next morning.

101A
1 children, girls, boys
2 restaurants, theatres, cinemas, discos
3 teeth
4 plates, knives, forks
5 countries, days
6 cats, mice
7 people
8 shoes, feet
9 eggs, tomatoes, potatoes
10 leaves, trees

102A
1 is 5 was
2 have, them 6 Are these, they are
3 isn’t 7 isn’t, is it
4 lives, lives 8 is, It needs

103A
1 alarm clock 6 hole punch
2 T-shirts 7 lawn mower
3 corkscrew 8 screwdriver
4 clothes-hangers 9 screwdriver
5 bottle opener 10 track-suit

104A
1 Gloria is Chris and Linda’s mother.
2 Linda is Chris’s sister.
3 George is Chris and Linda’s father.
4 Chris is George and Gloria’s son.
5 Charles is Ken’s father-in-law.
6 Daisy is Linda and Chris’s grandmother.
7 Kate is Chris and Linda’s aunt.
8 Sally, Simon and Andrew are Chris and Linda’s cousins.

104B
1’s 3’s 5’s
2’s 4’s 6’s

105A
1 the end of the film
2 Sarah’s party
3 the top floor of the house
4 the back of my car
5 a friend of the woman who works in the post office
6 the end of this road
7 the girls’ parents
8 the manager of the Black Cat Club

106A
1 Robert visited a relative of his.
2 A neighbour of ours is going to babysit for us.
3 Sally is going on holiday with some friends of hers.
4 Simon has borrowed some records of Sarah’s.
5 Two colleagues of mine are ill at the moment.

107A
0
1 U 3 C 5 U 7 U 9 C
2 U 4 C 6 C 8 C 10 U

107B
1 a hair 5 a paper
2 journey 6 is traffic
3 advice 7 job, isn’t, work
4 some bread 8 Is accommodation

108A
A
1 clock, university, sandwich, dog, game, house, hospital, school
B
2 orange, envelope, aunt, old car, hour, onion, umbrella, examination, ice-cream

108B
1 a, an 6 a
2 an, a 7 a
3 a 8 a, an
4 a 9
5 a 10 a
6 a

108C
1 the, the 4 the, the 7 the
2 a, an 5 a, the
3 the 6 the

109A
1
2 the 6 the, the, the
3 the 7 the
4 the, the 8

109B
1 A florist sells flowers.
2 A child needs love.
3 A corkscrew takes corks out of bottles.
4 A large car is expensive to run.
5 A teetotaller doesn’t drink alcohol.

110A
1 The swan 3 the country 5 the piano
2 the radio 4 The tulip 6 the sea

111A
1 the British 3 the blind
2 the unemployed 4 the sick

HOB
1 the dead
2 the unemployed
3 the blind
4 the sick

HOC
1 the British
2 the Australians
3 the Spanish (or ‘the Spaniards’)
4 the French
5 the Greeks

111A
1
2 the 7 the
3
4 the 8
5

Key to exercises

112A
1 Canberra 6 Lake Superior
2 China 7 the Pacific
3 Mexico City 8 Mount Everest
4 the Sahara 9 the Alps

112B
1 The, the, the
2 the, the, the
3 the, the, the

113A
1 The, the, the
2 the, the, the
3 the, the, the

113B
1 her, her, her
2 her, theirs, ours
3 their, ours

119A
1 neither of 3 either of 5 Neither
2 both 4 either of 6 both/both of

119B
1 eat now or wait until later
2 read Arabic nor write it
3 nor Kate knew the address
4 his sister or his brother
5 and Sarah passed the exam easily
6 very comfortable nor very interesting
7 larger than my old flat and closer to my office

120A
1 her 3 Me 5 They, me, them
2 me, he, I 4 I, him, He them

120B
1 We, us
2 them, they
3 They, they
4 I, it

121A
1 their, ours 4 her, her, theirs
2 My, hers 5 Our, theirs, ours
3 your, yours

121B
1 her own
2 your own
3 his own
4 her, herself
5 his, himself

122A
1 themselves
2 each other
3 ourselves

122B
1 myself
2 by herself
3 by themselves

122C
1 myself
2 ourselves
3 everyone

123A
1 I
2 me
3 mine
4 my
5 myself

123B
1 Their, ours
2 yours, mine
3 her, her, hers
4 she, her, hers
5 he, his, his

124A
1 one (= a drink) 3 one (= woman)
2 ones (= glasses) 4 one (= film)

125A
1 nothing
2 nowhere
3 nobody
4 anywhere

126A
1 a two-hour concert
2 a fifty-year-old man
3 a twenty-minute delay
4 a ten-page letter
5 a two-hour meeting

126B
1 long, boring
2 late
3 sad, wrong

126C
1 Are the children asleep?
2 Sydney is a very modern city.
3 That building is over 500 years old.
4 Don't you sound very happy.
5 He looks a very healthy man.
6 The bridge is 1.55 kilometres long.
7 Have you seen my blue T-shirt?

126D
1 short, fat
2 tall, middle-aged
3 two smalt white paper cups
4 some tiny Japanese TV sets
5 a handsome young doctor
6 a cheap red plastic raincoat
7 an attractive long blue coat
8 a pair of expensive black leather shoes

127A
1 Wood is lighter than steel.
2 A bus is slower than a train.

127B
1 horrible, short, old
2 beautiful, small, middle-aged
3 ugly, large, young
4 round, grey, English
5 square, red, Italian
6 curly, white, German

128A
1 glass, shopping
2 plastic, sports
3 leather, writing

128B
1 a short fat man
2 a tall middle-aged woman
3 two small white paper cups
4 some tiny Japanese TV sets
5 a handsome young doctor
6 a cheap red plastic raincoat
7 an attractive long blue coat
8 a pair of expensive black leather shoes

129A
1 Wood is lighter than steel.
Steel is harder than wood.
Steel is stronger than wood.
2 A bus is slower than a train.
A train is more comfortable than a bus.
3 Cream is thicker than milk. Cream is healthier than milk.
4 Swimming is cheaper than windsurfing. Windsurfing is more exciting than swimming. Swimming is better exercise than windsurfing.

127B 1 worse 5 a little more advanced
2 better 6 a lot more complicated
3 a lot easier than 7 rather bigger
4 much simpler 8 more comprehensive

127C 1 bigger and bigger
2 worse and worse
3 more and more polluted
4 more and more automated

127D 1 The bigger a car is, the more expensive it is to run.
2 The worse the weather, the more dangerous it is to drive on the roads.
3 The older he gets, the more thoughtful he becomes.
4 The more complicated the problem, the harder it is to find a solution.

127E 1 the best 6 the most stupid
2 the cheapest 7 The oldest
3 the most reliable 8 the worst
4 the most expensive 9 the most famous
5 the largest

128A 1 as tall as 3 as interesting as
2 as clever as 4 as cheap as

128B 1 An elephant isn't as tall as a giraffe. A giraffe isn't as strong as an elephant. An elephant isn't as fast as a giraffe.
2 Gold isn't as strong as iron. Iron isn't as valuable as gold.
3 A gorilla isn't as intelligent as a human! A human isn't as strong as a gorilla.
4 A bicycle isn't as expensive as a car. A car isn't as easy to park as a bicycle.

129A 1 the most popular
2 more serious than
3 friendly as
4 the best
5 more generous than
6 clever as
7 the hottest
8 more self-confident than
9 the strangest
10 the tallest
11 cheaper than
12 most enjoyable

130A 1 I usually feel nervous before an interview.
2 I usually walk slowly when I'm tired.
3 I feel happy when I get good news.
4 I'm a careful driver.
5 I usually study hard before an exam.
6 I'm a wonderful dancer.
7 You should pick up a baby carefully.
8 My English is good.

131A 1 the piano very well now.
2 your letters in the town centre early this morning.
3 football in the park this afternoon.
4 heavily in the north of Scotland yesterday evening.
5 the map carefully later on in the day.
6 angrily out of the room at the end of the meeting.
7 the guitar beautifully at the concert last night.

132A 1 They've probably been trying to contact us.
2 She probably went to the meeting last week.
3 They normally take their summer holidays in May.
4 Have you ever lived in a foreign country?
5 I've never eaten Indian food.
6 Do you still live in the same flat?
7 He only wants to borrow the money.
8 I probably won't see Martin again until next weekend.
9 We've almost finished painting the outside of the house.
10 I always try to go jogging at least three times a week.
11 We certainly haven't got any time to lose.
12 I can certainly lend you some money until next week.
13 He's always complaining about something.
14 I don't usually watch this TV programme.

133A 1 already 3 still 5 already
2 still, yet 4 still 6 yet, yet

133B 1 You needn't clean the kitchen; I've already done it. I've done it already.
2 You don't need to tell me; I already know what to do. I know what to do already.
3 Haven't you received your invitation to the party yet?
4 I still can't decide what to do this evening.
5 I can still remember the first time I flew in a plane.
6 Robert still works for the same company in London.

134A 1 Sue no longer works for the same company in London.
2 My brother isn't a young child any more.
3 Her father is no longer unemployed.
4 There is no longer a large ship-building industry in Britain.

135A 1 the time
2 normally, usually
3 often, frequently
4 sometimes
5 seldom, rarely
6 hardly ever at no time
7 never, not ever
8 The weather isn't very nice today.
9 She can't come to the party on Saturday.
10 I haven't been working too hard recently.
11 She hasn't got a very interesting job.

136A 1 Simon is probably at Sarah's house at the moment.
2 There will probably be an election early next year.
3 Perhaps we'll play tennis later this afternoon.
4 They obviously enjoyed the film very much.
5 You should definitely go and see the doctor.
6 I definitely don't want to be home late tonight.
7 Computers are certainly becoming more and more important in our lives.
8 The bridge has probably been repaired by now.

137A 1 rather 5 rather
2 quite 6 quite
3 pretty/rather 7 quite/pre tty
4 quite 8 rather

138C 1 I'm too tired to go to the cinema this evening.
2 The table was too heavy for me to move.
3 The children aren't tall enough to reach that shelf.
4 They arrived too late to see the beginning of the film.
5 Our flat was much too small for us to live in.
6 He spoke too quietly for the people at the back of the room to hear.

139A 1 so 3 such, so
2 so 4 so

140A 1 earlier than 5 fluently as
2 worse than 6 faster, faster
3 the longest 7 better than
4 more efficiently than 8 harder than

141A 1 I don't like travelling by train.
2 He wasn't late for the appointment.
3 We haven't got a lot of time.
4 I'm not enjoying myself very much.
5 Robert doesn't work for a company in Manchester.
6 The weather isn't very nice today.
7 She can't come to the party on Saturday.
8 I haven't been working too hard recently.
9 She hasn't got a very interesting job.
10 They may not have gone home.
11 We didn't see you at school yesterday.
12 The bank doesn't open on Saturday afternoons.
13 My sister isn't going to work tomorrow.
14 The telephone hasn't been repaired.
15 We don't play tennis every weekend.
16 I won't be seeing Martin tomorrow.

142A
1 Did they play tennis yesterday?
2 Is he doing his homework?
3 Has she got a lot to do today?
4 Have they bought a new car?
5 Do you know Simon Robinson?
6 Can he play the piano and the guitar?
7 Where has she been waiting?
8 How long has she been waiting?
9 How often does she come?
10 How much will they do?
11 What is he making?
12 Why are you going?

149A
1 Can you tell me when the last bus leaves?
2 Do you know if he is over 18?
3 Do you know if she can speak French?
4 Can you explain how this machine works?
5 Have you decided where you are going on holiday?
6 Do you remember exactly what he told you?
7 Do you know if you will be here tomorrow?
8 Have you got any idea if she likes horse riding?
9 Can you remember if you switched off all the lights?
10 Do you know if everyone has gone home?

150A
1 I can't.
2 I am.
3 He did.
4 I didn't.
5 She does.
6 He has.
7 She hasn't.
8 I will.
9 I was.

152A
1 Yes, I think so.
2 Yes, I suppose so.
3 No, I don't think so. (*No, I think not.* is possible, but less common)
4 No, I'm afraid not.
5 Yes, I imagine so.
6 No, I don't expect so. (*No, I expect not.* is possible, but less common)
7 Yes, I'm afraid so.
8 No, I don't suppose so. (*No, I suppose not.* is possible, but less common)
9 Yes, I expect so.
10 Yes, I imagine so.

155A
1 She's the woman whose husband teaches at Annie's school.
2 He's the man whose flat was broken into.
3 They're the couple whose children were injured in the accident.
4 She's the girl whose brother works in the post office.
5 They're the people whose credit cards were stolen.
6 I'm the person whose mother phoned the police.

156B
1 who
2 whom
3 that
4 which

157A
1 where
2 when
3 why
4 who
5 whose
6 that
7 who
8 that
9 who

Key to exercises
Key to exercises

159A
1 She lent me the money, which was very generous of her.
2 They had to wait for over an hour, which annoyed them very much.
3 There was a lot of snow on the roads, which made driving dangerous.
4 I knew you didn't want to go to the concert, which is why I didn't buy you a ticket.
5 There was a bus strike, which meant I had to take a taxi.
6 There was a delicious smell coming from the kitchen, which made us all feel very hungry.

160A
1 When 4 until 7 when
2 while 8 as soon as 8 when
3 until, before 6 just as

161A
1 Though they have a car, they rarely use it.
2 Although he was innocent, he was sent to prison.
3 Even though he has a number of relatives living nearby, he never visits them.
4 Even though she never takes any kind of exercise, she is quite fit and healthy.

161B
1 All the trains were on time despite the heavy snow.
2 Our coach didn't arrive late in spite of the terrible traffic.
3 A lot of people buy those houses despite the high prices.

161C
1 (i) She didn't apply for the job despite having the right qualifications.
   (ii) She didn't apply for the job despite the fact that she had the right qualifications.
2 (i) He stayed outside in the cold weather despite feeling ill.
   (ii) He stayed outside in the cold weather despite the fact that he felt ill.
3 (i) People continue to smoke in spite of knowing the dangers.
   (ii) People continue to smoke in spite of the fact that they know the dangers.

161D
1 She likes hard work while whereas he's quite lazy.
2 She likes jazz and pop music while whereas he prefers classical music.
3 She likes going out a lot while whereas he prefers staying at home.
4 She's very practical while whereas he's quite idealistic.
5 She's very generous while whereas he can be rather mean.

162A
1 He phoned the police because he'd lost his wallet.
2 I didn't have any lunch because I wasn't hungry.
3 Our plane was delayed because of the fog.
4 He went to Paris because he wanted to learn French.
5 I took an umbrella because I thought it might rain.
6 He couldn't run very fast because of his bad leg.

162B
1 As 4 as a result 7 therefore
2 so 5 so
3 Since 6 because

162C
1 It was such a warm evening (that) we had dinner outside in the garden.
2 He was so nervous (that) he couldn't eat anything.
3 Our neighbours' party was so noisy (that) we couldn't sleep.
4 The restaurant was so crowded (that) they couldn't find anywhere to sit down.
5 We were all having such a good time (that) we didn't want to stop.

163A
1 I'm going to the library to return a book.
2 She's gone to the greengrocer's for some potatoes.
3 He's taking the car to the garage to have it serviced.
4 He phoned me to invite me to his party.
5 I get up early every day to go jogging.
6 They've gone to the pub for a drink.

163B
1 It's used for making holes in paper.
2 It's used for cutting grass.
3 It's used for measuring temperature.

163C
1 He's started walking to work so as to get more exercise.
2 The government are going to increase taxes in order to raise more money.
3 We took a map with us on the journey so as not to get lost.
4 They stopped work at 1 o'clock in order to have lunch.

163D
1 He switched on the light so that he could see what he was doing.
2 I turned down the music so that I wouldn't disturb the neighbours.
3 She repeated everything so that we would remember it.
4 She's saving money so that she can buy a new car.

164A
1 You'd better hurry up in case you miss your train.
2 Take a book on the journey in case you get bored.
3 Put on some suncream in case you get sunburnt.
4 Wear a coat when you go out in case you catch a cold.
5 You should lock the car in case someone tries to steal it.

164B
1 if 3 incase 5 incase
2 if 4 if

165A
1 on, in
2 at ('in' is also possible)
3 at/in, in
4 in, on
5 at ('in' is also possible)
6 in, in

166A
1 off 6 in
2 on 7 onto/on
3 outside, out of 8 off, into
4 outside 9 out of, into/in
5 off, onto

167A
1 above 3 over 5 under
2 under 4 on top of 6 underneath

168A (Possible answers)
1 behind
2 in front of
3 between
4 up, down
5 at
6 across
7 next to, in
8 from, in/at
9 to
10 opposite/in front of/behind/near to
11 through/in
12 across/over (along is also possible)
13 across/over (along is also possible)
14 over (from) is also possible
15 past
16 towards/to

169A
1 at, 5 in, on
2 , 6 at, in
3 on, 7 in
4 , 8 on

170A
1 on time 5 in time
2 in time 4 in time

171A
1 in the end 5 at the end
2 at the end 6 at the end

172A
1 during 4 for, during/in
2 for 5 during
3 during/in 6 for, during/in

173A
1 from, until/to 3 from, until/to
2 by 4 until/to

174A
1 for, before 3 for, before
2 for, ago 4 ago, since

175A
1 on, by 3 in, by
2 by, on 4 on

176A
1 at 2 like
3 like 4 as ('like' is also possible in an informal style)
5 like 6 like
7 as ('like' is also possible in an informal style)
176B
1 They look as if they're been arguing.
2 It looks as if it's going to rain.
3 She looks as if she's just had some good news.
4 They look as if they've been running.
5 He looks as if he's going to fall.

176C
1 She's 50 years old, but she looks as if she was/ were 30.
2 He's only a receptionist, but he acts as if he owned the hotel.
3 They're quite rich, but they behave as if they were poor.
4 He's only got a cold, but he acts as if he was/dying.
5 It's my car, but he treats it as if it belonged to him.

177A
1 with 3 with 5 in, with
2 in 4 with

178A (Possible answers)
1 of 8 for 15 of
2 to 9 on 16 at
3 about 10 of/17 of
4 at 11 with 18 from/to
5 for 12 of 19 to
6 of 13 at/b y 20 with, for

179A
1 with 5 of 9 to/towards
2 to 6 in 10 for
3 between 7 between 11 for
4 to 8 in 12 of

180A
1 for 3 by 5 by, in 7 by
2 on 4 by 6 on 8 in, with

181A
1 at 9 of 17 in
2 to 10 of/about 18 of
3 about 11 of/about 19 about
4 to, about 12 of 20 for
5 on 13 of 21 on
6 to, for 14 of 22 into
7 to, for 15 for
8 from 16 after

182A
1 for 4 on 7 to
2 of 5 from 8 about
3 about 6 of

183A
1 out of 8 up 15 at
2 inside 9 into 16 near
3 Next to 10 down 17 in front of
4 off 11 across 18 on
5 outside 12 towards 19 opposite
6 Behind 13 along 20 round
7 onto 14 past

183B
1 at, in, at
2 in, on
3 of/about, to, on, in
4 at ('in' is also possible), in, for
5 in, in
6 at, on
7 during, to

184A
1 Have you sent your brother the letter?
2 I'll get Sally a present.
3 Have you told your parents the news?
4 I bought you some stamps.
5 They lent Peter her car.
6 He kept you a seat.
7 He's prepared us a meal.
8 Will you give Mrs Woods this message?

184B
1 They didn't offer me the job.
2 She bought a book for her son.
3 Can you pass me the salt?
4 Are you looking forward to it?
5 She fill it in?
6 She takes after him.
7 He's looking after her.
8 I've thrown it away.

185A
1 fill in 4 speak up 7 came across
2 kept on 5 held up
3 gone up 6 turned down

186A (Possible answers)
1 took off 3 broke out
2 grows up 4 getting up/to get up
3 Would you like to try on this jacket? Would you like to try this jacket on?
4 I don't enjoy playing football any more. I think I'll give it up.
5 My wife wants me to shave off my moustache. My wife wants me to shave my moustache off.
6 I have to speak to Mr Mason. I'd better ring him up.
7 That music is rather loud. Would you turn it down?

186C
1 look after 3 came into
2 get over 4 I ran into an old friend

186D
1 got rid of 3 look back on
2 come up with 4 put up with

186E
1 He's going to give it up.
Key to exercises

18E

Answers to Progress Tests

1
1 has
2 'm (am) negotiating
3 runs, leave
4 'm (am) trying
5 is becoming
6 goes
7 are disappearing
8 falls
9 're (are) slaying
10 is moving, are repairing

2
1 The Titanic was travelling to New York ...
2 The juniper shrunk when I washed it.
3
4 I broke my toe ...
5 The mouse had a heart attack ...
6 The footballer was naming forwards the goal ...
7 James Dean played a sports car when he died.

3
1 While I was writing a letter the phone rang.
2 Did you read the newspaper as soon as it arrived?
3 She didn't lock the door when she left the office.
4 The train was going through the tunnel when it suddenly stopped.
5 Sally was washing her hair when the doorbell rang.
6 Did John Logie Baird invent the television or the telephone?
7 They cried when they heard the bad news.
8 The cat was lying on the sofa when the mouse came into the room.
9
10 've never eaten ...
10 ... He's grown a beard.

4
1 has been losing, has he lost
2 have you looked, have you been looking
3 has she been doing, has she done
4 have they been playing, have they played

5
1 I read War and Peace since 1980
2 studying Spanish for two years
3 directing films since the 1960s
4 raining since Monday
5 worked for ten years
6 skied since 1989
7 acting since the 1970s

6
1 Carlo has lived in Rome for three years.
2 S
3 How long have you been studying English?
4 My parents have been married for thirty years.
5
6 Sarah has known Simon for a long time.
7 Those men have been waiting outside since 2.00.
8
9 My sister has lived in Brighton since 1980.
10 The Rolling Stones rock group have been playing together for over twenty years.

7
1 B 2 A 3 B 4 B SA 6 B 7 A 8 B 9 B 10 B

8
8
1 Carlo has lived in Rome for three years.
2 S
3 How long have you been studying English?
4 My parents have been married for thirty years.
5
6 Sarah has known Simon for a long time.
7 Those men have been waiting outside since 2.00.
8
9 My sister has lived in Brighton since 1980.
10 The Rolling Stones rock group have been playing together for over twenty years.

9
1 B 2 A 3 B 4 B 5 B

10
1 We'd (had) been waiting for an hour ...
2
3 We'd (had) been living in Paris for ten years ...
4
5 ... I'd (had) been working since early in the morning ...

11
1 'll (will) meet
2 's (is) going to rain
3 've (have) been making
4 've (have) been playing
5 've (have) broken
6 've (have) been putting up
7 've (have) been looking
8 'll (will) bite
9 'll (will) buy
10 's (is) going to have

12
1 
2 it's snowing is a mistake
3
4 are winning is a mistake
5 C is passing is a mistake

13
1 B 2 B 3 A 4 B 5 B 6 A

14
1 'll (will) have left, 'll (will) be driving
2 'll (will) have arrived, 'll (will) be checking-in
3 MI (will) be flying
4 'll (will) have arrived, 'll (will) be driving
5 MI (will) be having

15
1 Robert was going to watch the film on TV but he fell asleep.
2 I was going to visit you but I did not have enough time.
3 Sarah was going to change some traveller's cheques but the bank was closed.
4 We were going to go to the concert but it was cancelled.
5 I was going to finish work early but my boss asked me to work late.
6 My parents were going to fly to Scotland but they decided to go by train.

17
1 B 2 A 3 A 4 B 5 B 6 A 7 B 8 B 9 B 10 B

18
1 I am writing to you in reply to your advertisement in last Monday's Evening Argus.
2
3 At the moment, I am working for Sun Travel, a company in London. / have worked / have been working there for two years. Before I joined Sun Travel, / worked for a student travel company in Spain. / worked there for a year. Before that, / worked for Worldwide Travel in Brighton for a year. Now I would like to move back to Brighton and / am looking for a job with a travel company in the town.

18 i Suggested answers

1 What is the most embarrassing thing that has ever happened to you in your life?
2 I had a terrible experience last Saturday.
3 This is what happened.
4 I left my flat at 2 o'clock and went into town to do some shopping.
5 I go shopping most Saturday afternoons.
6 I go shopping most Saturday afternoons.
7 When I was sitting in the cafe, I saw a friend called Julie Jones and she joined me.
8 At around 4.30 Julie and I paid the bill and left the cafe.
9 As we were leaving, I offered to give Julie a lift home in my car.
10 She said she would like a lift so we walked to the car park together.

348
23 4 aren't, 're (are) 4 are
22 2 Is, isn't, 's (is) 6 were, were
2 Is, 's (is) 7 Were, weren't
4 aren't, 're (are)

21 i
1 Is, is 5 Was, wasn't, was
2 Is, isn't, 's (is) 6 were, were
3 Is, 's (is) 7 Were, weren't
4 aren't, 're (are)
2
1 Their (is), It's (is)
2 There are, They're (are)
3 Is there, there is, It's (is)
4 Are there, there are, They're (are)
5 There was, It was
6 There will be, They'll (will), be

1 2 I've got a pain in my neck at the moment.
3 Did you have a good journey yesterday?
4 5 6 We usually have dinner at 7 o'clock.
7 'Have you got a car?' 'Yes, I have.'
8 9 Did Madonna have blonde hair in 1991?
10 Have you got/Do you have a driving licence?
42 1 went  3 asked  
2 cleaned  4 bought  

43 i 1 have built a new motorway  
2 keep the information on our computer  
3 arrested a man late last night  
4 should take the medicine after meals  
5 they have to sell the hotel  
6 criticizing him  
7 'd (had) pulled down my old school  
8 was following me  

43 ii 1 The president is being interviewed on TV at the moment.  
2 The post is delivered twice a day.  
3 The old man was taken to hospital.  
4 The traffic lights were being repaired yesterday.  
5 This letter has been opened.  
6 I remember being told the news.  
7 Taxes should be reduced.  
8 Ann must have been told about the accident.  
9 The 9.15 train had been cancelled, so I took a later train.  
10 The law is going to be changed soon.  

43 iii 1 had built a new motorway  
2 keep the information on our computer  
3 arrested a man late last night  
4 should take the medicine after meals  
5 they have to sell the hotel  
6 criticizing him  
7 'd (had) pulled down my old school  
8 was following me  

44 1 written with a typewriter.  
2 3 made with three eggs.  
4 painted by Leonardo da Vinci.  

45 1 will be given the information later  
2 was sent to me  
3 was knocked over in the street  
4 is expected that the president will visit Moscow  
5 is said to have been invented in China  
6 is thought that the Queen of England is one of the richest women in the world  
7 are claimed to have visited the earth  
8 to cause skin cancer  

46 1 re (are) having our roof repaired at the moment  
2 am (am) having a stereo fitted in my car  
3 has her flat cleaned once a week  
4 had your eyes tested recently  
5 had his briefcase stolen last week  

47 i 1 B 2B 3B 4C 5A 6C  

47 ii 1 stops  6 wouldn't buy  
2 were  7 lie  
3 'd (would) switch  8 doesn't apologize  
4 'd (had) known, wouldn't have gone  
5 won't be  10 Will you phone  

48 1 a) 'd (had) taken, wouldn't have got  
a) 'd (had) known, wouldn't have gone  
c) hadn't gone, wouldn't have caught  

2 a) wouldn't have woken up, hadn't gone  
b) hadn't woken up, wouldn't have missed  
c) hadn't missed, wouldn't have been  

49 1 Go now or I'll be very angry.  
2 Provided you help me now, I'll help you later.  
3 Give me your address and I'll write to you.  
4 Unless they offer me a better job, I'll leave the company.  
5 If I stay up and watch the film as long as it isn't on too late.  
6 Supposing you were in my place, what would you do?  
7 Should I win the lottery, I'll give you half the money.  

50 i 1 ... if she falls ...  
2 ... if she fell ...  
3 ✓  
4 If I don't have ...  
5 ... wouldn't blend ...  
6 ✓  
7 ... if I didn't have to work ...  

50 ii 1 If we'd known the film was on TV, we would have recorded it on our video.  
2 If I didn't go to bed late every night, I wouldn't always be tired.  
3 If Janet had been in a hurry, she wouldn't have walked home.  
4 If I had had enough money, I could go skiing next week.  
5 If we'd had an umbrella, we wouldn't have got wet.  

51 i 1 I'm 25 years old.  
2 I work in a bank.  
3 I've been working there for a year.  
4 I don't like my job very much.  
5 I'm in Europe on holiday.  
6 I'm having a great holiday.  
7 I'm in Europe on holiday.  
8 I've been to Britain twice before.  
9 I'm going to Italy next week.  
10 I can't speak Italian very well.  
11 I'll be in Italy for a week.  

51 ii 1 (that) he had been working there for a year  
2 (that) he was looking for a better job  
3 (that) he liked travelling  
4 (that) he had been to the United States  
5 (that) he had been/went to New York last summer  
6 (that) he would like to go to Australia one day  
7 (that) her name was Judy  
8 (that) her sister didn't live in England  
9 (that) she lived in Spain  

52 i 1 How old are you?  
2 Where do you work now?  
3 How long have you worked there?  
4 Where did you go to school?  
5 What exams did you take at school?  
6 Can you drive a car?  
7 How long have you been driving?  
8 Have you got a car of your own?  
9 What are your hobbies?  
10 What do you like doing in your free time?  

52 ii 1 They asked me where I worked.  
2 They asked me how long I had been working there.  
3 They asked me if I was on holiday in England.  
4 They asked me when I arrived.  
5 They asked me if I had/had got any brothers or sisters.  
6 They asked me how long I was going to stay there.  
7 They asked me if I liked English food.  
8 They asked me if I had/had got any brothers or sisters.  
9 They asked me how long I had been studying English.  
10 They asked me if I could speak any other languages.  

53 1 She invited her friend to go to the cinema.  
2 He offered to post the letter for her.  
3 The doctor advised me to take more exercise.  
4 I promised not to drive too fast.  

54 1 Switch off your engine, please.  
2 Where are you going?  
3 I'm going home.  
4 Where do you live?  
5 Where have you just come from?  
6 I've been at a friend's house all evening.  
7 Can I see your driving licence, please?  
8 Get out of the car, please.  
9 Is it your car?  
10 I bought it last year.  
11 You can go home.  

55 i 1 C 2B 3B 4B SA 6B 7A 8C  
2 9B 10C 11A 12B 13C 14B 15A  
16B 17B 18B 19C 20B 21B 22B  

55 ii 1 I stopped playing tennis ...  
2 ✓  
3 Thanks for letting me borrow ...  
4 Would you like to have ...  
5 Walking can be ...  
6 It isn't easy to learn ...  
7 I went to the station to get my train.  
8 They wanted me to go out with them.  
9 Everyone refused to help the old man.  
10 ✓  
11 How about playing tennis?  
12 ... I saw some men building ...  
13 Have you finished eating ...  
14 I'm used to working ...  
15 ✓  
16 We're thinking of going ...  
17 Can you come ...  
18 I'm looking forward to seeing ...  
19 ✓  
20 Do you feel like listening ...  
21 Annie's mother made her earlier lunch.  
22 Do you want someone to help you move furniture to help you to move the table?  

56 1 the news surprising  
2 shocked by the man's behaviour  
3 travel interesting
4 bored by the tennis match
5 the sauna very relaxing

57
1 I dropped my bag running for a bus.
2 We got lost driving through Paris.
3 Having locked all the doors, I went to bed.
4 Having just had a drink, I wasn't thirsty.

58
... and trousers?
2 The news isn't ... 4 How many people ...
5 Where are the scissors?
6 a new toothbrush.
7 How much are these blue Levi's jeans?
9 ... the children ...
10 Your hair looks..., washed it?
12 Ten kilometres is a long way ...
13 One of my brothers works in a shoe shop.
14 Physics was my favourite subject ...
15 Physics, my favourite subject ...
16 There was £30 in my wallet, but now it's gone.
18 Some passers-by ...

59 i
1 this week's news
2 the thieves' stolen car
3 the roof of the hotel
4 the price of your meal
5 two weeks' vacation
6 the end of the film
7 the middle of our English lesson
8 the name of the girl who came to dinner
9 Jim's brother's girlfriend
10 the rising cost of petrol

59 ii
A friend of mine is having a party.
2 The town's only theatre is closed.
3 Some neighbours of ours have offered to help us.
4 Britain's rainfall has been light this year.
5 We've been visiting some relatives of ours.

60
1 ... has information about hotel accommodation.
2 ... your hair cut?
3 There is traffic news ...
4 ... without a lot of luggage.
5 ... a loaf of bread, some bread ... and some spaghetti.
6 Where is the money? Have you spent it...
7 We're having beautiful weather ...
8 Some of our furniture was damaged ...

61
1 a 7 a 13 the 19 the
2 the 8 a 14 a 20 the
3 an 9 a 15 an 21 the
4 The 10 the 16 the 22 an
5 the 11 an 17 the 23 the
6 the 12 the 18 the

62
1 Noise 3 The water 5 money
2 the noise 4 Water 6 the money

63 i
1 Canberra is the capital of Australia.
2 San Diego is in Southern California.
3 Is the Amazon the longest river in Latin America?
4 Jamaica is an island in the Caribbean Sea.
5 Snowdon is the highest mountain in England and Wales.
6 Lake Michigan is in the United States.
7 The Gobi desert is in Asia.
8 The Uffizi is one of the most famous museums in the world.
9 The Statue of Liberty was made in France.
10 Macy's is a famous department store on 34th Street in New York.

64 i
1 B 2 D 3 A 4 D 5 A 6 C 7 B
8 D 9 B 10 D

64 ii
1 intelligent and charming
2 sing or play the guitar
3 my girlfriend nor I enjoyed the party
4 people like Monday mornings
5 one of Steven Spielberg's films
6 she wanted was a cup of coffee for breakfast
7 much a lot of French
8 houses have video phones?
9 of my sisters are married 10 of my friends have has failed their driving test

65 i
1 Look! There's Sally and her boyfriend! Can you see them?
2 My brother looks very young, but he's older than our/me.
3 'Who's that outside?' 'It's me.'
4 My girlfriend and I phone each other every day.
5 Our flat was cheaper than theirs, but theirs is much smaller than ours.
6 Did the old man hurt himself when he fell off his bike?
7 I woke up, got dressed and made myself some breakfast.
8 It's easy to cut yourself when you're shaving.
9 When we warned her not to walk home by herself, she just laughed at us.
10 We were very annoyed with ourselves for forgetting about your party.

65 ii
1 You (One's also possible) 5 yourself
2 she 6 her
3 they, their 7 they
4 herself 8 me, my

66 i
1 B 2 C 3 A 4 C

66 ii
1 You (One's also possible) 5 yourself
2 ... her/him 6 it
3 they, their 7 they
4 herself, 8 me, my

67 i
1 anything all day
2 anybody living in that house
3 nothing to do today
4 nowhere this week

67 ii Suggested answers
1 Yes
2 No - I've got nothing left.
3 There isn't anything good ...
4 ... There's nobody living there.
5 We've looked everywhere ..., but we can't find it anywhere.

68
1 has got a powerful Japanese motorbike
2 looks beautiful this summer
3 seems a very cheerful woman
4 was wearing a long black leather coat
5 had lunch at an expensive French restaurant
6 are around 5,000 years old

69 i
1 Today is summer than yesterday.
2 My boyfriend isn't as clever as he thinks.
3 Ken is a more much careful driver than Simon.
4 You aren't taller than / about/me.
5 What was the happiest day of your life?
6 The older my grandmother gets, the more forgetful she becomes.
7 Camping isn't as comfortable as staying in a hotel, but it's much healthier.
8 The problem of world pollution is getting worse and worse.

69 ii
1 cheaper than playing golf
2 fastest animal in the world
3 best thing to wake you up in the morning
4 as big as Tokyo
5 most talented footballer in the world
6 more exciting than listening to records

70
1 very slowly 3 very hard
2 rather reckless driver 4 very good actor
3 angrily

71
1 My parents will be on holiday next week.
2 I walked confidently into the exam room.
3 We saw them in town on Saturday morning.
4 All the students worked hard last week.
5 The English like tea very much.
6 My grandfather went into hospital last week.
7 My brother never helps with the housework.
8 We always start school at 9:00.
9 My teacher is never late for class.
10 Robert no longer plays football.
11 I'll never forget the first time we met.
12 T always sleep 8 hours every night.
13 Carla probably hasn't finished working yet.
14 We have already been waiting for an hour and the bus still hasn't come.

72
1 A 2 C 3 B 4 C 5 A/B 6 D/C 7 A
8 A 9 B 10 C 11 A 12 C 13 B 14 C
15 A/C

73
1 as well as you do
2 more carefully than I do
3 more carefully than I do
4 best of all the students in her school
Key to exercises

74
1 I don't think politics is interesting.
3 It isn't (or it's not) raining at the moment.
5 You haven't got any brothers or sisters.
8 My sister doesn't want to live in the country.
10 I didn't work yesterday.
7 Sue won't be here next weekend.
8 They haven't been waiting for us.

75
1 Is she going by car?
3 When did you usually finish work?
6 Do you know if the bridge has been repaired yet?
77
1 Haven't you?
2 Does she?
83
1 onto, next to
3 in, on, above
5 at, in, on, below
81
1 who
3 who/that
5 whose
7 which

84
1 My interview is at 2 o'clock on Monday.
2 We've been waiting here for ten minutes.
3 Are you leaving on Saturday morning?

85
1 with
2 in
3 by, on

86
1 C
2 B
3 A
4 C
5 A
6 B
7 A
8 B
9 A
10 B
11 A
12 C
13 B
14 A
15 C
16 B
17 C
18 A
19 C
20 B

87
1 The company has given Kathy Cobuild a job.
2 My sister made me a cake on my last birthday.
3 The receptionist will order us a taxi.
4 I've promised someone these concert tickets.

88
1 I turned down their offer of a job.
2 We kept on working through our lunch break.
3 Robert gave up playing football years ago.
4 People say that I like my father.
5 What time did you set off on your journey?
6 Unemployment has gone up by 10% since last year.
7 Our flight was held up by bad weather.
8 My grandfather never went back on a promise.
9 Mr and Mrs James may never get over the tragic death of their son.
10 The bank's computer has broken down six times this week already.

Учебное пособие
Digby Beaumont, Colin Granger

The Heinemann ELT English Grammar